

# PRIMERGY RX300 S8 Server

Upgrade and Maintenance Manual

## **Comments... Suggestions... Corrections...**

The User Documentation Department would like to know your opinion of this manual. Your feedback helps us optimize our documentation to suit your individual needs.

Feel free to send us your comments by e-mail to [manuals@ts.fujitsu.com](mailto:manuals@ts.fujitsu.com).

## **Certified documentation according to DIN EN ISO 9001:2008**

To ensure a consistently high quality standard and user-friendliness, this documentation was created to meet the regulations of a quality management system which complies with the requirements of the standard DIN EN ISO 9001:2008.

cognitas. Gesellschaft für Technik-Dokumentation mbH  
[www.cognitas.de](http://www.cognitas.de)

## **Copyright and Trademarks**

Copyright © 2015 Fujitsu Technology Solutions GmbH.

All rights reserved.

Delivery subject to availability; right of technical modifications reserved.

All hardware and software names used are trademarks of their respective manufacturers.

- The contents of this manual may be revised without prior notice.
- Fujitsu assumes no liability for damages to third party copyrights or other rights arising from the use of any information in this manual.
- No part of this manual may be reproduced in any form without the prior written permission of Fujitsu.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, and Hyper V are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the USA and other countries.

Intel and Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the USA and other countries.

---

## Before reading this manual

### For your safety

This manual contains important information for safely and correctly using this product.

Carefully read the manual before using this product. Pay particular attention to the accompanying manual "Safety Notes and Regulations" and ensure these safety notes are understood before using the product. Keep this manual and the manual "Safety Notes and Regulations" in a safe place for easy reference while using this product.

### Radio interference

This product is a "Class A" ITE (Information Technology Equipment). In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take appropriate measures. VCCI-A

### Aluminum electrolytic capacitors

The aluminum electrolytic capacitors used in the product's printed circuit board assemblies and in the mouse and keyboard are limited-life components. Use of these components beyond their operating life may result in electrolyte leakage or depletion, potentially causing emission of foul odor or smoke.

As a guideline, in a normal office environment (25°C) operating life is not expected to be reached within the maintenance support period (5 years). However, operating life may be reached more quickly if, for example, the product is used in a hot environment. The customer shall bear the cost of replacing replaceable components which have exceeded their operating life. Note that these are only guidelines, and do not constitute a guarantee of trouble-free operation during the maintenance support period.

### High safety use

This product has been designed and manufactured to be used in commercial and/or industrial areas as a server.

When used as visual display workplace, it must not be placed in the direct field of view to avoid incommoding reflections (applies only to TX server systems).

The device has not been designed or manufactured for uses which demand an extremely high level of safety and carry a direct and serious risk of life or body if such safety cannot be assured.

---

These uses include control of nuclear reactions in nuclear power plants, automatic airplane flight control, air traffic control, traffic control in mass transport systems, medical devices for life support, and missile guidance control in weapons systems (hereafter, "high safety use"). Customers should not use this product for high safety use unless measures are in place for ensuring the level of safety demanded of such use. Please consult the sales staff of Fujitsu if intending to use this product for high safety use.

### **Measures against momentary voltage drop**

This product may be affected by a momentary voltage drop in the power supply caused by lightning. To prevent a momentary voltage drop, use of an AC uninterruptible power supply is recommended.

(This notice follows the guidelines of Voltage Dip Immunity of Personal Computer issued by JEITA, the Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association.)

### **Technology controlled by the Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Law of Japan**

Documents produced by Fujitsu may contain technology controlled by the Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Law of Japan. Documents which contain such technology should not be exported from Japan or transferred to non-residents of Japan without first obtaining authorization in accordance with the above law.

### **Harmonic Current Standards**

This product conforms to harmonic current standard JIS C 61000-3-2.

### **Only for the Japanese market: About SATA hard disk drives**

The SATA version of this server supports hard disk drives with SATA / BC-SATA storage interfaces. Please note that the usage and operation conditions differ depending on the type of hard disk drive used.

Please refer to the following internet address for further information on the usage and operation conditions of each available type of hard disk drive:

[\(http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/manual/\)](http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/manual/)

---

**Only for the Japanese market:**



Although described in this manual, some sections do not apply to the Japanese market. These options and routines include:

- CSS (Customer Self Service)

---

# Version history

Issue number	Reason for update
preview	Initial release
review	corrections
confirmation	corrections, tape/RDX with USB 2.0, iRMC S4
September 2013	corrections
February 2014	TFM screw, removing TPM, CE-conformity, RAID array rebuilt, Cool-safe, Expansion card overview and installations sequence
October 2014	TFM screw, LED description, OOB cable, additional cabling
April 2015	iRMC microSD card

---

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b> . . . . .	<b>25</b>
<b>1.1</b>	<b>Notational conventions</b> . . . . .	<b>26</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Before you start</b> . . . . .	<b>27</b>
<b>2.1</b>	<b>Classification of procedures</b> . . . . .	<b>29</b>
2.1.1	Customer Replaceable Units (CRU) . . . . .	29
2.1.2	Upgrade and Repair Units (URU) . . . . .	30
2.1.3	Field Replaceable Units (FRU) . . . . .	31
<b>2.2</b>	<b>Average task duration</b> . . . . .	<b>31</b>
<b>2.3</b>	<b>Tools you need at hand</b> . . . . .	<b>32</b>
<b>2.4</b>	<b>Documents you need at hand</b> . . . . .	<b>36</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Important information</b> . . . . .	<b>39</b>
<b>3.1</b>	<b>Safety instructions</b> . . . . .	<b>39</b>
<b>3.2</b>	<b>ENERGY STAR</b> . . . . .	<b>47</b>
<b>3.3</b>	<b>CE conformity</b> . . . . .	<b>47</b>
<b>3.4</b>	<b>FCC Class A Compliance Statement</b> . . . . .	<b>48</b>
<b>3.5</b>	<b>Environmental protection</b> . . . . .	<b>49</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Basic hardware procedures</b> . . . . .	<b>51</b>
<b>4.1</b>	<b>Using diagnostics information</b> . . . . .	<b>51</b>
4.1.1	Locating the defective server . . . . .	51
4.1.2	Determining the error class . . . . .	52
4.1.2.1	Global Error indicator . . . . .	52
4.1.2.2	Customer Self Service (CSS) indicator . . . . .	52
4.1.3	Locating the defective component . . . . .	53
4.1.3.1	Local diagnostic indicators on the front . . . . .	53
4.1.3.2	Local diagnostic indicators on the system board . . . . .	53
<b>4.2</b>	<b>Shutting down the server</b> . . . . .	<b>54</b>

## Contents

---

<b>4.3</b>	<b>Disconnecting power cords</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>4.4</b>	<b>Getting access to the component</b>	<b>57</b>
4.4.1	Extending the server out of the rack	57
4.4.2	Removing the server from the rack	59
4.4.3	Opening the server	60
4.4.3.1	Removing the housing cover	61
4.4.3.2	Removing the air duct	62
<b>4.5</b>	<b>Reassembling</b>	<b>63</b>
4.5.1	Installing the air duct	63
4.5.2	Closing the server	64
4.5.2.1	Mounting the housing cover	65
4.5.3	Mounting the server in the rack	65
4.5.3.1	Seating the server on the rack rails	65
4.5.3.2	Sliding the server into the rack	68
<b>4.6</b>	<b>Connecting the server to the power source</b>	<b>69</b>
<b>4.7</b>	<b>Switching on the server</b>	<b>71</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Basic software procedures</b>	<b>73</b>
<b>5.1</b>	<b>Starting the maintenance task</b>	<b>73</b>
5.1.1	Suspending BitLocker functionality	73
5.1.2	Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality	74
5.1.2.1	Viewing boot watchdog settings	74
5.1.2.2	Configuring boot watchdog settings	75
5.1.3	Removing backup and optical disk media	76
5.1.4	Verifying and configuring the backup software solution	77
5.1.5	Note on server maintenance in a Multipath I/O environment	77
5.1.6	Switching on the ID indicator	80
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Completing the maintenance task</b>	<b>81</b>
5.2.1	Updating or recovering the system board BIOS and iRMC	81
5.2.1.1	Updating or recovering the system board BIOS	81
5.2.1.2	Updating or recovering the iRMC	81
5.2.2	Verifying system information backup / restore	83
5.2.3	Updating RAID controller firmware	84
5.2.4	Enabling Option ROM scan	85
5.2.5	Verifying and configuring the backup software solution	86
5.2.6	Resetting the boot retry counter	87
5.2.6.1	Viewing the boot retry counter	87
5.2.6.2	Resetting the boot retry counter	87

5.2.7	Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality . . . . .	89
5.2.8	Enabling replaced components in the system BIOS . . . . .	89
5.2.9	Verifying the memory mode . . . . .	90
5.2.10	Verifying the system time settings . . . . .	91
5.2.11	Viewing and clearing the System Event Log (SEL) . . . . .	92
5.2.11.1	Viewing the SEL . . . . .	92
5.2.11.2	Clearing the SEL . . . . .	93
5.2.12	Updating the NIC configuration file in a Linux environment . . . . .	93
5.2.13	Resuming BitLocker functionality . . . . .	95
5.2.14	Performing a RAID array rebuild . . . . .	96
5.2.15	Looking up changed MAC / WWN addresses . . . . .	96
5.2.15.1	Looking up MAC addresses . . . . .	96
5.2.15.2	Looking up WWN addresses . . . . .	97
5.2.16	Using the Chassis ID Prom Tool . . . . .	98
5.2.17	Configuring LAN teaming . . . . .	99
5.2.17.1	After replacing / upgrading LAN controllers . . . . .	99
5.2.17.2	After replacing the system board . . . . .	99
5.2.18	Switching off the ID indicator . . . . .	100
5.2.19	Performing a fan test after replacing a defective fan . . . . .	100

---

## **6 Power supply units . . . . . 103**

<b>6.1</b>	<b>Basic information . . . . .</b>	<b>103</b>
6.1.1	Power supply unit configurations . . . . .	104
6.1.2	Assembly rules . . . . .	104
<b>6.2</b>	<b>Installing hot-plug power supply units . . . . .</b>	<b>105</b>
6.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	105
6.2.2	Removing the dummy cover . . . . .	106
6.2.3	Installing a hot-plug power supply unit . . . . .	107
6.2.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	107
<b>6.3</b>	<b>Removing a hot-plug power supply unit . . . . .</b>	<b>108</b>
6.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	108
6.3.2	Removing a hot-plug power supply unit . . . . .	109
6.3.3	Installing a dummy cover . . . . .	110
6.3.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	110
<b>6.4</b>	<b>Replacing a hot-plug power supply unit . . . . .</b>	<b>111</b>
6.4.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	111
6.4.2	Removing the defective hot-plug power supply unit . . . . .	111
6.4.3	Installing the new hot-plug power supply unit . . . . .	112
6.4.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	112

## Contents

---

<b>6.5</b>	<b>Upgrading a power supply from 450 W to 800 W</b>	<b>113</b>
6.5.1	Preliminary steps	113
6.5.2	Removing the hot-plug power supply unit	113
6.5.3	Installing the new hot-plug power supply unit	114
6.5.4	Concluding steps	115
<b>6.6</b>	<b>Replacing the power backplane</b>	<b>115</b>
6.6.1	Preliminary steps	115
6.6.2	Disconnecting power cables	116
6.6.3	Removing the power backplane	117
6.6.4	Installing the power backplane	119
6.6.5	Reconnecting power cables	121
6.6.6	Concluding steps	121
<b>7</b>	<b>Hard disk drives / solid state drives</b>	<b>123</b>
<b>7.1</b>	<b>Basic procedures</b>	<b>124</b>
<b>7.2</b>	<b>3.5-inch hard disk drives</b>	<b>124</b>
7.2.1	6x3.5-inch HDD configuration	124
7.2.1.1	Mounting order	124
7.2.1.2	HDD naming scheme	125
7.2.2	4x3.5-inch HDD configuration with tape/RDX drive	125
7.2.2.1	Mounting order with tape/RDX drive	125
7.2.2.2	HDD naming scheme with tape drive	126
7.2.3	Installing 3.5-inch HDD modules	126
7.2.3.1	Preliminary steps	126
7.2.3.2	Removing a 3.5-inch dummy module	127
7.2.3.3	Installing a 3.5-inch HDD module	128
7.2.3.4	Concluding steps	129
7.2.4	Removing 3.5-inch HDD modules	129
7.2.4.1	Preliminary steps	129
7.2.4.2	Removing a 3.5-inch HDD module	130
7.2.4.3	Installing a 3.5-inch dummy module	131
7.2.4.4	Concluding steps	131
7.2.5	Replacing a 3.5-inch HDD module	132
7.2.5.1	Preliminary steps	132
7.2.5.2	Removing a 3.5-inch HDD module	132
7.2.5.3	Installing a 3.5-inch HDD module	133
7.2.5.4	Concluding steps	133
<b>7.3</b>	<b>2.5-inch HDD / SSD configurations</b>	<b>133</b>
7.3.1	Mounting order for 2.5-inch HDDs / SSDs	133

7.3.1.1	HDD / SSD mounting order for 4x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration . . . . .	133
7.3.1.2	HDD / SSD naming scheme for 4x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration . . . . .	133
7.3.1.3	HDD / SSD mounting order for 8x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configurations . . . . .	134
7.3.1.4	HDD / SSD naming scheme for 8x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configurations . . . . .	135
7.3.1.5	HDD / SSD mounting order for 12x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration . . . . .	135
7.3.1.6	HDD / SSD naming scheme for 12x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration . . . . .	136
7.3.1.7	HDD / SSD mounting order for 16x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration . . . . .	136
7.3.1.8	HDD / SSD naming scheme 16x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration . . . . .	137
7.3.2	Installing 2.5-inch HDD / SSD modules . . . . .	137
7.3.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	138
7.3.2.2	Removing a 2.5-inch dummy module . . . . .	138
7.3.2.3	Installing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module . . . . .	139
7.3.2.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	140
7.3.3	Removing 2.5-inch HDD / SSD modules . . . . .	140
7.3.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	140
7.3.3.2	Removing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module . . . . .	141
7.3.3.3	Installing a 2.5-inch dummy module . . . . .	142
7.3.3.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	143
7.3.4	Replacing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module . . . . .	143
7.3.4.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	144
7.3.4.2	Removing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module . . . . .	144
7.3.4.3	Installing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module . . . . .	144
7.3.4.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	144
<b>7.4</b>	<b>Replacing SAS / SATA HDD / SSD backplanes . . . . .</b>	<b>145</b>
7.4.1	Replacing the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane . . . . .	145
7.4.1.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	145
7.4.1.2	Removing the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane . . . . .	146
7.4.1.3	Installing the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane . . . . .	148
7.4.1.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	150
7.4.2	Replacing the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane . . . . .	150
7.4.2.1	Basic information . . . . .	150
7.4.2.2	Preliminary steps . . . . .	150
7.4.2.3	Removing the HDD cage . . . . .	151

## Contents

---

7.4.2.4	Removing the 4x 2.5-inch SAS HDD backplane . . . . .	152
7.4.2.5	Installing the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane . . . . .	153
7.4.2.6	Installing the HDD cage . . . . .	154
7.4.2.7	Concluding steps . . . . .	155
7.4.3	Replacing the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane . . . . .	156
7.4.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	156
7.4.3.2	Removing the 12x2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane . . . . .	157
7.4.3.3	Installing the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane . . . . .	158
7.4.3.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	160
<b>8</b>	<b>System fan . . . . .</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>8.1</b>	<b>Basic information . . . . .</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>8.2</b>	<b>Replacing the system fan . . . . .</b>	<b>162</b>
8.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	162
8.2.2	Removing a system fan . . . . .	162
8.2.3	Installing a system fan . . . . .	163
8.2.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	163
<b>8.3</b>	<b>Removing the fan box . . . . .</b>	<b>164</b>
8.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	164
8.3.2	Removing the fan box . . . . .	164
8.3.3	Installing the fan box . . . . .	166
8.3.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	167
<b>9</b>	<b>Expansion cards and backup units . . . . .</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>9.1</b>	<b>Basic information . . . . .</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>9.2</b>	<b>Handling slot brackets . . . . .</b>	<b>174</b>
9.2.1	Installing a slot bracket . . . . .	174
9.2.1.1	Installing a standard slot bracket . . . . .	174
9.2.1.2	Installing a slot bracket to the Network adapter D2735 . . . . .	176
9.2.1.3	Installing a slot bracket to the Network adapter D2745 . . . . .	178
9.2.1.4	Installing a slot bracket to the Network adapter D2755 . . . . .	180
9.2.1.5	Installing a slot bracket to the USB 3.0 interface card D3305 . . . . .	182
9.2.2	Removing a slot bracket . . . . .	183
<b>9.3</b>	<b>Expansion cards . . . . .</b>	<b>184</b>
9.3.1	Installing expansion cards . . . . .	184
9.3.1.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	184

9.3.1.2	Removing the slot bracket . . . . .	184
9.3.1.3	Installing an expansion card . . . . .	185
9.3.1.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	186
9.3.2	Removing expansion cards . . . . .	187
9.3.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	187
9.3.2.2	Removing an expansion card . . . . .	187
9.3.2.3	Installing a PCI slot bracket . . . . .	189
9.3.2.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	189
9.3.3	Replacing expansion cards . . . . .	190
9.3.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	190
9.3.3.2	Removing an expansion card . . . . .	190
9.3.3.3	Installing an expansion card . . . . .	191
9.3.3.4	Connecting cables to the expansion card . . . . .	191
9.3.3.5	Connecting a battery backup unit to the expansion card . . . . .	191
9.3.3.6	Concluding steps . . . . .	191
<b>9.4</b>	<b>SAS RAID controller in PCI slot 7 . . . . .</b>	<b>192</b>
9.4.1	Additional information on SAS 3.0 RAID controllers . . . . .	192
9.4.2	Installing the SAS RAID controller . . . . .	192
9.4.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	192
9.4.2.2	Preparing the SAS RAID controller . . . . .	193
9.4.2.3	Installing the SAS RAID controller . . . . .	193
9.4.2.4	Connecting cables to the expansion card . . . . .	194
9.4.2.5	Connecting a backup unit to the expansion card . . . . .	194
9.4.2.6	Concluding steps . . . . .	195
9.4.3	Removing the SAS RAID controller . . . . .	196
9.4.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	196
9.4.3.2	Removing the SAS RAID controller . . . . .	197
9.4.3.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	197
9.4.4	Replacing the SAS RAID controller . . . . .	198
9.4.4.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	198
9.4.4.2	Removing the defective SAS RAID controller . . . . .	199
9.4.4.3	Installing the new SAS RAID controller . . . . .	199
9.4.4.4	Connecting cables to the expansion card . . . . .	199
9.4.4.5	Connecting a backup unit to the expansion card . . . . .	199
9.4.4.6	Concluding steps . . . . .	199
<b>9.5</b>	<b>Modular LAN controller in PCI slot 1 . . . . .</b>	<b>200</b>
9.5.1	Basic information . . . . .	200
9.5.2	Installing the Modular LAN controller . . . . .	200
9.5.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	200
9.5.2.2	Connecting the NCSI sideband cable to the Modular LAN controller . . . . .	201

## Contents

---

9.5.2.3	Installing the Modular LAN controller . . . . .	203
9.5.2.4	Connecting the NCSI sideband cable to the system board . . . . .	204
9.5.2.5	Concluding steps . . . . .	205
9.5.2.6	Concluding software tasks . . . . .	206
9.5.3	Removing the Modular LAN controller . . . . .	207
9.5.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	207
9.5.3.2	Removing the Modular LAN controller . . . . .	207
9.5.3.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	208
9.5.4	Replacing the Modular LAN controller . . . . .	209
9.5.4.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	209
9.5.4.2	Removing the Modular LAN controller . . . . .	209
9.5.4.3	Installing the Modular LAN controller . . . . .	210
9.5.4.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	210
<b>9.6</b>	<b>Backup Units . . . . .</b>	<b>211</b>
9.6.1	Basic information . . . . .	211
9.6.2	Installing a BBU . . . . .	212
9.6.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	212
9.6.2.2	Connecting the BBU cable to the BBU . . . . .	213
9.6.2.3	Installing the BBU in the holder . . . . .	214
9.6.2.4	Installing the BBU holder onto the air duct . . . . .	214
9.6.2.5	Installing the air duct with a BBU . . . . .	216
9.6.2.6	Concluding steps . . . . .	217
9.6.3	Removing a BBU . . . . .	218
9.6.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	218
9.6.3.2	Removing the air duct with a BBU . . . . .	219
9.6.3.3	Removing the BBU holder from the air duct . . . . .	220
9.6.3.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	220
9.6.4	Replacing a BBU . . . . .	221
9.6.4.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	221
9.6.4.2	Removing a BBU from the air duct . . . . .	221
9.6.4.3	Removing the BBU from the BBU holder . . . . .	222
9.6.4.4	Installing a new BBU . . . . .	223
9.6.4.5	Concluding steps . . . . .	223
9.6.5	Installing a FBU . . . . .	224
9.6.5.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	224
9.6.5.2	Preparing the FBU . . . . .	225
9.6.5.3	Installing TFM to the RAID controller (if applicable) . . . . .	226
9.6.5.4	SAS 2.0 Connecting the FBU cable to the FBU . . . . .	228
9.6.5.5	SAS 2.0 installing the FBU holder onto the air duct . . . . .	228
9.6.5.6	SAS 2.0 Installing the air duct with an FBU . . . . .	229
9.6.5.7	SAS 3.0 installing TFM toSAS RAID controller D3216 . . . . .	231

9.6.5.8	Concluding steps . . . . .	233
9.6.6	Removing a FBU . . . . .	235
9.6.6.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	235
9.6.6.2	Removing the air duct with an FBU . . . . .	236
9.6.6.3	Removing the FBU holder from the air duct . . . . .	237
9.6.6.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	237
9.6.7	Replacing a FBU . . . . .	238
9.6.7.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	238
9.6.7.2	Removing a FBU from the air duct . . . . .	239
9.6.7.3	Disconnecting the FBU cable from the FBU . . . . .	239
9.6.7.4	Removing the FBU from the holder . . . . .	240
9.6.7.5	Installing a new FBU . . . . .	240
9.6.7.6	Concluding steps . . . . .	240
<b>9.7</b>	<b>Handling SFP+ transceiver modules . . . . .</b>	<b>241</b>
9.7.1	Installing SFP+ transceiver modules . . . . .	241
9.7.2	Removing an SFP+ transceiver module . . . . .	246
9.7.3	Replacing SFP+ transceiver modules . . . . .	248
<b>10</b>	<b>Main memory . . . . .</b>	<b>251</b>
<b>10.1</b>	<b>Basic information . . . . .</b>	<b>252</b>
10.1.1	Memory sequence . . . . .	253
10.1.1.1	Population rules . . . . .	253
10.1.1.2	Independent Channel mode . . . . .	255
10.1.1.3	Mirrored Channel and Performance modes . . . . .	256
10.1.1.4	Rank Sparing mode . . . . .	257
<b>10.2</b>	<b>Installing memory modules . . . . .</b>	<b>261</b>
10.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	261
10.2.2	Installing a memory module . . . . .	261
10.2.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	263
<b>10.3</b>	<b>Removing memory modules . . . . .</b>	<b>264</b>
10.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	264
10.3.2	Removing a memory module . . . . .	264
10.3.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	266
<b>10.4</b>	<b>Replacing memory modules . . . . .</b>	<b>266</b>
10.4.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	266
10.4.2	Removing the defective memory module . . . . .	267
10.4.3	Installing a new memory module . . . . .	267
10.4.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	267

<b>11</b>	<b>Processors</b>	<b>269</b>
<b>11.1</b>	<b>Basic information</b>	<b>270</b>
11.1.1	Supported processors	270
11.1.2	Processor locations	270
<b>11.2</b>	<b>Installing processors</b>	<b>271</b>
11.2.1	Preliminary steps	271
11.2.2	Installing the processor	271
11.2.2.1	Opening the load plate	272
11.2.2.2	Installing the new processor	276
11.2.2.3	Removing the protective socket cover	277
11.2.2.4	Closing the load plate	279
11.2.3	Concluding steps	280
<b>11.3</b>	<b>Removing processors</b>	<b>281</b>
11.3.1	Preliminary steps	281
11.3.2	Removing a processor	281
11.3.2.1	Opening the load plate	282
11.3.2.2	Removing the processor	286
11.3.2.3	Closing the load plate	287
11.3.2.4	Installing the protective cover	288
11.3.2.5	Closing the load plate	290
11.3.3	Concluding steps	291
<b>11.4</b>	<b>Upgrading or replacing processors</b>	<b>292</b>
11.4.1	Preliminary steps	292
11.4.2	Upgrading or replacing a processor	292
11.4.3	Concluding steps	293
<b>11.5</b>	<b>Handling processor heat sinks</b>	<b>294</b>
11.5.1	Preliminary steps	294
11.5.2	Installing processor heat sinks	294
11.5.2.1	Preparing the heat sink and processor	296
11.5.2.2	Installing the heat sink	297
11.5.3	Removing processor heat sinks	299
11.5.4	Replacing processor heat sinks	301
11.5.4.1	Removing the processor heat sink	301
11.5.4.2	Applying thermal paste	301
11.5.4.3	Installing the processor heat sink	301
11.5.5	Concluding steps	301
<b>11.6</b>	<b>Applying thermal paste</b>	<b>302</b>

---

<b>12</b>	<b>Accessible drives</b>	<b>305</b>
<b>12.1</b>	<b>Basic informations</b>	<b>306</b>
<b>12.2</b>	<b>Installing a Local Service Display (LSD) module</b>	<b>307</b>
12.2.1	Preliminary steps	307
12.2.2	Removing the LSD dummy cover	308
12.2.3	Installing a LSD module	309
12.2.4	Concluding steps	310
<b>12.3</b>	<b>Removing a LSD module</b>	<b>311</b>
12.3.1	Preliminary steps	311
12.3.2	Removing the LSD module	311
12.3.3	Concluding steps	313
<b>12.4</b>	<b>Replacing a LSD module</b>	<b>313</b>
12.4.1	Preliminary steps	314
12.4.2	Removing the defective LSD module	314
12.4.3	Installing the new LSD module	314
12.4.4	Concluding steps	314
<b>12.5</b>	<b>Installing the optical disk drive (ODD)</b>	<b>314</b>
12.5.1	Preliminary steps	315
12.5.2	Removing the ODD dummy module	315
12.5.3	Preparing an ODD	316
12.5.4	Installing an ODD	318
12.5.5	Concluding steps	318
<b>12.6</b>	<b>Removing the optical disc drive (ODD)</b>	<b>319</b>
12.6.1	Preliminary steps	319
12.6.2	Removing the ODD	320
12.6.3	Concluding steps	323
<b>12.7</b>	<b>Replacing an ODD</b>	<b>323</b>
12.7.1	Preliminary steps	324
12.7.2	Removing the defective ODD	324
12.7.3	Installing the new ODD	324
12.7.4	Concluding steps	324
<b>12.8</b>	<b>Installing a tape/RDX drive in 3.5-inch version</b>	<b>325</b>
12.8.1	Preliminary steps	325
12.8.2	Installing a tape/RDX drive in the cage	325
12.8.3	Installing the tape/RDX drive	327
12.8.4	Connecting the tape/RDX drive	329
12.8.4.1	Connecting the tape/RDX drive to the systemboard	329
12.8.4.2	Connecting the RDX drive to the USB 3.0 interface card	329

## Contents

---

12.8.5	Concluding steps . . . . .	331
<b>12.9</b>	<b>Removing a tape/RDX drive in 3.5-inch version . . . . .</b>	<b>331</b>
12.9.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	332
12.9.2	Removing the drive cage . . . . .	332
12.9.3	Removing a tape/RDX drive out of the cage . . . . .	333
12.9.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	334
<b>12.10</b>	<b>Replacing the tape/RDX drive in 3.5-inch version . . . . .</b>	<b>335</b>
12.10.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	335
12.10.2	Removing the defective tape/RDX drive . . . . .	335
12.10.3	Installing the new tape/RDX drive . . . . .	335
12.10.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	336
<b>12.11</b>	<b>Installing a tape/RDX drive in 2.5-inch version . . . . .</b>	<b>336</b>
12.11.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	336
12.11.2	Installing a tape/RDX drive in the cage . . . . .	337
12.11.3	Installing the tape/RDX drive . . . . .	339
12.11.4	Connecting the tape/RDX drive . . . . .	339
12.11.4.1	Connecting the tape/RDX drive to the system board . . . . .	339
12.11.4.2	Connecting the RDX drive to the USB 3.0 interface card . . . . .	340
12.11.5	Concluding steps . . . . .	343
<b>12.12</b>	<b>Removing a tape/RDX drive in 2.5-inch version . . . . .</b>	<b>343</b>
12.12.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	343
12.12.2	Removing the drive cage . . . . .	344
12.12.3	Removing a tape/RDX drive out of the cage . . . . .	345
12.12.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	347
<b>12.13</b>	<b>Replacing the tape/RDX drive in 2.5-inch version . . . . .</b>	<b>347</b>
12.13.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	347
12.13.2	Removing the defective tape/RDX drive . . . . .	348
12.13.3	Installing the new tape/RDX drive . . . . .	348
12.13.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	348
<b>12.14</b>	<b>Installing an LTO drive in 2.5-inch version . . . . .</b>	<b>349</b>
12.14.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	349
12.14.2	Removing the drive cage . . . . .	349
12.14.3	Removing the tape drive dummy module . . . . .	351
12.14.4	Installing an LTO drive in the cage . . . . .	352
12.14.5	Installing the LTO cage . . . . .	355
12.14.6	Concluding steps . . . . .	357
<b>12.15</b>	<b>Removing an LTO drive in 2.5-inch version . . . . .</b>	<b>358</b>
12.15.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	358
12.15.2	Removing the drive cage . . . . .	359

12.15.3	Removing an LTO drive out of the cage . . . . .	362
12.15.4	Installing the tape drive dummy module . . . . .	364
12.15.5	Concluding steps . . . . .	366
<b>12.16</b>	<b>Replacing the LTO drive in 2.5-inch version . . . . .</b>	<b>367</b>
12.16.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	367
12.16.2	Removing the defective LTO drive . . . . .	367
12.16.3	Installing the new LTO drive . . . . .	367
12.16.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	368
<b>13</b>	<b>Front panel and external connectors . . . . .</b>	<b>369</b>
<hr/>		
<b>13.1</b>	<b>Front panel module . . . . .</b>	<b>369</b>
13.1.1	Replacing the front panel module . . . . .	369
13.1.1.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	370
13.1.1.2	Removing the front panel module . . . . .	371
13.1.1.3	Installing the front panel module . . . . .	373
13.1.1.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	376
<b>13.2</b>	<b>Front VGA connector . . . . .</b>	<b>377</b>
13.2.1	Installing the front VGA connector . . . . .	377
13.2.1.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	377
13.2.1.2	Removing the front panel module . . . . .	377
13.2.1.3	Preparing the front panel module . . . . .	378
13.2.1.4	Installing the front VGA connector . . . . .	378
13.2.1.5	Re-installing the front panel module . . . . .	379
13.2.1.6	Concluding steps . . . . .	380
13.2.2	Removing the front VGA connector . . . . .	381
13.2.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	381
13.2.2.2	Removing the front VGA cable . . . . .	381
13.2.2.3	Removing the front VGA connector . . . . .	382
13.2.2.4	Re-installing the front panel module . . . . .	382
13.2.2.5	Concluding steps . . . . .	382
13.2.3	Replacing the front VGA connector . . . . .	383
13.2.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	383
13.2.3.2	Removing the front panel module . . . . .	383
13.2.3.3	Removing the front VGA connector . . . . .	383
13.2.3.4	Installing the new front VGA connector . . . . .	383
13.2.3.5	Re-installing the front panel module . . . . .	384
13.2.3.6	Concluding steps . . . . .	384
<b>13.3</b>	<b>Front LAN connector . . . . .</b>	<b>384</b>
13.3.1	Installing the front LAN connector . . . . .	384

## Contents

---

13.3.1.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	384
13.3.1.2	Removing the front panel module . . . . .	385
13.3.1.3	Preparing the front panel module . . . . .	385
13.3.1.4	Installing the front LAN connector . . . . .	386
13.3.1.5	Installing the LAN board . . . . .	390
13.3.1.6	Concluding steps . . . . .	392
13.3.1.7	Using the front management LAN connector . . . . .	393
13.3.2	Removing the front LAN connector . . . . .	394
13.3.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	394
13.3.2.2	Removing the front LAN board . . . . .	394
13.3.2.3	Removing the front LAN connector . . . . .	396
13.3.2.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	399
13.3.3	Replacing the front LAN connector and board . . . . .	400
13.3.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	400
13.3.3.2	Removing the front panel module . . . . .	400
13.3.3.3	Removing the defective front LAN connector . . . . .	400
13.3.3.4	Installing the new front LAN connector . . . . .	400
13.3.3.5	Re-installing the front panel module . . . . .	400
13.3.3.6	Concluding steps . . . . .	400
<b>13.4</b>	<b>Front cage . . . . .</b>	<b>401</b>
13.4.1	Replacing the front panel cage . . . . .	401
13.4.1.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	401
13.4.1.2	Removing the front panel cage . . . . .	401
13.4.1.3	Re-installing the front panel cage . . . . .	403
13.4.1.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	405
<b>14</b>	<b>System board and components . . . . .</b>	<b>407</b>
<b>14.1</b>	<b>Basic information . . . . .</b>	<b>407</b>
<b>14.2</b>	<b>Replacing the CMOS battery . . . . .</b>	<b>408</b>
14.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	408
14.2.2	Removing the battery . . . . .	409
14.2.3	Installing the CMOS battery . . . . .	410
14.2.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	410
<b>14.3</b>	<b>USB Flash Module (UFM) . . . . .</b>	<b>411</b>
14.3.1	Installing the UFM . . . . .	411
14.3.1.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	411
14.3.1.2	Installing the UFM . . . . .	412
14.3.1.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	413
14.3.1.4	Software configuration . . . . .	413

14.3.2	Removing the UFM . . . . .	414
14.3.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	415
14.3.2.2	Removing the UFM . . . . .	415
14.3.2.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	416
14.3.3	Replacing the UFM . . . . .	417
14.3.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	417
14.3.3.2	Removing the UFM . . . . .	417
14.3.3.3	Installing the new UFM . . . . .	418
14.3.3.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	420
14.3.3.5	Software configuration . . . . .	420
<b>14.4</b>	<b>Trusted Platform Module (TPM) . . . . .</b>	<b>421</b>
14.4.1	Installing the TPM . . . . .	421
14.4.1.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	421
14.4.1.2	Installing the TPM . . . . .	422
14.4.1.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	425
14.4.2	Removing the TPM . . . . .	426
14.4.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	427
14.4.2.2	Removing the TPM . . . . .	429
14.4.2.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	431
14.4.3	Replacing the TPM . . . . .	431
14.4.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	431
14.4.3.2	Removing the TPM . . . . .	432
14.4.3.3	Re-installing the TPM . . . . .	432
14.4.3.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	433
<b>14.5</b>	<b>Onboard SAS enabling key . . . . .</b>	<b>433</b>
14.5.1	Installing the onboard SAS enabling key . . . . .	433
14.5.1.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	433
14.5.1.2	Installing the onboard SAS enabling key . . . . .	434
14.5.1.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	436
14.5.2	Removing the onboard SAS enabling key . . . . .	436
14.5.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	436
14.5.2.2	Removing onboard SAS enabling key . . . . .	437
14.5.2.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	437
14.5.3	Replacing the onboard SAS enabling key . . . . .	438
14.5.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	438
14.5.3.2	Replacing the onboard SAS enabling key . . . . .	438
14.5.3.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	438
<b>14.6</b>	<b>iRMC microSD card . . . . .</b>	<b>439</b>
14.6.1	Installing the iRMC microSD card . . . . .	439
14.6.1.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	439
14.6.1.2	Installing the iRMC microSD card . . . . .	439

## Contents

---

14.6.1.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	440
14.6.2	Removing the iRMC microSD card . . . . .	440
14.6.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	440
14.6.2.2	Removing the iRMC microSD card . . . . .	441
14.6.2.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	441
14.6.3	Replacing the iRMC microSD card . . . . .	442
14.6.3.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	442
14.6.3.2	Replacing the iRMC microSD card . . . . .	442
14.6.3.3	Concluding steps . . . . .	442
<b>14.7</b>	<b>Replacing the system board . . . . .</b>	<b>443</b>
14.7.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	445
14.7.2	Removing the defective system board . . . . .	446
14.7.3	Installing the system board . . . . .	448
14.7.3.1	Mounting the system board . . . . .	448
14.7.3.2	Swapping processors . . . . .	450
14.7.4	Concluding steps . . . . .	451
<b>15</b>	<b>Conversion configurations . . . . .</b>	<b>453</b>
<b>15.1</b>	<b>Basic information . . . . .</b>	<b>453</b>
15.1.1	Supported conversions . . . . .	453
15.1.2	SAS cabling . . . . .	454
<b>15.2</b>	<b>Basic Procedures . . . . .</b>	<b>455</b>
15.2.1	Preliminary steps . . . . .	455
15.2.2	Removing the front cover . . . . .	455
15.2.3	Removing HDD cages and front panel cage . . . . .	457
15.2.4	Installing HDD cage and front panel cage . . . . .	458
15.2.5	Installing the front cover . . . . .	459
15.2.5.1	Multicage in bay 4/5 . . . . .	459
15.2.5.2	Panelhousing in bay 5 . . . . .	460
<b>15.3</b>	<b>Converting . . . . .</b>	<b>461</b>
15.3.1	Configuration 2 to configuration 4 . . . . .	461
15.3.2	Configuration 2 to configuration 7 . . . . .	464
15.3.3	Configuration 2 to configuration 3 . . . . .	468
15.3.4	Configuration 2 to configuration 10 . . . . .	471
15.3.5	Configuration 3 to configuration 6 . . . . .	474
15.3.6	Configuration 4 to configuration 7 . . . . .	477
15.3.7	Configuration 4 to configuration 8 . . . . .	479
15.3.8	Configuration 7 to configuration 8 . . . . .	480

---

<b>15.4</b>	<b>Concluding steps</b> . . . . .	<b>480</b>
<b>16</b>	<b>Cables</b> . . . . .	<b>481</b>

---

<b>16.1</b>	<b>List of used cables</b> . . . . .	<b>481</b>
16.1.1	SAS 2.0 configuration . . . . .	481
16.1.2	Additional cables for SAS 3.0 configuration . . . . .	483
<b>16.2</b>	<b>Cabling plans</b> . . . . .	<b>485</b>
16.2.1	Configuration 1 . . . . .	485
16.2.2	Configuration 2 . . . . .	487
16.2.3	Configuration 3 . . . . .	489
16.2.4	Configuration 4 . . . . .	491
16.2.5	Configuration 5 . . . . .	492
16.2.6	Configuration 6 . . . . .	494
16.2.7	Configuration 7 . . . . .	496
16.2.8	Configuration 8 . . . . .	497
16.2.9	Configuration 10 . . . . .	498
16.2.10	Configuration 12 . . . . .	499
16.2.10.1	8x 2.5-inch SAS 3.0 HDD model + DAT/RDX (USB2.0) . . . . .	499
16.2.10.2	8x 2.5-inch SAS3.0 HDD model + RDX (USB3.0) . . . . .	500
16.2.11	Configuration 15 . . . . .	501
16.2.11.1	8x2.5.inch SAS 3.0 HDD + LTO3 . . . . .	501
16.2.11.2	8x2.5.inch SAS 3.0 HDD + LTO4/5/6 . . . . .	502
16.2.12	Configuration with OOB . . . . .	503
16.2.13	Modular LAN NCSI sideband cabling . . . . .	504
<b>17</b>	<b>Appendix</b> . . . . .	<b>505</b>

---

<b>17.1</b>	<b>Mechanical overview</b> . . . . .	<b>505</b>
17.1.1	Server front . . . . .	505
17.1.2	Server rear . . . . .	506
17.1.3	Server interior . . . . .	507
<b>17.2</b>	<b>Configuration tables</b> . . . . .	<b>508</b>
17.2.1	Hard disk drives / solid state drives mounting order . . . . .	508
17.2.2	Memory board configuration table . . . . .	508
17.2.3	Expansion card configuration table . . . . .	508
<b>17.3</b>	<b>Connectors and indicators</b> . . . . .	<b>509</b>
17.3.1	Connectors and indicators on the system board . . . . .	509
17.3.1.1	Onboard connectors . . . . .	509

## Contents

---

17.3.1.2	Onboard indicators and controls . . . . .	511
17.3.2	Connectors and indicators on the I/O panel . . . . .	514
17.3.2.1	I/O panel connectors . . . . .	514
17.3.2.2	I/O panel indicators . . . . .	515
17.3.3	Connectors and indicators on the front panel . . . . .	517
17.3.3.1	Front panel connectors . . . . .	517
17.3.3.2	Front panel controls and indicators . . . . .	518
<b>17.4</b>	<b>Onboard settings . . . . .</b>	<b>523</b>
<b>17.5</b>	<b>Minimum startup configuration . . . . .</b>	<b>524</b>

---

# 1 Introduction

This Upgrade and Maintenance Manual provides instructions for the following procedures:

- Upgrading the server configuration by adding optional hardware components
- Upgrading the server configuration by replacing existing hardware components with superior ones.
- Replacing defective hardware components

This manual focuses on on-site maintenance tasks. It is recommended to prepare each service assignment following remote diagnostics procedures, as described in the "ServerView Suite Local Service Concept (LSC)" manual (see section ["Documents you need at hand" on page 36](#)).







## **CAUTION!**

The document at hand comprises procedures of a wide range of complexity. Check the profile of qualification for technicians before assigning tasks. Before you start, carefully read ["Classification of procedures" on page 29](#).

## 1.1 Notational conventions

The following notational conventions are used in this manual:

<i>Text in italics</i>	indicates commands or menu items
fixed font	indicates system output
<b>semi-bold fixed font</b>	indicates text to be entered by the user
"Quotation marks"	indicate names of chapters and terms that are being emphasized
▶	describes activities that must be performed in the order shown
<b>Abc</b>	indicates keys on the keyboard
 <b>CAUTION!</b>	Pay particular attention to texts marked with this symbol! Failure to observe this warning may endanger your life, destroy the system or lead to the loss of data.
	indicates additional information, notes and tips
	indicates the procedure category in terms of complexity and qualification requirements, see " <a href="#">Classification of procedures</a> " on page 29
	indicates the average task duration, see " <a href="#">Average task duration</a> " on page 31

---

## 2 Before you start

Before you start any upgrade or maintenance task, please proceed as follows:

- ▶ Carefully read the safety instructions in chapter "[Important information](#)" on [page 39](#).
- ▶ Make sure that all necessary manuals are available. Refer to the documentation overview in section "[Documents you need at hand](#)" on [page 36](#). Print the PDF files if required.
- ▶ Make yourself familiar with the procedure categories introduced in section "[Classification of procedures](#)" on [page 29](#).
- ▶ Ensure that all required tools are available according to section "[Tools you need at hand](#)" on [page 32](#).



### CAUTION

In a system that has the Cool-safe<sup>®</sup> Advanced Thermal Design option, only components that support the higher operating range may be installed. Further information on this is available in the configurator.



The Cool-safe<sup>®</sup> Advanced Thermal Design option can only be ordered from the manufacturer and is indicated by the logo on the identification rating plate.

### Installing optional components

The operating manual of your server gives an introduction to server features and provides an overview of available hardware options.

Use the Fujitsu ServerView Suite management software and the iRMC web frontend to prepare hardware expansions. ServerView Suite documentation is available online at <http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com>

(<http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/manual/> for the Japanese market).

Please refer to the following ServerView Suite topics:

- Operation
- Virtualization
- Maintenance
- Out-Of-Band Management

## Before you start

---



For the latest information on hardware options, refer to your server's hardware configurator available online at the following address:

for the EMEA market:

[http://ts.fujitsu.com/products/standard\\_servers/index.htm](http://ts.fujitsu.com/products/standard_servers/index.htm)

for the Japanese market:

<http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/system/>

Please contact your local Fujitsu customer service partner for details on how to order expansion kits or spare parts. Use the Fujitsu Illustrated Spares Catalog to identify the required spare part and obtain technical data and order information. Illustrated Spares catalogs are available online at

[http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com/illustrated\\_spares](http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com/illustrated_spares) (EMEA market only).

### Replacing a defective component

The global error indicators on the front and rear sides of your server as well as local diagnostic LEDs on the front panel report defective hardware components that need to be replaced. For further information on the controls and indicators of your server, refer to the operating manual of your server and section "[Connectors and indicators](#)" on page 509.

If the system has been powered off in order to replace a non-hot plug unit, a system of PRIMERGY diagnostic indicators guides you to the defective component. The "Indicate CSS" button enables the indicator next to the defective component even if the server has been switched off and disconnected from the mains. For further information, please refer to sections "[Using diagnostics information](#)" on page 51 and "[Connectors and indicators on the front panel](#)" on page 517.

If the defective component is a customer replaceable unit included in the CSS concept (Customer Self Service, only available for EMEA market), the CSS indicators on the front and rear side of the server will light up.

For further information, refer to the "ServerView Suite Local Service Concept (LSC)" manual available online at <http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com> (EMEA market) or <http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/manual/> (Japanese market).

It is recommended to prepare local maintenance tasks using remote diagnostics procedures, as described in the "ServerView Suite Local Service Concept (LSC)" manual.

## 2.1 Classification of procedures

The complexity of maintenance procedures varies significantly. Procedures have been assigned to one of three unit categories, indicating the level of difficulty and required qualification.

At the beginning of each procedure, the involved unit type is indicated by one of the symbols introduced in this section.



Please ask your local Fujitsu service center for more detailed information.

### 2.1.1 Customer Replaceable Units (CRU)



#### Customer Replaceable Unit (CRU)

*Customer Replaceable Units* are intended for customer self service and may be installed or replaced as hot-plug components during operation.



Components that the customer is entitled to replace may differ according to the service form in his country.

Hot-plug components increase system availability and guarantee a high degree of data integrity and fail-safe performance. Procedures can be carried out without shutting down the server or going offline.

#### Components that are handled as Customer Replaceable Units

- Hot-plug power supply units
- Hot-plug fan modules
- Hot-plug HDD / SSD modules

#### Peripherals that are handled as Customer Replaceable Units

- Keyboard
- Mouse

### 2.1.2 Upgrade and Repair Units (URU)



#### Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)

*Upgrade and Repair Units* are non hot-plug components that can be ordered separately to be installed as options (*Upgrade Units*) or are available to the customer through customer self service (*Repair Units*).



Server management error messages and diagnostic indicators on the front panel and system board will report defective *Upgrade and Repair Units* as customer replaceable CSS components.

Upgrade and repair procedures involve shutting down and opening the server.



#### **CAUTION!**

The device may be seriously damaged or cause damage if it is opened without authorization or if repairs are attempted by unauthorized and untrained personnel.

#### **Components that are handled as Upgrade Units**

- Processors (upgrade kits)
- Optical disk drives
- Backup drives
- Expansion cards
- Battery backup units
- Memory modules
- iRMC microSD card

#### **Components that are handled solely as Repair Units**

- CMOS battery
- Non hot-plug fans
- Non hot-plug hard disk drives

## 2.1.3 Field Replaceable Units (FRU)



### Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)

Removing and installing *Field Replaceable Units* involves complex maintenance procedures on integral server components. Procedures will require shutting down, opening and disassembling the server.



#### CAUTION!

Maintenance procedures involving *Field Replaceable Units* must be performed exclusively by Fujitsu service personnel or technicians trained by Fujitsu. Please note that unauthorized interference with the system will void the warranty and exempt the manufacturer from all liability.

### Components that are handled as Field Replaceable Units

- Processor (replacement)
- SAS / SATA backplanes
- Power distribution board
- Front panel module
- Management and diagnostics modules
- System board
- Standard power supply unit
- Trusted Platform Module (TPM)
- USB Flash Module (UFM)

## 2.2 Average task duration



### Hardware: 10 minutes

The average task duration including preliminary and concluding steps is indicated at the beginning of each procedure next to the procedure class.

Refer to [table 1 on page 32](#) for an overview of steps taken into account for calculating the average task duration:

## Before you start

---

Step	included	Explanation
Server shutdown	no	Shutdown time depends on hardware and software configuration and may vary significantly.  Software tasks necessary before maintenance are described in section <a href="#">"Starting the maintenance task" on page 73</a> .
Rack removal, disassembly	<b>yes</b>	Making the server available, removing the server from the rack (if applicable)
Transport	no	Transporting the server to the service table (where required) depends on local customer conditions.
Maintenance procedures	<b>yes</b>	Maintenance procedures including preliminary and concluding software tasks
Transport	no	Returning the server to its installation site (where required) depends on local customer conditions.
Assembly, rack installation	<b>yes</b>	Reassembling the server, installing the server in the rack (if applicable)
Starting up	no	Booting time depends on hardware and software configuration and may vary significantly.

Table 1: Calculation of the average task duration

## 2.3 Tools you need at hand

When preparing the maintenance task, ensure that all required tools are available according to the overview below. You will find a list of required tools at the beginning of each procedure.





Screw driver / Bit insert / torque	Screw	Usage	Type
Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 hexagonal cross SW5 / PZ2 0.6 Nm		HDD cages to chassis RDX/DAT cage in 3.5" variant (A100) Slot bracket to chassis Fan box	M3 x 4.5 mm (silver) C26192-Y10-C67
Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 hexagonal cross SW5 / PZ2 0.6 Nm		System board Front panel	M3 x 6 mm (silver) C26192-Y10-C68
Torx TX10 0.6 Nm		3.5-inch HDD	UNC 6-32 x 4.76 mm (silver) C26192-Y10-C27
Phillips PH0 / (+) No. 0 0.4 Nm		2.5-inch HDD/SSDs RDX/DAT in 2.5-inch variant LTO drive	M3 x 3.5 mm Wafer head screw (silver) C26192-Y10- C102

Table 2: List of required tools and used screws

## Before you start

Screw driver / Bit insert / torque	Screw	Usage	Type
TPM bit insert Dedicated TPM screw driver / TPM module fixing tool (for the Japanese market) 0.4 Nm		TPM screw One way head (black)	REM 3 x 15 mm (black) C26192-Y10-C176
Phillips PH0 / (+) No. 0 0.06 Nm		UFM nylon screw	M3 x 4.5 mm (white) A3C40109082
Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 hexagonal cross SW5 / PZ2 0.4 Nm		Slot bracket to controller board	M3 x 3.5 mm C26192-Y10-C151
Cross 0.2 Nm		ODD latch (delivered with the accessory pack)	M2 x 5 mm (silver) C26192-Y10-C63
Cylinder head Torx Plus 6 0.2 Nm		ODD latch (used by factory mounting)	M2 x 4 mm (black) C26192-Y10-C166


Table 2: List of required tools and used screws

Screw driver / Bit insert / torque	Screw	Usage	Type
Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 0.6 Nm		USB 3.0 PCI card D3305	M3 x 5 mm (silver) (contained in card kit S26361-D3305- A10)
Philips PH0 0.4 Nm		TFM	M2.5 x 4 mm (silver)
Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 SW6 1 Nm		heat sink	captive screw

Table 2: List of required tools and used screws

## 2.4 Documents you need at hand

Maintenance procedures may include references to additional documentation. When preparing the maintenance task, ensure that all required manuals are available according to the overview below.

-  – Ensure to store all printed manuals enclosed with your server in a save place for future reference.
- Unless stated otherwise, all manuals are available online at <http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com> under *Industry standard servers*.

For the Japanese market please use the following address:  
<http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/manual/>

Document	Description
"Quick Start Hardware - PRIMERGY RX300 S8" leaflet	Quick installation poster for initial operation, available online
"ServerView Quick Start Guide" "ServerView クイックスタートガイド" for the Japanese market	Information on initial server setup and software configuration, available online
"Safety notes and regulations" manual "安全上のご注意" for the Japanese market	Important safety information, available online or as a printed copy
"PRIMERGY RX300 S8 Server" Operating Manual	Available online
"D2939 BIOS Setup Utility for PRIMERGY RX300 S8" Reference Manual	Information on configurable BIOS options and parameters, available online
System board and service labels	Labels inside the housing cover outlining connectors, indicators and jumper
Software documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– "ServerView Suite Local Service Concept (LSC)" user guide</li> <li>– "ServerView Operations Manager - Server Management" user guide</li> <li>– "IRMC S4 Integrated Remote Management Controller" user guide</li> <li>– "ServerView embedded Lifecycle Management (eLCM)" User Guide</li> </ul>

Table 3: Documentation you need at hand

Document	Description
Illustrated Spares catalog	Spare parts identification and information system (EMEA market only), available for online use or download (Windows OS) at <a href="http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com/illustrated_spares">http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com/illustrated_spares</a> or from the CSS component view of the ServerView Operations Manager
Glossary	available online
"Warranty" manual "保証書" for the Japanese market	Important information on warranty regulations, recycling and service, available online, or as a printed copy
"Returning used devices" manual "Service Desk" leaflet "サポート & サービス" for the Japanese market	Recycling and contact information, available online, or as a printed copy
Additional documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– "iRMC S4" user guide available online</li> <li>– RAID documentation, available online at <a href="http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com">http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com</a> under <i>Industry standard servers - Expansion Cards - Storage Adapters</i></li> </ul> <p>For the Japanese market please use the following address: <a href="http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primer-gy/manual/">http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primer-gy/manual/</a></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Rack documentation</li> </ul>
Third party documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Operating system documentation, online help</li> <li>– Peripherals documentation</li> </ul>

Table 3: Documentation you need at hand



---

## 3 Important information



### CAUTION!

Before installing and starting up a device, please observe the safety instructions listed in the following section. This will help you to avoid making serious errors that could impair your health, damage the device and endanger the data base.



Keep this manual and the other documentation (such as the technical manual, documentation DVD) close to the device. All documentation must be included if the equipment is passed on to a third party.

### 3.1 Safety instructions



The following safety instructions are also provided in the manual "Safety Notes and Regulations" or "安全上のご注意".

This device meets the relevant safety regulations for IT equipment. If you have any questions about whether you can install the server in the intended environment, please contact your sales outlet or our customer service team.

- The actions described in this manual shall be performed by technical specialists. A technical specialist is a person who is trained to install the server including hardware and software.
- Repairs to the device that do not relate to CSS failures shall be performed by service personnel. Please note that unauthorized interference with the system will void the warranty and exempt the manufacturer from all liability.
- Any failure to observe the guidelines in this manual, and any improper repairs could expose the user to risks (electric shock, energy hazards, fire hazards) or damage the equipment.
- Before installing/removing internal options to/from the server, turn off the server, all peripheral devices, and any other connected devices. Also unplug all power cords from the power outlet. Failure to do so can cause electric shock or damage.

#### Before starting up

- During installation and before operating the device, observe the instructions on environmental conditions for your device.

## Important information

---

- If the device is brought in from a cold environment, condensation may form both inside and on the outside of the device.

Wait until the device has acclimatized to room temperature and is absolutely dry before starting it up. Material damage may be caused to the device if this requirement is not observed.

- Transport the device only in the original packaging or in packaging that protects it from knocks and jolts.  
For the Japanese market, transporting the device in its original packaging does not apply.

## Installation and operation

- This unit should not be operated in ambient temperatures above 35 °C. For servers with Cool-safe<sup>®</sup> Advanced Thermal Design the ambient temperature can increase to 40 °C.
- If the unit is integrated into an installation that draws power from an industrial power supply network with an IEC309 connector, the power supply's fuse protection must comply with the requirements for non-industrial power supply networks for type A connectors.
- The unit automatically adjusts itself to a mains voltage in a range of 100 VAC to 240 VAC. Ensure that the local mains voltage lies within these limits.
- This device must only be connected to properly grounded power outlets or connected to the grounded rack internal power distribution system with tested and approved power cords.
- Ensure that the device is connected to a properly grounded power outlet close to the device.
- Ensure that the power sockets on the device and the properly grounded power outlets are easily accessible.
- The On/Off button or the main power switch (if present) does not isolate the device from the mains power supply. In case of repair or servicing disconnect the device completely from the mains power supply, unplug all power plugs from the properly grounded power outlets.
- Always connect the server and the attached peripherals to the same power circuit. Otherwise you run the risk of losing data if, for example, the server is still running but a peripheral device (e.g. memory subsystem) fails during a power outage.
- Data cables must be adequately shielded.

- Ethernet cabling has to comply with EN 50173 and EN 50174-1/2 standards or ISO/IEC 11801 standard respectively. The minimum requirement is a Category 5 shielded cable for 10/100 Ethernet, or a Category 5e cable for Gigabit Ethernet.
- Route the cables in such a way that they do not create a potential hazard (make sure no-one can trip over them) and that they cannot be damaged. When connecting the server, refer to the relevant instructions in this manual.
- Never connect or disconnect data transmission lines during a storm (risk of lightning hazard).
- Make sure that no objects (e.g. jewelry, paperclips etc.) or liquids can get inside the server (risk of electric shock, short circuit).
- In emergencies (e.g. damaged casing, controls or cables, penetration of liquids or foreign bodies), contact the system administrator or your customer service team. Only disconnect the system from the mains power supply if there is no risk of harming yourself.
- Proper operation of the system (in accordance with IEC 60950-1 resp. EN 60950-1) is only ensured if the casing is completely assembled and the rear covers for the installation slots have been fitted (electric shock, cooling, fire protection, interference suppression).
- Only install system expansions that satisfy the requirements and rules governing safety and electromagnetic compatibility and those relating to telecommunication terminals. If you install other expansions, they may damage the system or violate the safety regulations. Information on which system expansions are approved for installation can be obtained from our customer service center or your sales outlet.
- The components marked with a warning notice (e.g. lightning symbol) may only be opened, removed or exchanged by authorized, qualified personnel. Exception: CSS components can be replaced.
- The warranty is void if the server is damaged during installation or replacement of system expansions.
- Only set screen resolutions and refresh rates that are specified in the operating manual for the monitor. Otherwise, you may damage your monitor. If you are in any doubt, contact your sales outlet or customer service center.
- Before installing/removing internal options to/from the server, turn off the server, all peripheral devices, and any other connected devices. Also unplug all power cords from the outlet. Failure to do so can cause electric shock.

## Important information

---

- Do not damage or modify internal cables or devices. Doing so may cause a device failure, fire, or electric shock and will void the warranty and exempt the manufacturer from all liability.
- Devices inside the server remain hot after shutdown. Wait for a while after shutdown before installing or removing internal options.
- The circuit boards and soldered parts of internal options are exposed and can be damaged by static electricity. To ensure reliable protection, if you are wearing an earthing band on your wrist when working with this type of module, connect it to an unpainted, conducting metal part of the system.
- Do not touch the circuitry on boards or soldered parts. Hold the metallic areas or the edges of the circuit boards.
- Install the screw removed during installation/detaching internal options in former device/position. To use a screw of the different kind can cause a breakdown of equipment.
- The installation indicated on this document is sometimes changed to the kind of possible options without notice.

## Batteries

- Incorrect replacement of batteries may lead to a risk of explosion. The batteries may only be replaced with identical batteries or with a type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Do not throw batteries into the trash can.
- Batteries must be disposed of in accordance with local regulations concerning special waste.
- Make sure that you insert the battery the right way round.
- The battery used in this device may present a fire or chemical burn hazard if mistreated. Do not disassemble, heat about 100 °C (212F), or incinerate the battery.
- All batteries containing pollutants are marked with a symbol (a crossed-out garbage can). In addition, the marking is provided with the chemical symbol of the heavy metal decisive for the classification as a pollutant:

Cd Cadmium

Hg Mercury

Pb Lead

### Working with optical disk drives and media

When working with optical disk drives, these instructions must be followed.



#### **CAUTION!**

- Only use CDs/DVDs/BDs that are in perfect condition, in order to prevent data loss, equipment damage and injury.
- Check each CD/DVD/BD for damage, cracks, breakages etc. before inserting it in the drive.

Note that any additional labels applied may change the mechanical properties of a CD/DVD/BD and cause imbalance and vibrations.

Damaged and imbalanced CDs/DVDs/BDs can break at high drive speeds (data loss).

Under certain circumstances, sharp CD/DVD/BD fragments can pierce the cover of the optical disk drive (equipment damage) and can fly out of the device (danger of injury, particularly to uncovered body parts such as the face or neck).

- High humidity and airborne dust levels are to be avoided. Electric shocks and/or server failures may be caused by liquids such as water, or metallic items, such as paper clips, entering a drive.
- Shocks and vibrations are also to be avoided.
- Do not insert any objects other than the specified CDs/DVDs/BDs.
- Do not pull on, press hard, or otherwise handle the CD/DVD/BD tray roughly.
- Do not disassemble the optical disk drive.
- Before use, clean the optical disk tray using a soft, dry cloth.
- As a precaution, remove disks from the optical disk drive when the drive is not to be used for a long time. Keep the optical disk tray closed to prevent foreign matter, such as dust, from entering the optical disk drive.
- Hold CDs/DVDs/BDs by their edges to avoid contact with the disk surface.

## Important information

---

- Do not contaminate the CD/DVD/BD surface with fingerprints, oil, dust, etc. If dirty, clean with a soft, dry cloth, wiping from the center to the edge. Do not use benzene, thinners, water, record sprays, antistatic agents, or silicone-impregnated cloth.
- Be careful not to damage the CD/DVD/BD surface.
- Keep the CDs/DVDs/BDs away from heat sources.
- Do not bend or place heavy objects on CDs/DVDs/BDs.
- Do not write with ballpoint pen or pencil on the label (printed) side.
- When a CD/DVD/BD is moved from a cold place to a warm place, moisture condensation on the CD/DVD/BD surface can cause data read errors. In this case, wipe the CD/DVD/BD with a soft, dry cloth then let it air dry. Do not dry the CD/DVD/BD using devices such as a hair dryer.
- To avoid dust, damage, and deformation, keep the CD/DVD/BD in its case whenever it is not in use.
- Do not store CDs/DVDs/BDs at high temperatures. Areas exposed to prolonged direct sunlight or near heating appliances are to be avoided.



You can prevent damage from the optical disk drive and the CDs/DVDs/BDs, as well as premature wear of the disks, by observing the following suggestions:

- Only insert disks in the drive when needed and remove them after use.
- Store the disks in suitable sleeves.
- Protect the disks from exposure to heat and direct sunlight.

## Laser information

The optical disk drive complies with IEC 60825-1 laser class 1.



### **CAUTION!**

The optical disk drive contains a light-emitting diode (LED), which under certain circumstances produces a laser beam stronger than laser class 1. Looking directly at this beam is dangerous.

**Never remove parts of the optical disk drive casing!**

## Modules with Electrostatic-Sensitive Devices

Modules with electrostatic-sensitive devices are identified by the following sticker:

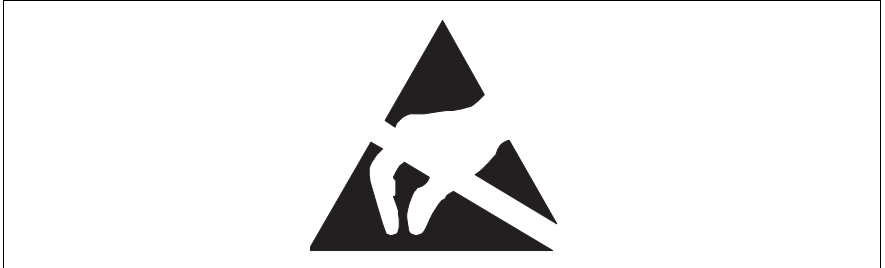


Figure 1: ESD label

When you handle components fitted with ESDs, you must always observe the following points:

- Switch off the system and remove the power plugs from the power outlets before installing or removing components with ESDs.
- The circuit boards and soldered parts of internal options are exposed and can be damaged by static electricity. To ensure reliable protection, you must wear an earthing band on your wrist when working with this type of module and connect it to an unpainted, conducting metal part of the system.
- Any devices or tools that are used must be free of electrostatic charge.
- Wear a suitable grounding cable that connects you to the external chassis of the system unit.
- Always hold components with ESDs at the edges or at the points marked green (touch points).
- Do not touch any connectors or conduction paths on an ESD.
- Place all the components on a pad which is free of electrostatic charge.



For a detailed description of how to handle ESD components, see the relevant European or international standards (EN 61340-5-1, ANSI/ESD S20.20).

### Transporting the server

- Only transport the server in its original packaging or in packaging that protects it from impacts and jolts.  
For the Japanese market, transporting the device in its original packaging does not apply.
- Do not unpack the server until it is at its installation location.
- If you need to lift or transport the server, ask other people to help you.  
Because the PRIMERGY RX300 S8 is large and heavy, at least two people are needed.
- Never lift or carry the device by the handles on the front panel.

### Notes on installing the server in the rack

- **For safety reasons, at least two people are required to install the server in the rack because of its weight and size.**  
(For the Japanese market, please refer to "安全上のご注意".)
- Never lift the server into the rack using the handles on the front panel.
- When connecting and disconnecting cables, observe the relevant instructions in the "Important Information" chapter of the technical manual for the corresponding rack. The technical manual is supplied with the corresponding rack.
- When installing the rack, make sure that the anti-tilt protection is correctly fitted.
- For safety reasons, no more than one unit may be removed from the rack at any one time during installation and maintenance work.
- If several units are simultaneously removed from the rack, there is a risk that the rack could tip over.
- The rack must be connected to the power supply by an authorized specialist (electrician).
- If the server is integrated into an installation that draws power from an industrial power supply network with an IEC309 type connector, the power supply's fuse protection must comply with the requirements for non-industrial power supply networks for the type A connector.

## 3.2 ENERGY STAR



Products that have been certified compliant with ENERGY STAR and identified as such are in full compliance with the specification at shipping. Note that energy consumption can be affected by software that is installed or any changes that are made to the hardware configuration or BIOS or energy options subsequently. In such cases, the properties guaranteed by ENERGY STAR can no longer be assured.

The "ServerView Operations Manager" user guide contains instructions for reading out measurement values, including those relating to current energy consumption and air temperatures. Either the Performance Monitor or the Task Manager can be used to read out CPU utilization levels.

## 3.3 CE conformity



The system complies with the requirements of the EC directives 2004/108/EC regarding "Electromagnetic Compatibility" and 2006/95/EC "Low Voltage Directive" and the directive of the European Parliament and Council 2011/65/EU. This is indicated by the CE marking (CE = Communauté Européenne).

### 3.4 FCC Class A Compliance Statement

If there is an FCC statement on the device, it applies to the products covered in this manual, unless otherwise specified herein. The statement for other products will appear in the accompanying documentation.

#### **NOTE:**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a "Class A" digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules and meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003 for digital apparatus. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in strict accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no warranty that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Fujitsu is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by unauthorized modifications of this equipment or the substitution or attachment of connecting cables and equipment other than those specified by Fujitsu. The correction of interferences caused by such unauthorized modification, substitution or attachment will be the responsibility of the user.

The use of shielded I/O cables is required when connecting this equipment to any and all optional peripheral or host devices. Failure to do so may violate FCC and ICES rules.

#### **WARNING:**

This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

## 3.5 Environmental protection

### Environmentally-friendly product design and development

This product has been designed in accordance with the Fujitsu standard for "environmentally friendly product design and development". This means that key factors such as durability, selection and labeling of materials, emissions, packaging, ease of dismantling and recycling have been taken into account.

This saves resources and thus reduces the harm done to the environment. Further information can be found at:

- [http://ts.fujitsu.com/products/standard\\_servers/index.html](http://ts.fujitsu.com/products/standard_servers/index.html) (for the global market)
- <http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/concept/> (for the Japanese market)

### Energy-saving information

Devices that do not need to be constantly switched on should be switched off until they are needed as well as during long breaks and after completion of work.

### Packaging information

This packaging information doesn't apply to the Japanese market.

Do not throw away the packaging. You may need it later for transporting the system. If possible, the equipment should only be transported in its original packaging.

### Information on handling consumables

Please dispose of printer consumables and batteries in accordance with the applicable national regulations.

In accordance with EU directives, batteries must not be disposed of with unsorted domestic waste. They can be returned free of charge to the manufacturer, dealer or an authorized agent for recycling or disposal.

All batteries containing pollutants are marked with a symbol (a crossed-out garbage can). They are also marked with the chemical symbol for the heavy metal that causes them to be categorized as containing pollutants:

Cd Cadmium  
Hg Mercury  
Pb Lead

## Important information

---

### Labels on plastic casing parts

Please avoid sticking your own labels on plastic parts wherever possible, since this makes it difficult to recycle them.

### Returns, recycling and disposal

Please handle returns, recycling and disposal in accordance with local regulations.



The device must not be disposed of with domestic waste. This device is labeled in compliance with European directive 2002/96/EC on waste electrical and electronic equipment (WEEE).

This directive sets the framework for returning and recycling used equipment and is valid across the EU. When returning your used device, please use the return and collection systems available to you. Further information can be found at

<http://ts.fujitsu.com/recycling>.

Details regarding the return and recycling of devices and consumables within Europe can also be found in the "Returning used devices" manual, via your local Fujitsu branch or from our recycling center in Paderborn:

Fujitsu Technology Solutions  
Recycling Center  
D-33106 Paderborn

Tel. +49 5251 525 1410  
Fax +49 5251 525 32 1410

---

## 4 Basic hardware procedures

### 4.1 Using diagnostics information

Use the Fujitsu ServerView Suite management software to plan the upgrade or replacement of hardware components. Please refer to the following ServerView Suite topics:

- Operation
- Maintenance

It is recommended to prepare local maintenance tasks using remote diagnostics procedures, as described in the "ServerView Suite Local Service Concept (LSC)" manual.

Please contact your local Fujitsu customer service partner for details on the service concept and on how to order expansion kits or spare parts. Use the Fujitsu Illustrated Spares Catalog to identify the required spare part and obtain technical data and order information. Illustrated Spares catalogs are available online at [http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com/illustrated\\_spares](http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com/illustrated_spares) (EMEA market only).

Perform the following diagnostics procedures to identify defective servers and components.

#### 4.1.1 Locating the defective server

When working in a datacenter environment, switch on the ID indicator on the front and rear connector panels of the server for easy identification.

- ▶ Press the ID button on the front panel, use the iRMC web frontend or use the ServerView Operations Manager user interface to switch on the system identification LEDs.



For further information, refer to the "ServerView Suite Local Service Concept (LSC)" manual I and "Integrated Remote Management Controller" user guide.

- ▶ When using ServerView Operations Manager to toggle the ID indicator, choose *Single System View* and press the *Locate* button.
- ▶ Remember to switch off the ID indicator after the maintenance task has been concluded successfully.

### 4.1.2 Determining the error class

The Local Service Concept (LSC) allows you to identify defective server components. Failure events are assigned to one of two error classes:

- **Global Error** events that need to be resolved by maintenance personnel
- **Customer Self Service (CSS)** error events that may be resolved by operating personnel

Global Error and CSS LEDs indicate, if the defective component is a customer replaceable unit or if maintenance personnel needs to be dispatched to replace the part.



The indicators also light up in standby mode and after a server restart due to a power failure.

#### 4.1.2.1 Global Error indicator

- ▶ Check the Global Error indicator on the front or connector panel of the server:
- ▶ For further diagnostics, proceed as follows:
  - Hardware errors:  
Check the System Event Log (SEL) as described in section "[Viewing the SEL](#)" on page 92.
  - Software / agent related errors:  
Check the ServerView System Monitor, available on Windows or Linux based servers with ServerView agents installed.



For further information, please refer to the "ServerView System Monitor" user guide.

#### 4.1.2.2 Customer Self Service (CSS) indicator

- ▶ Check the CSS indicator on the front panel or connector panel of the server:

### 4.1.3 Locating the defective component

After determining the error class by the CSS or Global Error indicators (see section ["Determining the error class" on page 52](#)) local diagnostic indicators on the front panel and system board allow you to identify the defective component.



For further information, refer to the "ServerView Suite Local Service Concept (LSC)" manual.

#### 4.1.3.1 Local diagnostic indicators on the front

- ▶ Check the CSS indicator on the front and connector panels of the server:



In addition to local diagnostic indicators, CSS or Global Error LEDs indicate, if the defective component is a customer or field replaceable unit (see section ["Determining the error class" on page 52](#)).

#### 4.1.3.2 Local diagnostic indicators on the system board

##### Using the Indicate CSS button

- ▶ Shut down and power off the server.
- ▶ Disconnect the AC power cord from the system.



It is mandatory to disconnect power cords in order to use the Indicate CSS functionality.

- ▶ Press the Indicate CSS button to highlight defective components (see section ["Onboard indicators and controls" on page 511](#)).



In addition to local diagnostic indicators, CSS or Global Error LEDs indicate, if the defective component is a customer replaceable unit or if a service technician needs to be dispatched to replace the part (see section ["Determining the error class" on page 52](#)).

If the system has been powered off to replace a non hot-plug unit, a system of PRIMERGY diagnostics indicators guides you to the faulty component.

### 4.2 Shutting down the server



#### CAUTION!

For further safety information, please refer to chapter ["Important information" on page 39](#).



This step is only required when upgrading or replacing non-hot plug components.

- ▶ Inform the system administrator that the server will be shut down and put offline.
- ▶ Terminate all applications.
- ▶ Perform the required procedures described in the preliminary steps of each upgrade or maintenance task.
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 77](#).
- ▶ In case of Multipath I/O environments, please refer to section ["Note on server maintenance in a Multipath I/O environment" on page 77](#).
- ▶ ["Removing backup and optical disk media" on page 76](#).
- ▶ Shut down the server.



If the system is running an ACPI-compliant operating system, pressing the On / Off button will perform a graceful shutdown.

- ▶ Switch on the ID indicator on the front and rear connector panels of the server as described in section ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#).

### 4.3 Disconnecting power cords

#### Removing the server from the mains



If there are installed two power supplies remove both power cords.

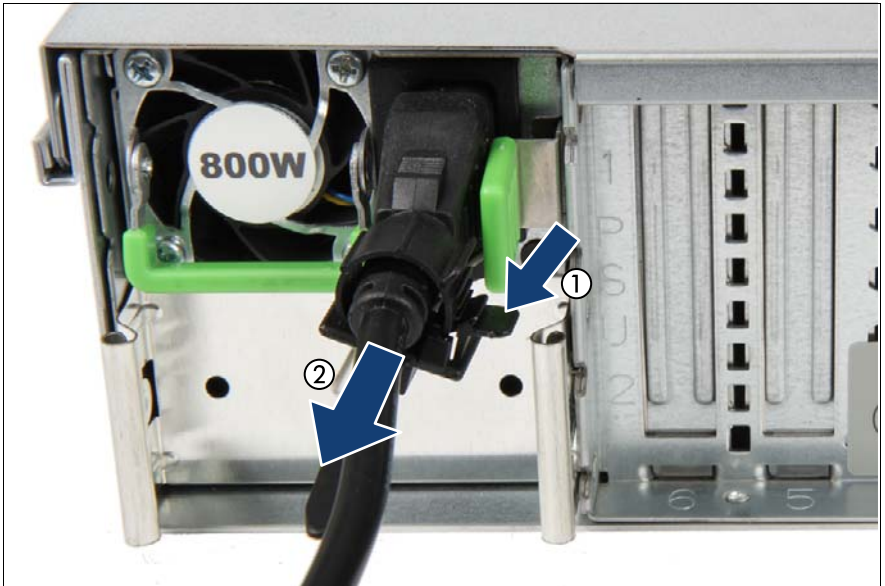


Figure 2: Removing the power cord from the PSU cable clamp

- ▶ Open on the locking lever on the PSU cable clamp (1).
- ▶ Disconnect the power cord from the PSU and remove it from the cable tie (2).

### Removing the server from the direct current (optional DC hot-plug power supply unit)

**i** If there are installed two power supplies remove both power cords.

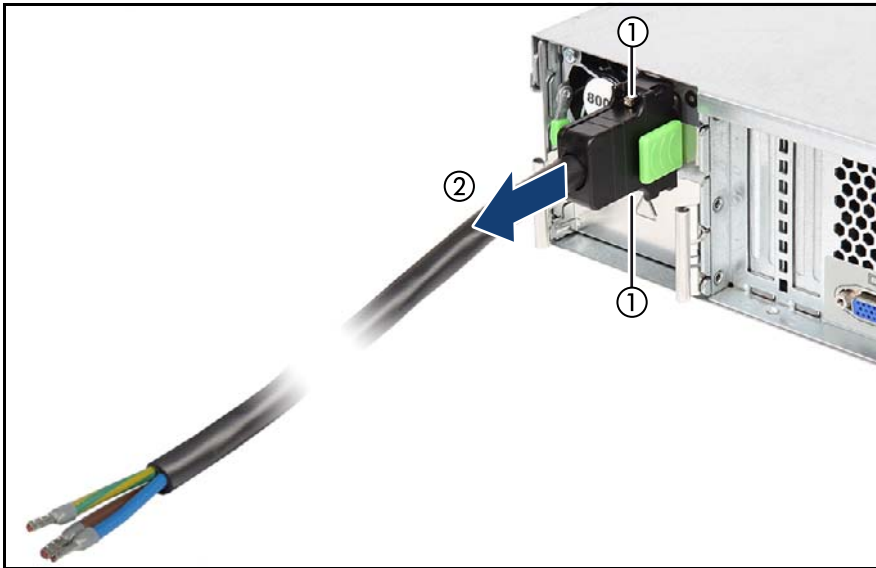


Figure 3: Disconnecting the server from the dc voltage

- ▶ Remove the brown and the blue wire of the power cord from the current bar on the rack (see Technical Manual of the rack system).
- ▶ Remove the wire labeled "Ground" from an appropriate earth ground.
- ▶ Open the 2 screws (1).
- ▶ Disconnect the power cord from the PSU (2).

## 4.4 Getting access to the component



### CAUTION!

- Before removing or installing covers, turn off the server and all peripheral devices. Also unplug all power cables from the outlet. Failure to do so can cause electric shock.
- In order to comply with applicable EMC regulations (regulations on electromagnetic compatibility) and satisfy cooling requirements, the server must not run while the top / side cover is removed.
- For further safety information, please refer to chapter ["Important information" on page 39](#).

### 4.4.1 Extending the server out of the rack



### CAUTION!

- Use the anti-tilt plate to prevent the rack from tipping when installing the rack. Pulling the server out of the rack without having installed the anti-tilt plate may cause the rack to tip over.
- Be careful not to pinch fingers or clothes when sliding out the server or pushing it back. Failure to do so may cause injury.
- For further safety information, please refer to chapter ["Important information" on page 39](#).

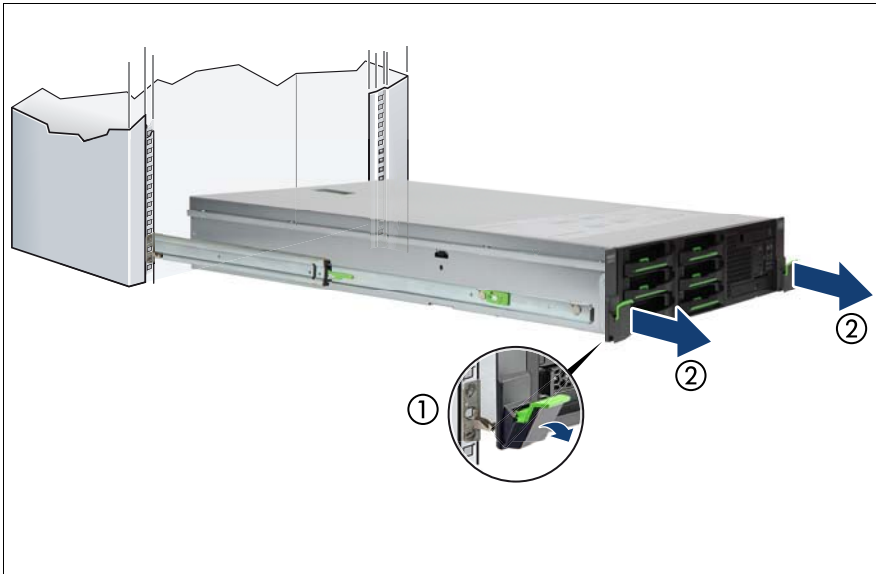


Figure 4: Extending the server out of the rack

- ▶ Remove all remaining external cables from the rear connector panel and expansion cards (see section ["Connectors and indicators" on page 509](#)).
- ▶ If you are not using a cable mounting arm (CMA kit), ensure that the rear cables are long enough not to be strained or damaged when extending the server out of the rack.
- ▶ Fold down the two quick release levers on the rack mounting frame (1) and pull the server out of the rack until it locks in place (2).



### CAUTION!

Do not use the extended server as a surface on which to put things or as a work surface, and strictly avoid leaning on or against it.

## 4.4.2 Removing the server from the rack



In most cases maintenance tasks can be performed while the server is extended from the rack. However, depending on accessibility or security guidelines, it may make sense to completely remove the server from the rack cabinet for maintenance purposes.



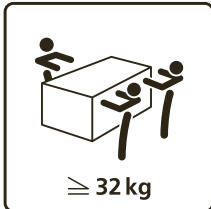
### CAUTION!

At least two people are needed to lift the server out of the rack cabinet. (For the Japanese market, please refer to "安全上のご注意".)



### For configurations below 32 kg:

At least two people are needed to lift the server out of the rack cabinet.



### For configurations below 55 kg:

At least three people are needed to lift the server out of the rack cabinet.



### For configurations above 55 kg:

At least four people are needed to lift the server out of the rack cabinet.

Additionally, a lifter is required in the following cases:

- The server weighs more than 50 kg.
- The server weighs more than 21 kg and is installed above the height of 25 U.

## Basic hardware procedures

When using a lifter, this removal procedure needs to be carried out by maintenance personnel.

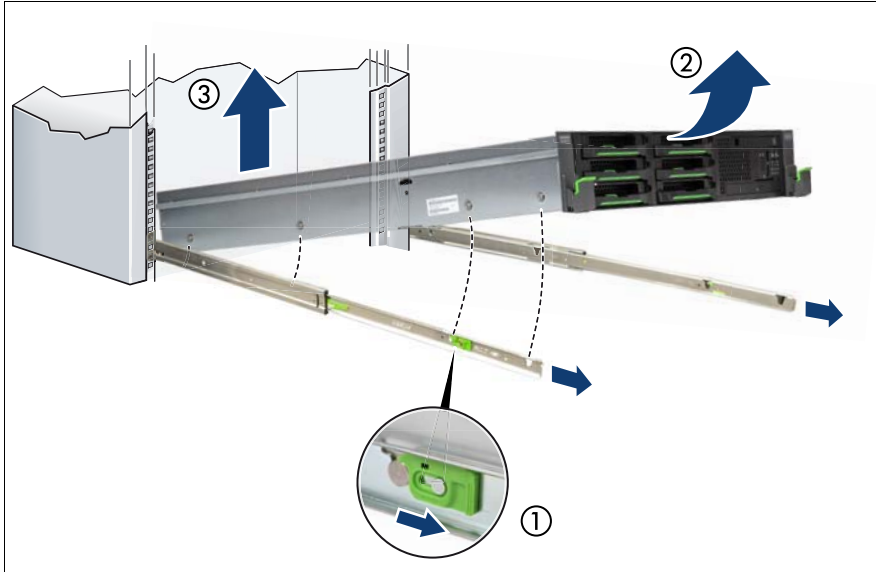


Figure 5: Removing the server from the rack

- ▶ Release the locking bars on both rails (1).
- ▶ Lift up the front of the server as shown so that the front and middle rack mounting bolts are disengaged from the mounting points on the telescopic rails.
- ▶ Lift the server out of the rear mounting points (3) and place it on an even surface.

### 4.4.3 Opening the server



#### CAUTION!

- Before removing or installing covers, turn off the server and all peripheral devices. Also unplug all power cables from the outlet. Failure to do so can cause electric shock.

- In order to comply with applicable EMC regulations (regulations on electromagnetic compatibility) and satisfy cooling requirements, the PRIMERGY RX300 S8 server must not run while the housing cover is removed.
- For further safety information, please refer to chapter ["Important information"](#) on page 39.

### 4.4.3.1 Removing the housing cover

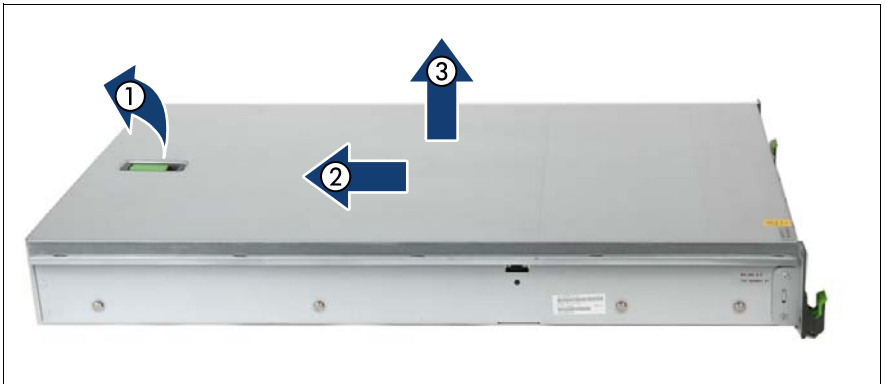


Figure 6: Removing the housing cover

- ▶ Open the locking lever (1). This will slide the top cover back disengaging the locking mechanism (2).
- ▶ Remove the top cover (3).

### 4.4.3.2 Removing the air duct



Figure 7: Removing the air duct



#### **CAUTION!**

Be carefull with the BBU or FBU cable.

If there is a BBU or FBU installed, follow the procedure that is described in section ["Removing the air duct with a BBU" on page 219](#) or in section ["Removing the air duct with an FBU" on page 236](#) first.

- ▶ Remove the air duct.

## 4.5 Reassembling

### 4.5.1 Installing the air duct

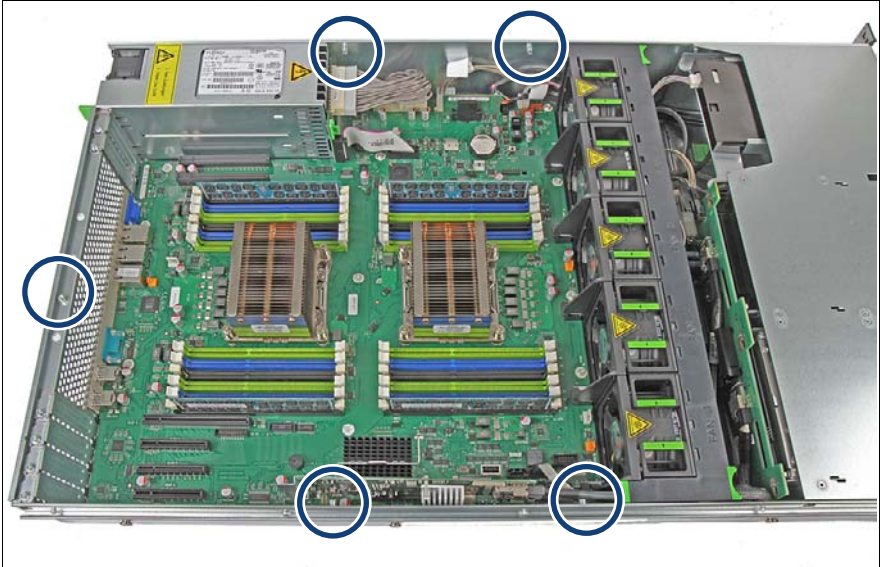


Figure 8: Installing the air duct guiding points



Regard that the air duct engages in the guiding points.

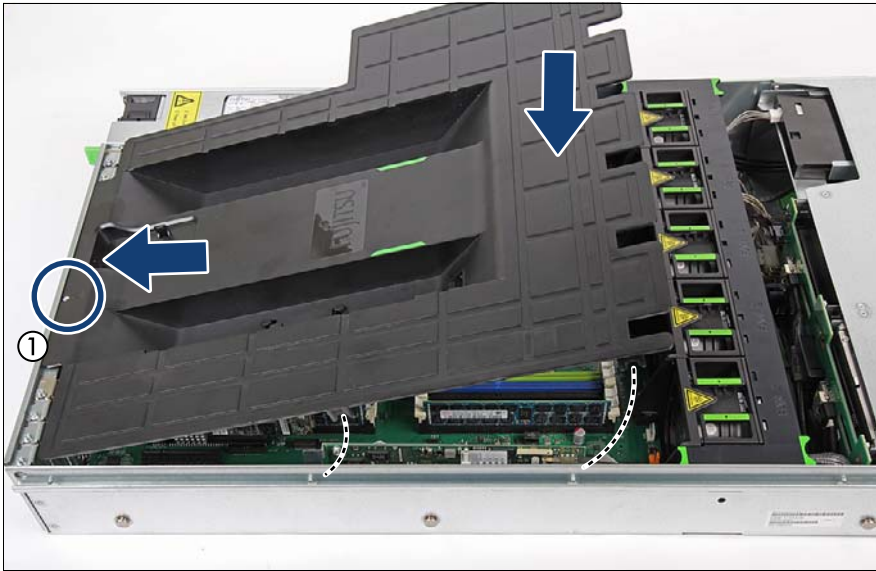


Figure 9: Installing the air duct

- ▶ Insert the air duct first with the rear side (1).



If there is a BBU or FBU installed, follow the procedure that is described in section ["Installing the air duct with a BBU" on page 216](#) or in section ["SAS 2.0 Installing the air duct with an FBU" on page 229](#).

### 4.5.2 Closing the server



#### CAUTION!

- Before attaching the covers, make sure no unnecessary parts or tools are left inside the server.
- In order to comply with applicable EMC regulations (regulations on electromagnetic compatibility) and satisfy cooling requirements, the PRIMERGY RX300 S8 server must not run while the housing cover is removed.
- For further safety information, please refer to chapter ["Important information" on page 39](#).

#### 4.5.2.1 Mounting the housing cover



Figure 10: Mounting the housing cover

- ▶ Open the locking lever on the top cover.
- ▶ Fit the housing cover on the chassis, aligning it according to the edge guide marking on the upper server surface.
- ▶ Lower the housing cover onto the chassis.
- ▶ Close the locking lever on the housing cover. This will slide the housing cover shut engaging the locking mechanism.

### 4.5.3 Mounting the server in the rack

#### 4.5.3.1 Seating the server on the rack rails



#### CAUTION!

At least two people are needed to position the server on the rack rails.  
(For the Japanese market, please refer to "安全上のご注意".)



#### For configurations below 32 kg:

At least two people are needed to lift the server into the rack cabinet.



### For configurations below 55 kg:

At least three people are needed to lift the server into the rack cabinet.



### For configurations above 55 kg:

At least four people are needed to lift the server into the rack cabinet.

Additionally, a lifter is required in the following cases:

- The server weighs more than 50 kg.
- The server weighs more than 21 kg and is to be installed above the height of 25 U.

When using a lifter, this installation procedure needs to be carried out by maintenance personnel.

**i** Refer to the rack cabinet manuals for more detailed information on other support systems.

- ▶ If required, install the rack mounting bracket and rack system into the rack as described in the Rack Mounting Kit - RMK-F1/F2 DROP-IN Quick Release Lever (QRL)™ Mounting Instructions.

**i** The printed poster is contained in the rack mounting kit.

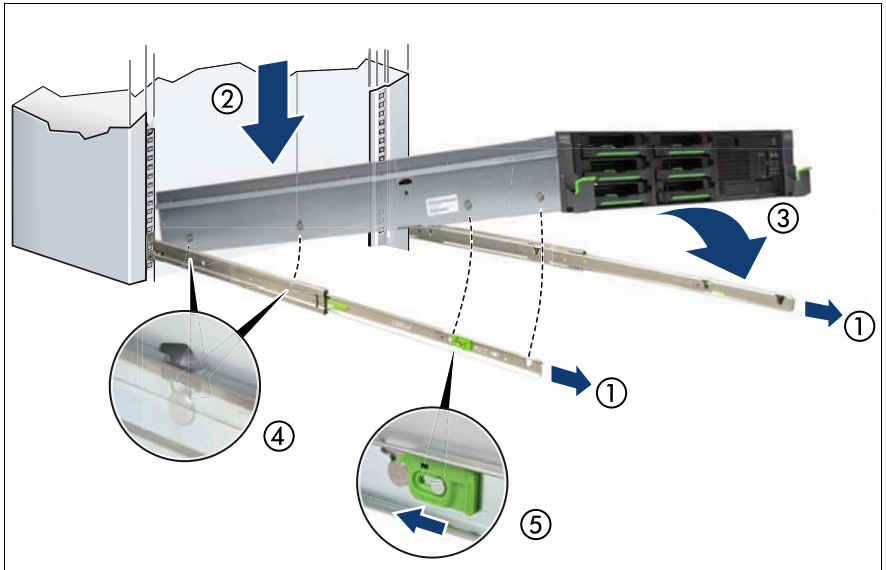


Figure 11: Mounting the server onto the rack rails

- ▶ Fully extend the telescopic rails until they lock in place (1).
- ▶ At a slight angle, lower the server onto the rear mounting point on the telescopic rails (2).
- ▶ Fold down the server (3). Ensure that all six rack mounting bolts are properly seated in the mounting points on the telescopic rails and that the locking bars engage (4).

### 4.5.3.2 Sliding the server into the rack

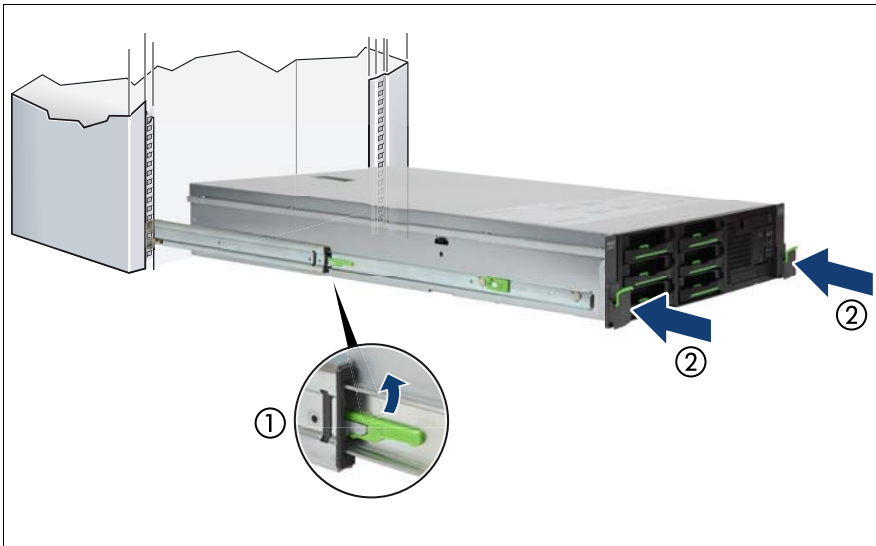


Figure 12: Sliding the server into the rack

- ▶ Pull up on the locking latch on both telescopic rails (1).
- ▶ Slide the server inside the rack as far as it will go (2) until the quick release levers on the rack mounting frame lock into place.
- ▶ Reconnect all cables except the power cord to the server rear.

**i** If you are not using a cable mounting arm (CMA kit), ensure that the rear cables are long enough not to be strained or damaged when extending the server out of the rack.

Use cable ties to prevent loose cables from blocking the air flow.

For information on connecting and securing the power cord, refer to section ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#).

## 4.6 Connecting the server to the power source

The PRIMERGY RX300 S8 server is equipped with up to two standard power supplies unit that automatically adjusts to any mains voltage in the range of 100 VAC to 240 VAC or up to two DC hot-plug power supply unit that adjusts automatically to any power voltage in the range from -40.5 V to -57 V.

### Connecting power cords to the mains



#### CAUTION!

The power supply automatically adjusts to any mains voltage in the range of 100 VAC to 240 VAC. You may only operate the server if its rated voltage range corresponds to the local mains voltage.

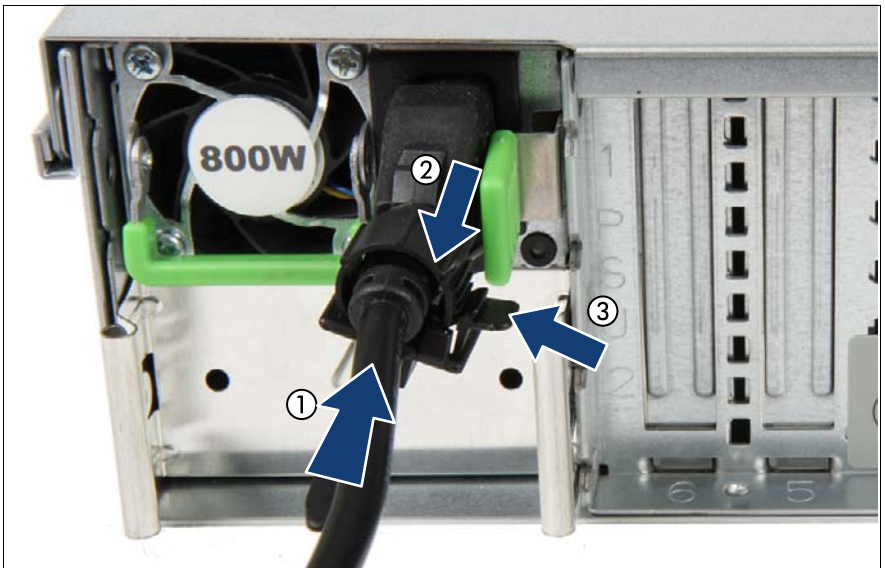


Figure 13: Securing power cord

- ▶ Connect the power connector (1) to the power supply unit.
- ▶ Close the cable clamp around the power cord (2) and lock the cable clamp (3) to secure the power cord.
- ▶ Connect the mains plug to a grounded mains outlet in the in-house power supply network or a power outlet of the rack socket strip (see also "PRIMECENTER Rack System" assembly guide).

## Basic hardware procedures

---

**i** To provide true phase redundancy, the second power supply should be connected to a different AC power source from the other supply. If one AC power source should fail, the server will still continue to run.

**i** It takes about 60 seconds until power-on becomes possible.

### Connecting the server to the direct current (optional DC hot-plug power supply unit)

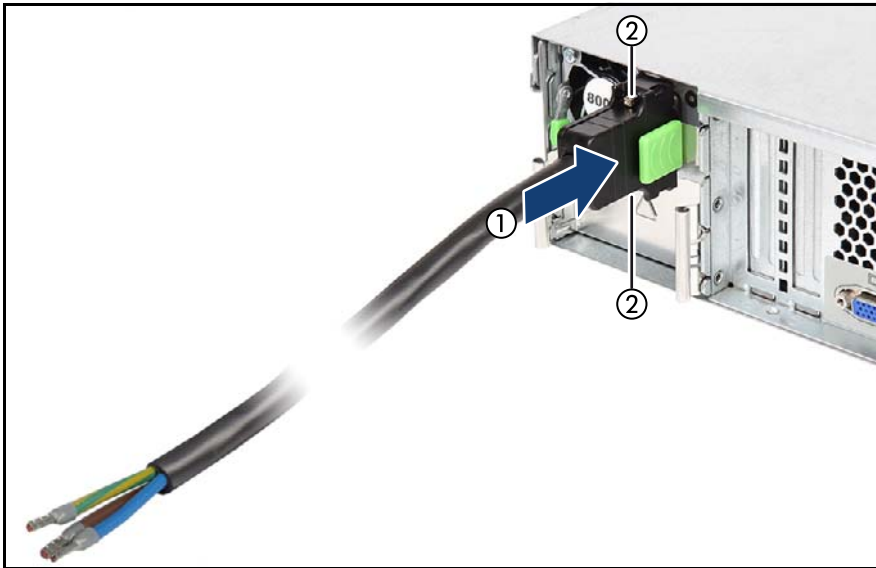


Figure 14: Connecting the server to the dc voltage

- ▶ Connect the power cord with the connector to the power supply unit of the server (1).
- ▶ Attach the connector with the 2 screws (2).
- ▶ Connect the wire labeled "Ground" to an appropriate earth ground.
- ▶ Connect the other two wires of the power cable to the current bar on the rack (see Technical Manual of the rack).

## 4.7 Switching on the server



### CAUTION!

- Before switching on the server, make sure the housing cover is closed. In order to comply with applicable EMC regulations (regulations on electromagnetic compatibility) and satisfy cooling requirements, the PRIMERGY RX300 S8 server must not run while the housing cover is removed.
  - After connecting all power cords, wait at least 60 seconds before pressing the On / Off button.
  - Follow the safety instructions in chapter ["Important information" on page 39](#).
- ▶ Press the On / Off button to start up the server.
- ▶ Perform the required procedures described in the concluding steps of each upgrade or maintenance task.




---

## 5 Basic software procedures

### 5.1 Starting the maintenance task

#### 5.1.1 Suspending BitLocker functionality

BitLocker Drive Encryption provides protection for operating system and data drives by encrypting the contents and requiring users to authenticate their credentials to access the information. In the scenario described here, BitLocker uses the compatible Trusted Platform Module (TPM) to detect if the computer's startup process has been modified from its original state.

 For additional information on how to use BitLocker on a computer without a compatible TPM, please refer to the "BitLocker Drive Encryption" documentation page at <http://technet.microsoft.com/library/cc731549.aspx>.

Suspending BitLocker Drive Encryption is a temporary method for removing BitLocker protection without decrypting the drive Windows is installed on. Suspend BitLocker before modifying the server's hardware configuration or startup files. Resume BitLocker again after the maintenance procedure is complete.



#### CAUTION!

- With BitLocker features enabled, modifying the system configuration (hardware or firmware settings) may render the system inaccessible. The system may enter Recovery Mode and require a 48-digits recovery password to return to normal operation.  
  
Ensure to suspend BitLocker drive encryption before maintaining the server.
  - When suspended, BitLocker uses a plain text key instead of the Trusted Platform Module (TPM) to read encrypted files. Keep in mind that information on this drive is not secure until BitLocker has been re-enabled.
- Ask the system administrator to suspend BitLocker-protection on the system volume, using the *BitLocker Drive Encryption* control panel item.



This will temporarily disable BitLocker for maintenance purposes. The volume will not be decrypted and no keys will be discarded.

*For Windows Server 2008:*

- ▶ Open BitLocker Drive Encryption by clicking the *Start* button, clicking *Control Panel*, clicking *Security*, and then clicking *BitLocker Drive Encryption*.
- ▶ Select the system volume, and click *Turn Off BitLocker*.
- ▶ From the *Turn Off BitLocker* dialog box, click *Disable BitLocker*.

*For Windows Server 2008 R2 and above:*

- ▶ Open BitLocker Drive Encryption by clicking the *Start* button, clicking *Control Panel*, clicking *System and Security*, and then clicking *BitLocker Drive Encryption*.
- ▶ Select the system volume, and click *Suspend Protection*.
- ▶ Click *Yes* to confirm that your data will not be protected while BitLocker is suspended.



In order to determine which features are accessible through the BitLocker setup wizard, it may be necessary to modify the BitLocker Group Policy settings.

For further information on how to suspend BitLocker drive encryption, please refer to the Microsoft TechNet library at <http://technet.microsoft.com/library/cc731549.aspx>.

Fujitsu service partners will find additional information (also available in Japanese) on the Fujitsu Extranet web pages.

### 5.1.2 Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality

The ServerView Operations Manager boot watchdog determines whether the server boots within a preset time frame. If the watchdog timer expires, the system will automatically reboot.

#### 5.1.2.1 Viewing boot watchdog settings

##### Viewing boot watchdog settings in the BIOS

- ▶ Enter the BIOS.
- ▶ Select the *Server Mgmt* menu.

- ▶ Under *Boot Watchdog*, you can obtain detailed information about the current watchdog status, time out intervals and actions that are triggered if watchdog time outs are exceeded.



For detailed information on BIOS settings, refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual.

### Viewing boot watchdog settings in the iRMC web frontend

- ▶ Enter the ServerView iRMC web frontend.
- ▶ Select the *Server Management* menu.
- ▶ Under *Watchdog Settings*, you can obtain detailed information about the current watchdog status, time out intervals and actions that are triggered if watchdog time outs are exceeded.



For detailed information on iRMC settings, refer to the "Integrated Remote Management Controller" user guide.

### Viewing boot watchdog settings in ServerView Operations Manager

- ▶ In ServerView Operations Manager *Single System View* select *Maintenance* from the *Information / Operation* menu.
- ▶ Under *ASR&R* select the *Watchdog* tab to obtain detailed information about the current watchdog status, time out intervals and actions that are triggered if watchdog time outs are exceeded.



For more detailed information, refer to the "ServerView Operations Manager - Server Management" user guide.

#### 5.1.2.2 Configuring boot watchdog settings

If the system is to be started from removable boot media for firmware upgrade purposes, the Boot watchdog needs to be disabled before starting maintenance task. Otherwise, the Boot watchdog might initiate a system reboot before the flash process is complete.



#### **CAUTION!**

An incomplete firmware upgrade process may render the server inaccessible or result in damaged / destroyed hardware.

Timer settings can be configured in the BIOS or using the ServerView iRMC web frontend:

### Configuring boot watchdog settings in the BIOS

- ▶ Enter the BIOS.
- ▶ Select the *Server Mgmt* menu.
- ▶ Under *Boot Watchdog* set the *Action* setting to *Continue*.
- ▶ Save your changes and exit the BIOS.



For detailed information on how to access the BIOS and modify settings, refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual.

### Configuring boot watchdog settings using the iRMC web frontend

- ▶ Enter the ServerView iRMC web frontend.
- ▶ Select the *Server Management* menu.
- ▶ Under *Watchdog Settings* select *Continue* from the *Boot Watchdog* drop down list.
- ▶ Click *Apply* for the changes to take effect.



For detailed information on iRMC settings, refer to the "Integrated Remote Management Controller" user guide.


## 5.1.3 Removing backup and optical disk media

- ▶ Ask the system administrator to eject all remaining backup or optical media from the backup or optical disk drive before removing it from the server.
- ▶ If the backup media cannot be ejected by conventional means, and it is mandatory that the cartridge be removed prior to returning the drive for repair or disposing it, a manual tape extraction needs to be performed.


For further information on "forcible" tape ejection, please refer to the "Tape Facts" guide available to Fujitsu service partners from the following https address:

<https://partners.ts.fujitsu.com/com/service/ps/Servers/PRIMERGY/Pages/TapeFacts.aspx>

For the Japanese market, please contact Fujitsu support, if "forcible" tape ejection is necessary.

 Fujitsu does not assume responsibility for any damage to the tape drive, the data cartridge / tape or for the loss of any data resulting from manual tape extraction procedures.


### 5.1.4 Verifying and configuring the backup software solution

 This task only applies to the Japanese market.

Depending on the backup software solution, it may be necessary to disable or delete the backup drive from the backup software drive list before starting the maintenance task.

This is the case for the following backup software solution:


- BackupExec

 Procedures may differ depending on the backup software. For details, refer to the dedicated documentation provided separately.

Further information on suitable backup software solutions and related documentation is available to Fujitsu service partners from the Fujitsu Extranet pages.

### 5.1.5 Note on server maintenance in a Multipath I/O environment

When booting your server offline from the ServerView Suite DVD to perform an offline BIOS / firmware update using the ServerView Update DVD or collect diagnostic data using PrimeCollect in a Multipath I/O environment, there is a risk of damaging the system configuration which may leave the system unable to boot.

 This is a known restriction of Windows PE with Multipath drivers.

#### Using Update Manager Express

- ▶ If performing an offline BIOS / firmware update, first of all prepare the ServerView Update DVD or USB stick:
  - ▶ Download the latest ServerView Update DVD image from Fujitsu:

for the EMEA market

<ftp://ftp.ts.fujitsu.com/images/serverview>

for the Japanese market:

<http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/products/note/svsdvd/dvd/>

- ▶ Burn the image to a DVD.
- ▶ In order to create a bootable USB stick, please proceed as described in the "Local System Update for PRIMERGY Servers" user guide.
- ▶ Before using the ServerView Update DVD or USB stick in an offline environment, properly shut down the server and disconnect all external I/O connections (like LAN, FC or SAS cables) from the system. Only keep mouse, keyboard, video cable and AC power cord connected.



Ensure that all external I/O connections are uniquely identified so that you can reconnect them into their original locations after concluding the task.

To start Update Manager Express from the (physical) Update DVD or from a USB stick, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Prepare your Update DVD or USB stick as described in the "Local System Update for PRIMERGY Servers" user guide.
- ▶ Boot the server from the prepared Update DVD or USB stick:
  - DVD:** ▶ Switch on the server.
    - ▶ Right after switching on the server, insert the Update DVD into the DVD drive and close the tray.
  - USB:** ▶ Connect the USB stick to the server.
    - ▶ Switch on the server.


If the server does not boot from DVD or USB stick, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Reboot the server, e.g. by pressing the reset button on the front or switching the server off and then on again after a few seconds.
- ▶ Once the server has been started, press **[F12]** to enter the boot menu.
- ▶ Use the **[↑]** and **[↓]** cursor keys to select your DVD drive or USB stick as boot device and press **[ENTER]**.

The server will now boot from the Update DVD or USB stick.
- ▶ After the boot process is complete, select your preferred GUI language.

The Update Manager Express main window will be displayed.


- ▶ Finish the intended maintenance task.

 For further information, refer to the "Local System Update for PRIMERGY Servers" user guide.

### Using PrimeCollect

To start PrimeCollect, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Before using PrimeCollect in an offline environment, properly shut down the server and disconnect all external I/O connections (like LAN, FC or SAS cables) from the system. Only keep mouse, keyboard, video cable and AC power cord connected.

 Ensure that all external I/O connections are uniquely identified so that you can reconnect them into their original locations after concluding the task.


- ▶ Switch on the server.
- ▶ Right after switching on the server, insert the ServerView Suite DVD into the DVD drive and close the drive tray.

If the server does not boot from DVD, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Reboot the server, e.g. by pressing the reset button on the front or switching the server off and then on again after a few seconds.
- ▶ Once the server has been started, press **[F12]** to enter the boot menu.
- ▶ Use the **[↑]** and **[↓]** cursor keys to select your DVD drive as boot device and press **[ENTER]**.

The server will now boot from the ServerView Suite DVD.

- ▶ After the boot process is complete, select your preferred GUI language.
- ▶ In the initial Installation Manager startup window, choose *PrimeCollect* from the *Installation Manager mode* section.
- ▶ Click *Continue* to proceed.
- ▶ Finish the intended maintenance task.

 For further information, refer to the "PrimeCollect" user guide.

### Concluding the procedure

- ▶ After the update or diagnostic procedure has been completed, shut down the server, reconnect all external I/O connections and bring the system back to normal operation.
- ▶ If necessary, perform this procedure for all remaining servers within the Multipath environment.

### 5.1.6 Switching on the ID indicator

When working in a datacenter environment, switch on the ID indicator on the front and rear connector panels of the server for easy identification.



For further information, refer to section "[Locating the defective server](#)" on [page 51](#) or to the "ServerView Suite Local Service Concept (LSC)" and "Integrated Remote Management Controller" user guides.

#### Using the ID button on the front panel

- ▶ Press the ID button on the front panel to switch on the system identification LEDs.



For further information, refer to section "[Front panel controls and indicators](#)" on [page 518](#).

#### Using the iRMC web frontend

- ▶ Enter the ServerView iRMC web frontend.
- ▶ Under *System Overview*, click *Identify LED On* to switch on the ID indicators.

#### Using ServerView Operations Manager

- ▶ In ServerView Operations Manager *Single System View* press the *Locate* button in the title bar to switch on the ID indicators.

## 5.2 Completing the maintenance task

### 5.2.1 Updating or recovering the system board BIOS and iRMC



For the Japanese market, follow the instructions provided separately.

After replacing the system board, memory or a CPU, it is essential to upgrade the BIOS and iRMC to the latest version. The latest BIOS and iRMC versions are available from the Fujitsu support internet pages at:

<http://ts.fujitsu.com/support/> (EMEA market)

<http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/downloads/> (Japanese market)



Fujitsu does not assume responsibility for any damage done to the server or for the loss of any data resulting from BIOS updates.

#### 5.2.1.1 Updating or recovering the system board BIOS

##### BIOS flash procedure

- ▶ Perform the BIOS flash procedure as described in your server's "BIOS Setup Utility" reference manual.

##### BIOS recovery procedure

- ▶ Perform the BIOS recovery procedure as described in your server's "BIOS Setup Utility" reference manual.

#### 5.2.1.2 Updating or recovering the iRMC

##### iRMC flash procedure

- ▶ Prepare a USB stick including the bootable iRMC firmware update image.
- ▶ Connect the USB stick to the USB port.



Ensure that only the USB device with the iRMC firmware is connected to the USB port. Remove all other USB devices temporarily.

- ▶ Restart the server.
- ▶ The system will detect the USB stick.



If the BIOS cannot identify the USB stick, the pop-up message `Failed to boot for Emergency flash. Please Reset now.` will show up in the center of the screen.

- ▶ Choose one of the following options from the update tool menu to start the iRMC update process:

### *Normal*

Choose this option to update an existing system board.

### *Initial*

Choose this option if the system board has been replaced prior to the iRMC update procedure. This option will perform all relevant flash procedures in a row, including the iRMC firmware and bootloader.



### **CAUTION!**

Do not interrupt the iRMC upgrade process after it has started. If the process is interrupted, the iRMC BIOS may be permanently corrupted.



If the iRMC does not work after flashing, disconnect the system from the mains and reconnect it again.

- ▶ After completion of the flash process, remove the USB stick and restart the server.

## **iRMC recovery procedure**

- ▶ Prepare a USB stick including the bootable iRMC firmware update image.
- ▶ Ensure that the server has been shut down and disconnected from the mains as described in section ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#).
- ▶ Connect the USB stick to the USB port.



Ensure that only the USB device with the iRMC firmware is connected to the USB port. Remove all other USB devices temporarily.

- ▶ Connect the server to the mains while pushing the ID button on the front panel. Ask a second person to help you if necessary.
- ▶ Ensure that the Global Error indicator and the ID indicator are flashing to indicate that the server is entering the iRMC recovery state.
- ▶ Press the Power On / Off button. The system starts the POST process.



In iRMC recovery mode, the "FUJITSU" logo does not show up.

- ▶ The system will detect the USB stick.



If the BIOS cannot identify the USB stick, the pop-up message Failed to boot for Emergency flash. Please Reset now. will show up in the center of the screen.

- ▶ Choose the *Recovery\_L* option from the update tool menu to start the iRMC update process.



**CAUTION!**

Do not interrupt the iRMC upgrade process after it has started. If the process is interrupted, the iRMC BIOS may be permanently corrupted.



If the iRMC does not work after flashing, disconnect the system from the mains and reconnect it again.

- ▶ Shut down the server by pressing the power On / Off button.
- ▶ Disconnect the server from the mains to exit the iRMC recovery state.

## 5.2.2 Verifying system information backup / restore

To avoid the loss of non-default settings when replacing the system board, a backup copy of important system configuration data is automatically stored from the system board NVRAM to the Chassis ID EPROM. After replacing the system board the backup data is restored from the Chassis ID board to the new system board.

In order to verify whether the backup or restore process has been successful, check the System Event Log (SEL) using the ServerView Operations Manager (see also section ["Viewing and clearing the System Event Log \(SEL\)" on page 93](#)).

### After replacing the system board

- ▶ Check the SEL log files as described in section "[Viewing and clearing the System Event Log \(SEL\)](#)" on page 93 to verify whether the backup data on the Chassis ID EPROM has been restored to the system board:

```
Chassis IDEPROM: Restore successful
```

### After replacing the Chassis ID EPROM

- ▶ Check the SEL log files as described in section "[Viewing and clearing the System Event Log \(SEL\)](#)" on page 93 to verify whether a backup copy of the system board settings has been transferred to the Chassis ID EPROM:

```
Chassis IDEPROM: Backup successful
```

## 5.2.3 Updating RAID controller firmware

After replacing the RAID controller, it is essential to upgrade the firmware to the latest version. The latest RAID controller firmware version is available from the Fujitsu support web pages at:

<http://ts.fujitsu.com/support/> (EMEA market)

<http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/downloads/> (Japanese market)



Fujitsu does not assume responsibility for any damage done to the server or for the loss of any data resulting from firmware updates.

For the Japanese market, follow the instructions provided separately.

### Using the ServerView Update Manager

For a detailed description on how to update the RAID controller firmware using the ServerView Update Manager or Update Manager Express (UME), please refer to the following manuals:

- ServerView Update Manager:  
"ServerView Update Management" user guide
- ServerView Update Manager Express:  
"Local System Update for PRIMERGY Servers" user guide

### Using the flash tool

The latest firmware files are available as ASPs (Autonomous Support Packages) for Windows or as DOS tools from the Fujitsu support web pages at:

<http://ts.fujitsu.com/support/> (EMEA market)

<http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/downloads/> (Japanese market)

- ▶ Select *Drivers & Downloads*.
- ▶ From the *Select Product* drop down lists, choose your PRIMERGY server or enter its serial or ident number into the search field.
- ▶ Select your operating system and version.
- ▶ Select the desired component type (e.g. SAS RAID).
- ▶ Select your controller from the device list to expand a compilation of available drivers and firmware.
- ▶ Select the desired file and click *Download* for further instructions.

### 5.2.4 Enabling Option ROM scan

In order to configure an expansion card that has been installed or replaced, the card's Option ROM has to be enabled in the system board BIOS. The card's firmware is called by the system BIOS upon reboot and can be entered and configured.

Option ROM can be enabled permanently (e.g. in case of a boot controller that may require frequent setup) or temporarily for one-time configuration. When permanently enabling a controllers's Option ROM, keep in mind that only two Option ROMs can be activated in the system board BIOS at a time.

- ▶ Enter the BIOS.
- ▶ From the *Advanced* menu select *Option ROM Configuration*.
- ▶ Identify the desired PCI slot and set its *Launch Slot # OpROM* setting to *Enabled*.
- ▶ Save your changes and exit the BIOS.



Up to two Option ROMs can be activated in the system board BIOS at a time.

For detailed information on how to access the BIOS and modify settings, refer to corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual.

When the enabled expansion card is initialized during the POST phase of the boot sequence, a key combination is displayed temporarily to enter the expansion card's firmware.

- ▶ Press the displayed key combination.
- ▶ Modify the expansion card firmware options as desired.
- ▶ Save your changes and exit the firmware.



The expansion card's option ROM can now be disabled in the system board BIOS.

Exception: If the expansion card controls a permanent boot device, the card's Option ROM has to remain enabled.

### 5.2.5 Verifying and configuring the backup software solution



This task only applies to the Japanese market.

#### Disabling backup drives

Depending on the backup software solution, it may be necessary to disable or delete the backup drive from the backup software drive list and reconfigure backup jobs after completing the maintenance task.

This is the case for the following backup software solutions:

- Netvault for Windows
- ARCserve
- BackupExec



Procedures may differ depending on the backup software. For details, refer to the dedicated documentation provided separately.

Further information on suitable backup software solutions and related documentation is available to Fujitsu service partners from the Fujitsu Extranet pages.

#### Re-enabling backup drives

If a backup drive has been disabled or deleted from the backup software drive list as described in section [5.1.4 on page 77](#), it has to be re-enabled to complete the maintenance task.

- ▶ Re-enable backup drives and revise backup software settings and cronjobs.



Detailed information on suitable backup software solutions and related documentation is available to Fujitsu service partners from the Fujitsu Extranet pages

### 5.2.6 Resetting the boot retry counter

The boot retry counter is decremented from its preset value every time the POST watchdog initiates a system reboot. When the value has reached '0', the system will shut down and power off.

#### 5.2.6.1 Viewing the boot retry counter

The current boot retry counter status is available in the BIOS:

- ▶ Enter the BIOS.
- ▶ Select the *Server Mgmt* menu.
- ▶ Under *Boot Retry Counter* the current number of remaining boot attempts is displayed. The value is further decremented with every failed boot attempt or system reboot resulting from critical system errors.
- ▶ Exit the BIOS.

#### 5.2.6.2 Resetting the boot retry counter

The boot retry counter should be reset to its original value concluding every service task.



**Please note, if the customer does not know about the original boot retry values:**

If the system boots up and no further errors occur within 6 hours after that successful boot attempt, the boot retry counter will automatically be reset to its default value. Please take into account, that the specified number of boot attempts can only be determined after this period of time.

If the customer knows about the original boot retry values, proceed as follows to reset or configure the boot retry counter:

#### Resetting the boot retry counter in the BIOS

- ▶ Enter the BIOS.
- ▶ Select the *Server Mgmt* menu.
- ▶ Under *Boot Retry Counter* press the  or  keys to specify the maximum number of boot attempts (0 to 7).
- ▶ Exit the BIOS.

### Resetting the boot retry counter using the ServerView Operations Manager

- ▶ In the ServerView Operations Manager *Administration* view, select *Server Configuration*.
- ▶ If more than one server is managed in SVOM, select the target server and click *Next*.
- ▶ From the *Server Configuration* menu pane, choose *Restart Options*.
- ▶ Under *Reboot Retries*, specify the maximum number of boot attempts (0 to 7) in the *Default for reboot tries* field.

### Resetting the boot retry counter using iRMC web frontend

- ▶ Enter the ServerView iRMC web frontend.
- ▶ Select the *Server Management* menu.
- ▶ The following boot retry counter settings are available under *ASR&R Options*:
  - ▶ Under *Retry counter max* specify the maximum number of attempts to boot the operating system (0 to 7).
  - ▶ Under *Retry counter* the current number of remaining boot attempts is displayed. Overwrite this value with the maximum number of boot attempts specified above in order to reset the boot retry counter.
- ▶ Click *Apply* for the changes to take effect.



For detailed information on iRMC settings, refer to the "Integrated Remote Management Controller" user guide.

### 5.2.7 Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality

If ServerView Operations Manager boot watchdog functionality has been disabled for firmware upgrade purposes (see section [5.1.2 on page 74](#)), it has to be re-enabled to complete the maintenance task.

Timer settings can be configured in the BIOS or using the ServerView iRMC web frontend:

#### Configuring boot watchdog settings in the BIOS

- ▶ Enter the BIOS.
- ▶ Select the *Server Mgmt* menu.
- ▶ Under *Boot Watchdog* set the *Action* setting to *Reset*.
- ▶ Save your changes and exit the BIOS.



For detailed information on how to access the BIOS and modify settings, refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual.

#### Configuring boot watchdog settings using the iRMC web frontend

- ▶ Enter the ServerView iRMC web frontend.
- ▶ Select the *Server Management* menu.
- ▶ Under *Watchdog Settings* ensure that the check box next to *Boot Watchdog* is selected. From the drop down list choose *Reset* and specify the desired timeout delay.
- ▶ Click *Apply* for the changes to take effect.



For detailed information on iRMC settings, refer to the "Integrated Remote Management Controller" user guide.

### 5.2.8 Enabling replaced components in the system BIOS

When a processor, an expansion card, or a memory module fails, the defective component will be set to *Disabled* or *Failed* in the system BIOS. The server will then reboot with only the intact hardware components remaining in the system configuration. After replacing the defective component, it needs to be re-enabled in the system board BIOS.

- ▶ Enter the BIOS.

- ▶ Select the *Advanced* menu.
- ▶ Select the status menu of the desired component:
  - Processors: *CPU Status*



This option is only available for multi-processor systems.

- Memory: *Memory Status*
- Expansion cards: *PCI Status*
- ▶ Reset replaced components to *Enable*.
- ▶ Save your changes and exit the BIOS.



For detailed information on how to access the BIOS and modify settings, refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual.

## 5.2.9 Verifying the memory mode

If a memory module fails, the server will reboot and the defective module will be disabled. As a result, the current operation mode (e.g. Mirrored Channel mode) may no longer be available due to a lack of identical memory module pairs. In this case, the operation mode will automatically revert to Independent Channel Mode.



For detailed information on memory operation modes available for your server, refer to section "[Memory sequence](#)" on page 253.

After replacing the defective module(s) the memory operation mode is automatically reset to its original state. It is recommended to verify that the operation mode has been correctly.

- ▶ Enter the BIOS.
- ▶ Select the *Advanced* menu.
- ▶ Under *Memory Status* verify that none of the memory modules are marked as *Failed*.
- ▶ Save your changes (if applicable) and exit the BIOS.



For detailed information on how to access the BIOS and modify settings, refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual.

### 5.2.10 Verifying the system time settings



This task only applies to Linux environments.

After the system board has been replaced, the system time is set automatically. By default, the RTC (Real Time Clock) time standard is set as the local time.

If a Linux OS is used and the hardware clock has been configured as UTC (Universal Time, Coordinated) in the operating system, the BMC local time may not be mapped correctly.

- ▶ After replacing the system board, ask the system administrator whether the RTC or UTC time standard is to be used as system time.



If the system time (RTC) is set to UTC, the SEL (System Event Log) time stamps may differ from the local time.

- ▶ Enter the BIOS.
- ▶ Select the *Main* menu.
- ▶ Under *System Time* and *System Date* specify the correct time and date.



By default, the system time set in the BIOS is RTC (Real Time Clock) local time. If your IT infrastructure relies on universally accepted time standards, set the *System Time* to UTC (Universal Time, Coordinated) instead. Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) can be considered equivalent to UTC.

- ▶ Save your changes and exit the BIOS.



For detailed information on how to access the BIOS and modify settings, refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual

## 5.2.11 Viewing and clearing the System Event Log (SEL)

### 5.2.11.1 Viewing the SEL

You can view the System Event Log (SEL) using the ServerView Operations Manager or the ServerView iRMC web frontend:

#### Viewing the SEL in ServerView Operations Manager

- ▶ In ServerView Operations Manager *Single System View* select *Maintenance* from the *Information / Operation* menu.
- ▶ Under *Maintenance* select *System Event Log*.
- ▶ Select the message type(s) you want to display:
  - Critical events
  - Major events
  - Minor events
  - Informational events



#### Note on the SVOM Driver Monitor

The *Driver Monitor* view gives you an overview of the monitored components as well as the associated events contained in the system event log on the managed server.

Under *Monitored Components* the monitored components are listed. If a component has the status *Warning* or *Error*, you can select it in the list and click *Acknowledge*. This confirms the event on the server side. You may have to log on to the server beforehand. The status of the component will then be reset to *ok*. To see the new status you must refresh the *Driver Monitor* view with *Refresh*.



For detailed information on how to view and sort the SEL using ServerView Operations Manager, refer to the "ServerView Operations Manager - Server Management" user guide.

### Viewing the SEL using the iRMC web frontend

- ▶ Enter the ServerView iRMC web frontend.
- ▶ Select the *Event Log* and choose the *Internal Event Log* submenu.
- ▶ Under *Internal Event Log Content* the SEL is being displayed. In order to filter the list, select the check boxes next to the desired event types and press *Apply* for the changes to take effect.



For detailed information on iRMC settings, refer to the "Integrated Remote Management Controller" user guide.

### 5.2.11.2 Clearing the SEL

You can clear the System Event Log (SEL) using the ServerView iRMC web frontend:

- ▶ Enter the ServerView iRMC web frontend.
- ▶ Select the *Event Log* and choose the *Internal Event Log* submenu.
- ▶ Under *Internal Event Log Information* click *Clear Internal Event Log* to clear the SEL.



For detailed information on iRMC settings, refer to the "Integrated Remote Management Controller" user guide.

### 5.2.12 Updating the NIC configuration file in a Linux environment

In order to prevent errors caused by changing network device names (*eth<x>*), it is recommended to store the MAC address (hardware address) of a network interface card in the related NIC configuration file of the Linux OS.

When replacing a network controller or the system board with onboard LAN controllers in a server running Linux OS, the MAC address will change but not automatically be updated in the definition file.

In order to prevent communication problems, it is necessary to update the changed MAC address stored in the related *ifcfg-eth<x>* definition file.

To update the MAC address, proceed as follows:

**i** Procedures may differ depending on your Linux OS or the definition file on the client system. Use the following information as reference. Ask the system administrator to change the definition file.

- ▶ After replacing a network controller or the system board, switch on and boot the server as described in section ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#).

*kudzu*, the hardware configuration tool for Red Hat Linux, will launch at boot and detect the new and / or changed hardware on your system.

**i** *kudzu* may not launch at boot depending on the client's environment.

- ▶ Select *Keep Configuration* and *Ignore* to complete the boot process.
- ▶ Use the *vi* text editor to specify the MAC address in the `HWADDR` section of the *ifcfg-eth<x>* file:

**i** The MAC address can be found on the type label attached to the system board or network controller.

*Example:*

In order to modify the definition file for network controller 1, enter the following command:

```
# vi /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth1
```

In *vi*, specify the new MAC address as follows:

```
HWADDR=xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx
```

- ▶ Save and close the definition file.
- ▶ For the changes to take effect, you need to reboot the network by entering the following command:

```
# service network restart
```

**i** If the system board or network controller offers multiple LAN ports, it is necessary to update the remaining *ifcfg-eth<x>* definition files accordingly.

- ▶ Update the NIC configuration file to reflect the new card sequence and MAC address.

### 5.2.13 Resuming BitLocker functionality

If BitLocker Drive Encryption has been suspended for maintenance purposes (see section "[Suspending BitLocker functionality](#)" on page 73), it has to be re-enabled to complete the service task.

- i** If BitLocker Drive Encryption has been suspended prior to replacing components you won't be asked for a recovery key when rebooting the server after the maintenance task. However, if BitLocker functionality has not been suspended, Windows will enter recovery mode and ask you to input recovery key for further booting.
- ▶ In this case, ask the system administrator to enter the recovery key in order to boot the operating system.
  - ▶ Ask the system administrator to enable the previously suspended BitLocker-protection on the system volume, using the *BitLocker Drive Encryption* control panel item:

*For Windows Server 2008:*

- ▶ Open BitLocker Drive Encryption by clicking the *Start* button, clicking *Control Panel*, clicking *Security*, and then clicking *BitLocker Drive Encryption*.
- ▶ Select the system volume, and click *Turn On BitLocker*.

*For Windows Server 2008 R2 and above:*

- ▶ Open BitLocker Drive Encryption by clicking the *Start* button, clicking *Control Panel*, clicking *System and Security*, and then clicking *BitLocker Drive Encryption*.
- ▶ Select the system volume, and click *Resume Protection*.

- i** For further information on how to resume BitLocker drive encryption, please refer to the Microsoft TechNet library at <http://technet.microsoft.com/library/cc731549.aspx>.

Fujitsu service partners will find additional information (also available in Japanese) on the Fujitsu Extranet web pages.

## 5.2.14 Performing a RAID array rebuild

After replacing a hard disk drive that has been combined into a RAID array, RAID rebuild will be performed completely unattended as a background process.

- ▶ Ensure that the RAID array rebuild has started normally. Wait until the progress bar has reached at least one percent.
- ▶ Inform the customer about the remaining rebuild time, based on the displayed duration estimate.

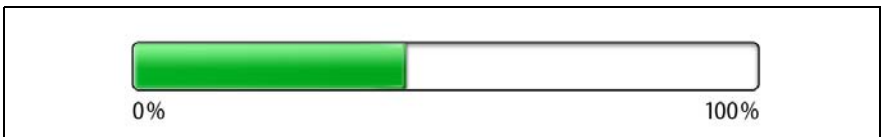


Figure 15: Progress bar (RAID array rebuild)



### CAUTION!

The system is now operational, however, data redundancy will not be available until the RAID array rebuild is complete. Depending on the hard disk drive capacity the overall process can take up to several hours, in some cases even days.



You may notice a slight performance impact during rebuild.

## 5.2.15 Looking up changed MAC / WWN addresses

When replacing a network controller, the MAC (Media Access Control) and WWN (World Wide Name) addresses will change.



In addition to the procedures described below, MAC / WWN addresses can also be found on the type label attached to a network controller or system board.

### 5.2.15.1 Looking up MAC addresses

- ▶ Enter the ServerView iRMC web frontend.
- ▶ Select the *System Information* menu.

## Basic software procedures

---

- ▶ Under *Network Inventory*, you will find detailed information on each network controller in the managed PRIMERGY server, including its MAC address.



This information is only available with the iRMC S4 or above.

Only network controllers supporting the Command Line Protocol (CLP) will be displayed.

- ▶ Inform the customer about the changed MAC address.

### 5.2.15.2 Looking up WWN addresses

#### Emulex FC / FCoE adapters

- ▶ Enable the network controller's Option ROM in the system board BIOS as described in section ["Enabling Option ROM scan" on page 85](#).
- ▶ Restart the server.
- ▶ During boot, as soon as the Emulex BIOS utility option appears, press **[ALT]+[E]** or **[CTRL]+[E]**.
- ▶ Under *Emulex Adapters in the System* you will find all available Emulex adapters and their WWN addresses.
- ▶ Note down the new 16-digit WWN address.
- ▶ Press **[Esc]** to exit the Emulex BIOS utility.
- ▶ Inform the customer about the changed WWN address.

#### QLogic FC adapters

- ▶ Enable the network controller's Option ROM in the system board BIOS as described in section ["Enabling Option ROM scan" on page 85](#).
- ▶ Restart the server.
- ▶ During boot, as soon as the QLogic BIOS utility option appears, press **[ALT]+[Q]** or **[CTRL]+[Q]**.
- ▶ Under *Select Host Adapter* use the arrow keys **[↑]/[↓]** to select the desired FC / FCoE adapter and press **[Enter]**.
- ▶ From the *Fast!UTIL Options* menu, select *Configuration Settings*, and press **[Enter]**.
- ▶ From the *Configuration Settings* menu, select *Adapter Settings*, and press **[Enter]**.

- ▶ Note down the new 16-digit WWN address found under *Adapter Port Name*.
- ▶ Press **[Esc]** to return to the main menu and exit the QLogic BIOS utility.
- ▶ Inform the customer about the changed WWN address.

## 5.2.16 Using the Chassis ID Prom Tool

The Chassis ID EPROM located on a dedicated Chassis ID board or on your server's front panel board contains system information like server name and model, housing type, serial number and manufacturing data.

In order to integrate your system into the ServerView management environment and to enable server installation using the ServerView Installation Manager, system data needs to be complete and correct.

After replacing the Chassis ID EPROM, system information has to be entered using the Chassis ID Prom tool. The tool and further instructions are available to maintenance personnel from the Fujitsu Technology Solutions Extranet:

<https://partners.ts.fujitsu.com/com/service/ps/Servers/PRIMERGY/>

- ▶ Select your PRIMERGY system from the main area of the page.
- ▶ From the categories selection, choose *Software & Tools Documentation*.
- ▶ In the *Tools* area click *Tools: Chassis-IDProm Tool* to download the file (*tool-chassis-Idprom-Tool.zip*).



For the Japanese market, follow the instructions provided separately.

### Note on Cool-safe® Advanced Thermal Design (ATD)



If the Cool-safe® Advanced Thermal Design (ATD) option is available and has been enabled for your server, please set information within the Chassis ID Prom Tool accordingly.



The ATD option can only be ordered from the manufacturer as a factory preset. To find out if your server is ATD-enabled, check for the ATD logo on the identification rating plate.

For further information on Cool-safe® Advanced Thermal Design (ATD), please refer to your server's operating manual.



### CAUTION!

Please note that you can only set the ATD flag. Resetting the ATD flag using the Chassis ID Prom Tool is not possible!

## 5.2.17 Configuring LAN teaming

Use ServerView Operations Manager to obtain detailed information on existing LAN teams:

- ▶ In ServerView Operations Manager *Single System View* select *System Status* from the *Information / Operation* menu.
- ▶ Under *Network Interfaces* select *LAN Teaming*.
- ▶ The *Network Interfaces (Summary)* overview shows all configured LAN teams and their components. Choose a LAN team to display further details:
  - *LAN Team Properties*: Properties of the selected LAN team
  - *LAN Team Statistics*: Available statistics about the selected LAN team



For more detailed information, refer to the "ServerView Operations Manager - Server Management" user guide.

### 5.2.17.1 After replacing / upgrading LAN controllers

Please note when re-using a replaced LAN controller:

- ▶ Confirm with the customer whether the LAN controller you have replaced has been used as part of a LAN teaming configuration.
- ▶ If LAN teaming has been active, you will need to restore the configuration using the LAN driver utility after replacing the LAN controller.

Ensure that the controllers have been assigned as primary or secondary according to your requirements.



For details, refer to the relevant LAN driver manual.

### 5.2.17.2 After replacing the system board

- ▶ Confirm with the customer whether the onboard LAN controller you have replaced has been used as part of a LAN teaming configuration.

- ▶ If LAN teaming has been active, you will need to restore the configuration using the LAN driver utility after replacing the system board.



For details, refer to the relevant LAN driver manual.

## 5.2.18 Switching off the ID indicator

Press the ID button on the front panel, or use the iRMC web frontend or ServerView Operations Manager to switch off the ID indicator after the maintenance task has been concluded successfully.



For further information, refer to section "[Locating the defective server](#)" on [page 51](#) or to the "ServerView Suite Local Service Concept (LSC)" and "Integrated Remote Management Controller" user guides.

### Using the ID button on the front panel

- ▶ Press the ID button on the front panel to switch off the ID indicators.

### Using the iRMC web frontend

- ▶ Enter the ServerView iRMC web frontend.
- ▶ Under *System Overview*, click *Identify LED Off* to switch off the ID indicators.

### Using ServerView Operations Manager

- ▶ In ServerView Operations Manager *Single System View* and press the *Locate* button in the title bar to switch off the ID indicator.

## 5.2.19 Performing a fan test after replacing a defective fan

After replacing a defective system fan or power supply unit containing a defective fan, the fan error indicators will stay lit until the next fan test. By default, a fan test is automatically started every 24 hours. The first automatic fan test being performed after replacing a fan will turn off the fan error indicator.

If you want to start the fan test manually, you can do so by following the description below:

### Executing the fan test via the iRMC Web interface

- ▶ Log into the iRMC web interface.
- ▶ Under *Sensors* select *Fans*.
- ▶ Select the replaced fan in the system fans group and click *Start Fan Test*.



For detailed information on iRMC settings, refer to the "Integrated Remote Management Controller" user guide.

### Executing the fan test via ServerView Operations Manager

- ▶ Open the ServerView Operations Manager and log in.
- ▶ Under *Administration* select *Server Configuration*.
- ▶ In the hierarchy tree of the *Server list* tab, select the server to be configured.
- ▶ In the right-hand side of the window, specify the details on the selected server and confirm your entries by clicking *GO...*

In the left-hand section of the window, the *Configuration* tab is being activated.

- ▶ In the navigation area of the *Configuration* tab, select *Other Settings*.
- ▶ Under *Daily Fan Test*, set the daily fan test time to a few minutes from the current time. (Ensure to note down your previous setting.)
- ▶ Click *Save Page*.  
The fan test will be started at the specified time.
- ▶ After the fan test is complete, restore the time setting to its initial value and click *Save Page*.



For more detailed information, refer to the "ServerView Operations Manager" user guide.

### For the Japanese market: Executing the fan test via Chassis ID Prom Tool



Please follow the instructions provided separately.

---

## 6 Power supply units

### Safety notes



#### CAUTION!

- Do not disassemble the power supply unit. Doing so may cause electric shock.
- Areas around the power supply unit may remain extremely hot after shutdown. After shutting down the server, wait for hot components to cool down before removing the power supply unit.
- When installing a power supply unit, ensure that the connector of the power supply unit is not damaged or bent.
- If the power supply unit is hard to remove, do not pull it out by force.
- The power supply unit is heavy, so handle it carefully. If you drop it by mistake, injuries may result.
- For further safety information, please refer to chapter "[Important information](#)" on page 39.

### 6.1 Basic information

The PRIMERGY RX300 S8 server can be equipped:

- with up to two power supply units that automatically adjust to any mains voltage in the range of 100 VAC to 240 VAC
- or with up to two DC power supply units that adjusts automatically to any power voltage in the range from -40.5 V to -57 V.



Power redundancy is possible in with two power supply units . The effective power of the power supply units may not differ.



#### CAUTION!

The server supports a mains voltage in the range of 100 VAC to 240 VAC or a direct current source in the range of -40.5 V to -57 V. You may only operate the server if its rated voltage range corresponds to the local mains voltage.

## 6.1.1 Power supply unit configurations



Figure 16: Hot-plug power supply units: 450 W AC (1), 800 W AC (2), 800 W DC (3)

Power class	Number in figure	Power	Item
1	1	450 W AC	Platinum
2	2	800 W AC	Platinum
	2	800 W AC	Titanium
	2	800 W DC	



All different hot-plug power supply units are to install, to remove or to replace in the same way.

## 6.1.2 Assembly rules

- Mixed assembly of 450 W, 800 W and 800 W (Titanium) hot-plug power supply units is not supported.
- Always install a dummy cover into an unused power supply unit bay to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements.
- For an redundant power supply you need two hot-plug power supply units.



### Note for servers using CMA (Cable Management Arm)

Regarding of removing power supply units, additional tasks are needed, due to an interference between CMA stopper and the power supply units.

- ▶ Unlock the CMA stopper.
- ▶ Remove the CMA stopper with the mounted crossbar.

- ▶ Support the CMA stopper, the crossbar and the CMA including cables with your right hand.
- ▶ Remove the power supply unit and install a dummy cover into the empty bay.
- ▶ Remount the complete assembly (CMA stopper, crossbar and CMA) into the rail.

## 6.2 Installing hot-plug power supply units



**Customer Replaceable Unit (CRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

<b>Tools:</b> tool-less
-------------------------

### 6.2.1 Preliminary steps

No steps needed.

## 6.2.2 Removing the dummy cover

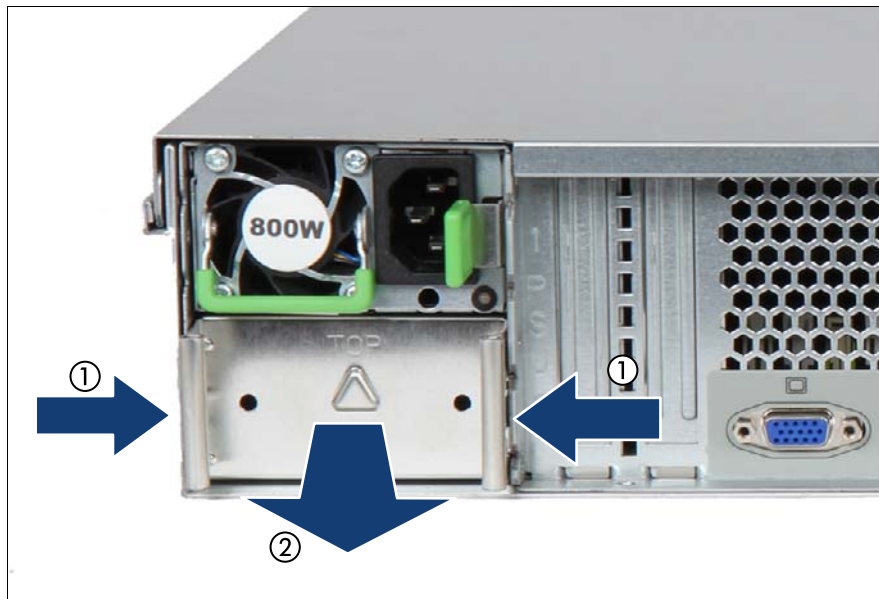


Figure 17: Removing the dummy cover

- ▶ Press in on both release latches (1) and remove the dummy cover (2).



### **CAUTION!**

Keep the dummy cover for future use. If a power supply unit is removed and not immediately replaced by a new one, a dummy cover must be replaced in the slot to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements.

### 6.2.3 Installing a hot-plug power supply unit

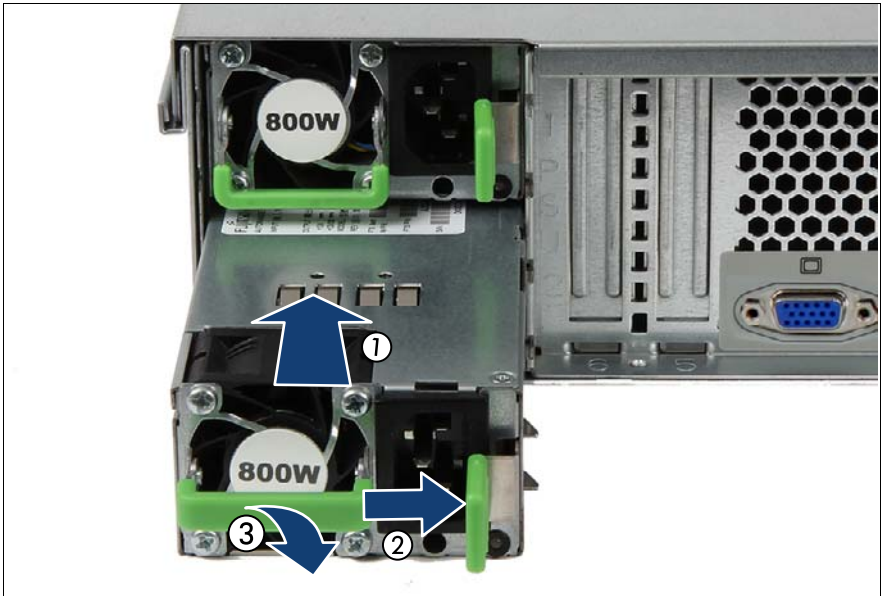


Figure 18: Installing the hot-plug power supply unit

- ▶ Push the power supply unit into its bay (1) as far as it will go until the release latch snaps in place (2).
- ▶ Fold down the handle on the power supply unit(3).



#### **CAUTION!**

Ensure that the power supply unit properly engages in its bay and is locked in position in order to prevent it from sliding out of the chassis during transportation.

### 6.2.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)

## 6.3 Removing a hot-plug power supply unit



**Customer Replaceable Unit (CRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less



### **Note for servers using CMA (Cable Management Arm)**

Regarding of removing power supply units, additional tasks are needed, due to an interference between CMA stopper and the power supply units.

- ▶ Unlock the CMA stopper.
- ▶ Remove the CMA stopper with the mounted crossbar.
- ▶ Support the CMA stopper, the crossbar and the CMA including cables with your right hand.
- ▶ Remove the power supply unit and install a dummy cover into the empty bay.
- ▶ Remount the complete assembly (CMA stopper, crossbar and CMA) into the rail.

### 6.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ Remove the power cord from the dedicated power supply unit as described in section ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)

### 6.3.2 Removing a hot-plug power supply unit



Figure 19: Removing the hot-plug power supply unit

- ▶ Push the handle of the power supply unit halfway upward in the direction of the arrow (2).
- ▶ Push the green release latch in direction of the arrow (1).
- ▶ While keeping the green release latch pressed, pull the power supply unit out of its slot (3).



#### **CAUTION!**

Never leave the bay for the power supply unit empty for more than two minutes during operation. Otherwise, excessive temperatures could damage system components.

### 6.3.3 Installing a dummy cover

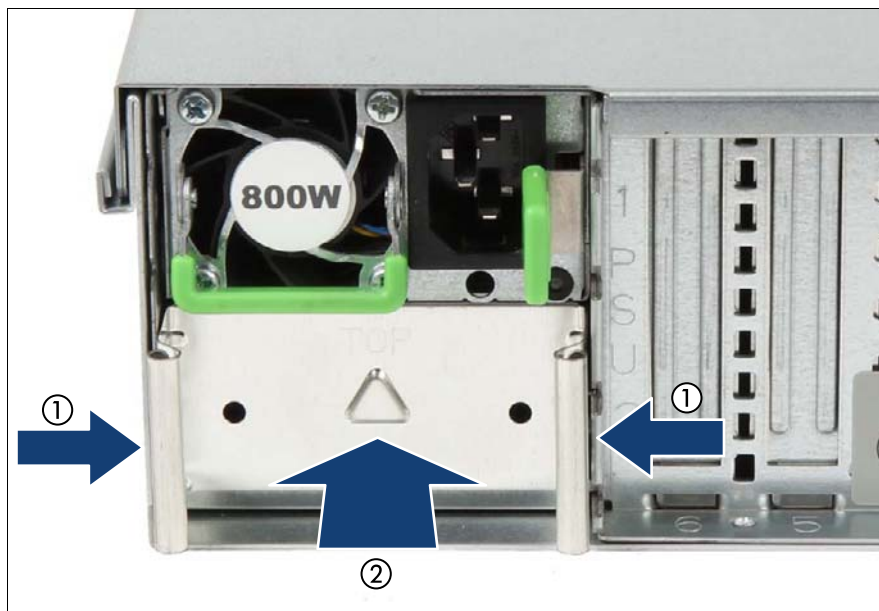


Figure 20: Installing a dummy cover

- ▶ Insert the dummy cover into the empty bay with the impressed arrow symbol facing up.
- ▶ Press in on both release latches on the dummy cover (1) and carefully insert the dummy cover into its bay (2) until it locks in place.



**CAUTION!**

Always install dummy covers into unused bay ts to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements.

### 6.3.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)

## 6.4 Replacing a hot-plug power supply unit



Customer Replaceable Unit  
(CRU)



Hardware: 5 minutes

**Tools:** tool-less



### CAUTION!

- When replacing a power supply unit in a non-redundant power supply configuration, the server must be switched off first.
- Replace the power supply unit after specifying the one that breaks down at work by revitalization.
- Ensure to replace a defective power supply unit by a new unit of the same type.

### 6.4.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective component" on page 53](#)
- ▶ In non-redundant power supply configurations, shut down the server as described in section ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#).
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)

### 6.4.2 Removing the defective hot-plug power supply unit

- ▶ Remove the defective power supply unit as described in section ["Removing a hot-plug power supply unit" on page 109](#).

### 6.4.3 Installing the new hot-plug power supply unit

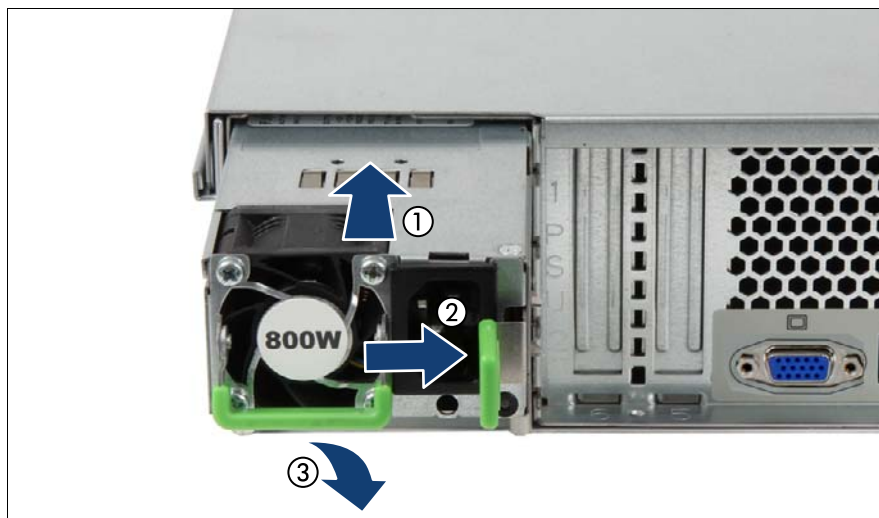


Figure 21: Installing the hot-plug power supply unit

- ▶ Insert the power supply unit into its slot.
- ▶ Push the power supply unit into its slot (1) as far as it will go until the locking latch snaps in place (2).



#### **CAUTION!**

Ensure that the power supply unit properly engages in its slot and is locked in position in order to prevent it from sliding out of the chassis during transportation.

- ▶ If applicable, fold down the handle on the power supply unit(3).

### 6.4.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ In non-redundant PSU configurations, switch on the server as described in section ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Performing a fan test after replacing a defective fan" on page 100](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 6.5 Upgrading a power supply from 450 W to 800 W

### Basic information



#### CAUTION!

No mixed power supply configuration is allowed.



**Customer Replaceable Unit (CRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less

### 6.5.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ In non-redundant power supply configurations, shut down the server as described in section ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#).
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)

### 6.5.2 Removing the hot-plug power supply unit



#### CAUTION!

If you want to upgrade the power supply unit from 450W to 800 W hot-plug the running of the mixed configuration must not exceed 5 minutes.

- ▶ ["Removing a hot-plug power supply unit" on page 109](#)

### 6.5.3 Installing the new hot-plug power supply unit

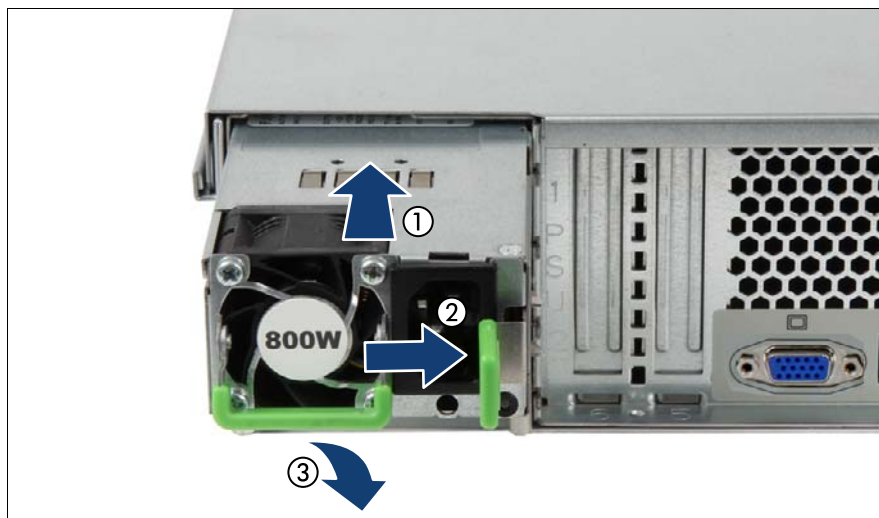


Figure 22: Installing the hot-plug power supply unit

- ▶ Insert the power supply unit into its bay.
- ▶ Push the power supply unit into its bay (1) as far as it will go until the release latch snaps in place (2).



When upgrading redundant power supply configurations from 450 W to 800 W power supply unit, please note the following:

After replacing the first power supply unit, the CSS indicator will start flashing (entry into SEL), indicating an unsupported mixture of power supply units with different power output.

The CSS indicator LED will stop flashing as soon as the second power supply unit has been replaced as well.



#### **CAUTION!**

Ensure that the power supply unit properly engages in its slot and is locked in position in order to prevent it from sliding out of the chassis during transportation.

- ▶ If applicable, fold down the handle on the power supply unit(3).

## 6.5.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 6.6 Replacing the power backplane



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

<b>Tools:</b> tool-less
-------------------------

### 6.6.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the housing cover" on page 61](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the air duct" on page 62](#)

## 6.6.2 Disconnecting power cables

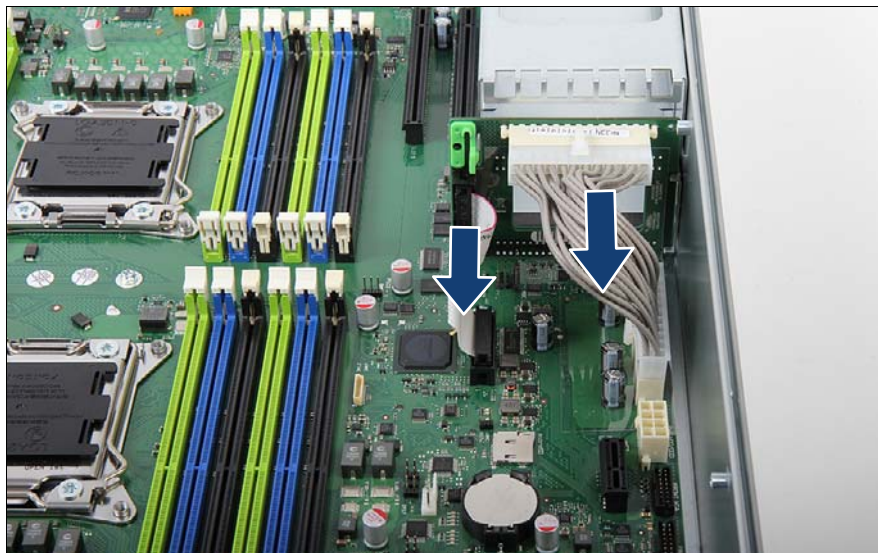


Figure 23: Disconnecting cables from the power backplane

- ▶ Remove the cables from the power backplane.

### 6.6.3 Removing the power backplane

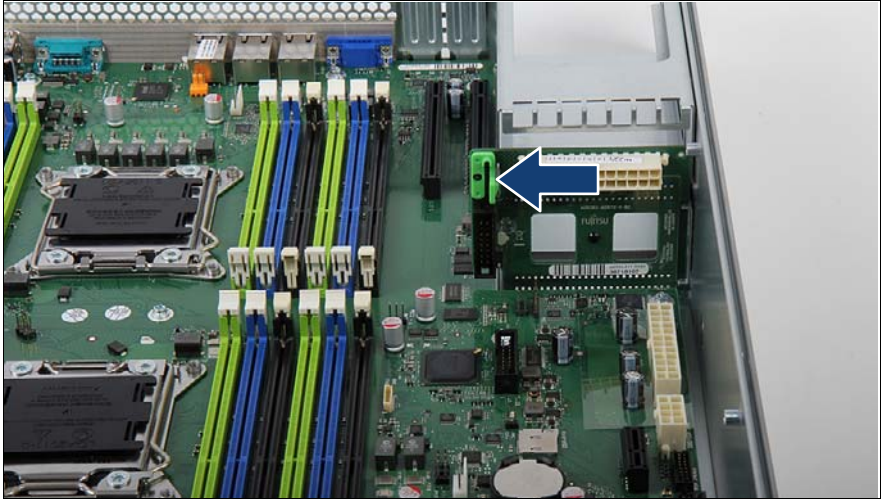


Figure 24: Removing the power backplane (A)

- ▶ Unlock the locking mechanism of the power backplane.

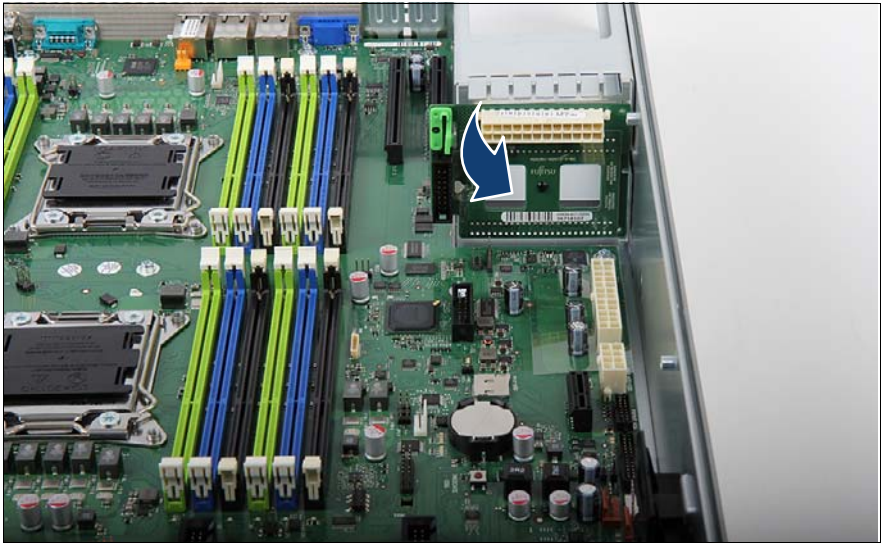


Figure 25: Removing the power backplane (B)

## Power supply units

---

- ▶ Fold the power backplane in the direction of the arrow.

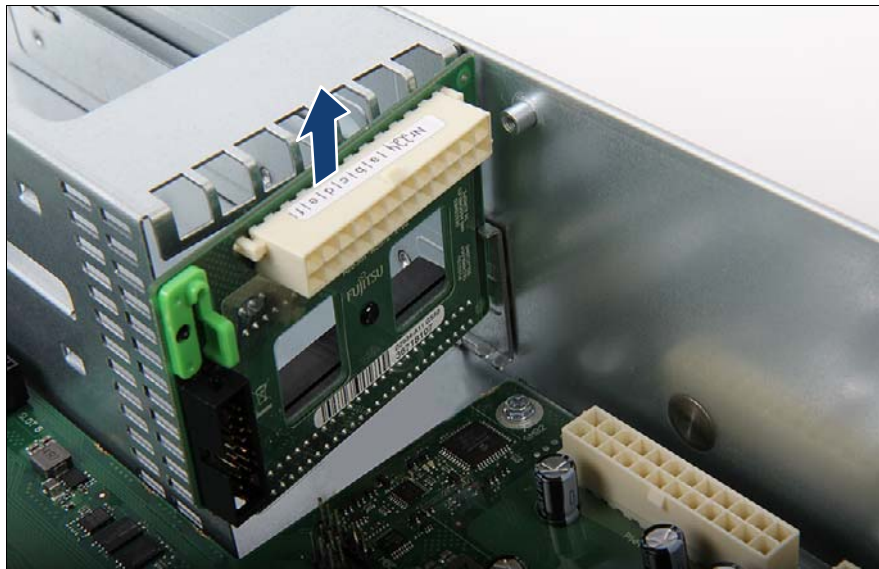


Figure 26: Removing the power backplane (C)

- ▶ Push the power backplane upward.
- ▶ Remove the power backplane.

## 6.6.4 Installing the power backplane

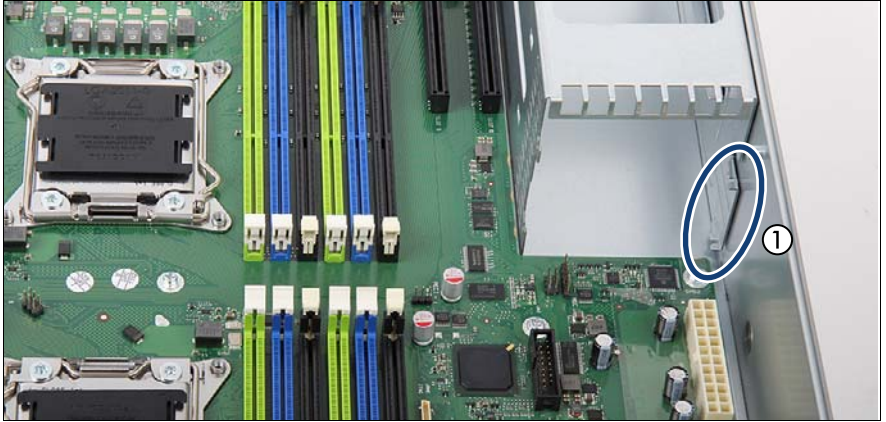


Figure 27: Installing the power backplane (A)

- ▶ Insert the new power backplane into the guiding hooks of the chassis (1).

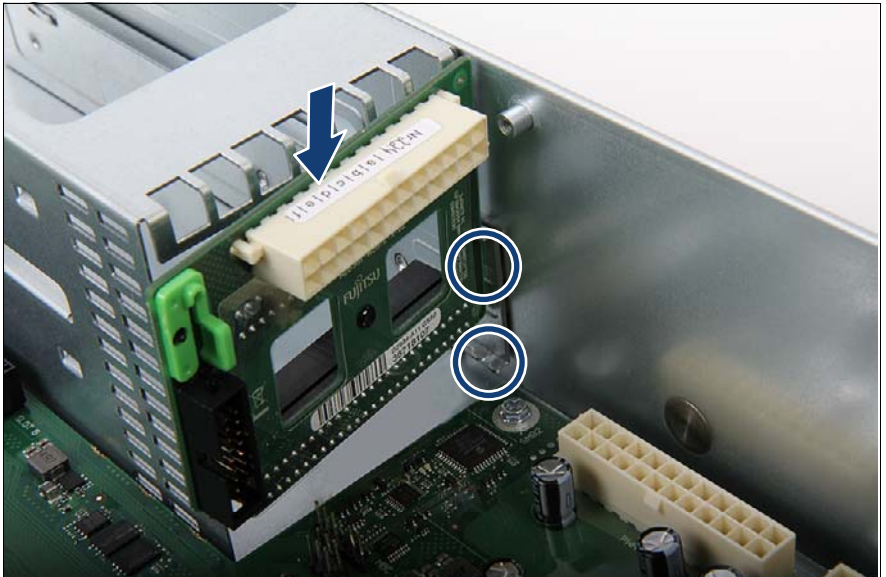


Figure 28: Installing the power backplane (B)

- ▶ Slide the power backplane downward in the guiding hooks.

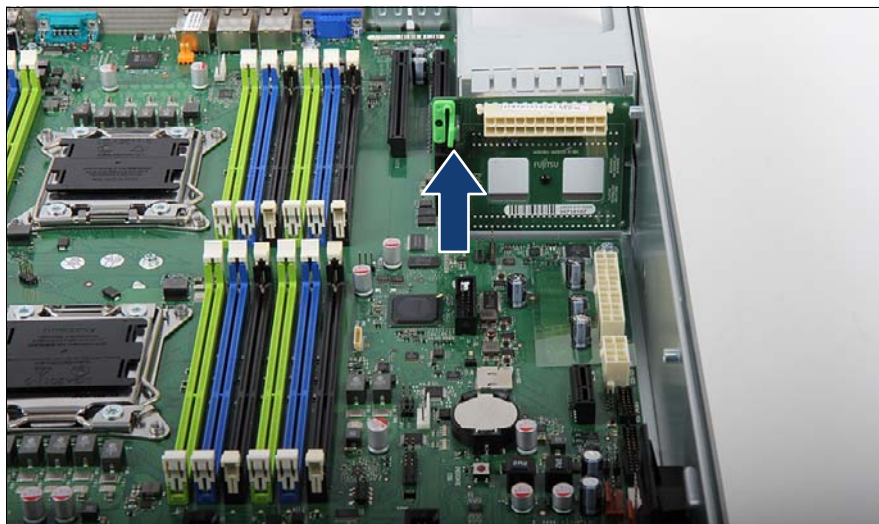


Figure 29: Locking the power backplane

- ▶ Press the power backplane in the direction of the arrow to lock it.

## 6.6.5 Reconnecting power cables

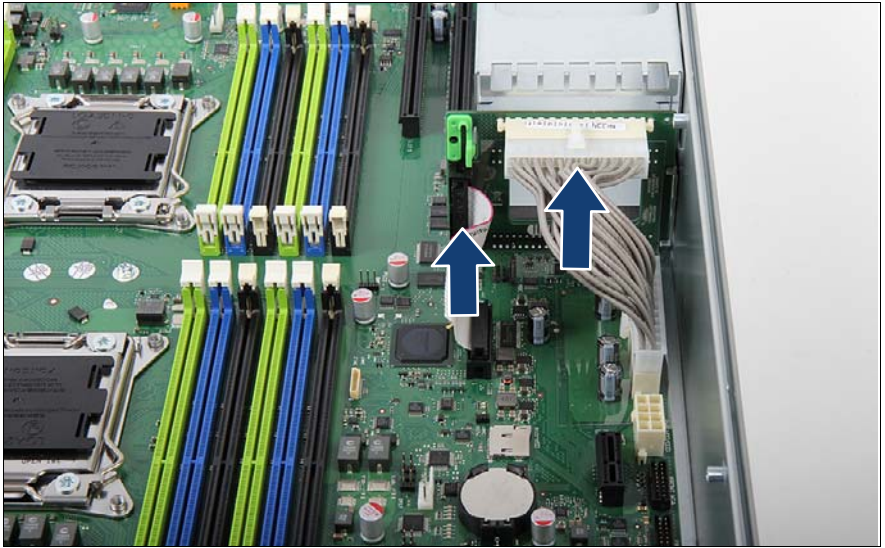


Figure 30: Connecting power cables (A)

- ▶ Connect the cables.

## 6.6.6 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the air duct" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Mounting the housing cover" on page 65](#)
- ▶ ["Sliding the server into the rack" on page 68](#)

If the server has been completely removed from the rack for maintenance purposes, reinstall and secure it in the rack as described in section ["Mounting the server in the rack" on page 65](#).

- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)



---

# 7 Hard disk drives / solid state drives

## Safety notes



### CAUTION!

- The hard disk drive must not be removed from the installation frame by anyone except a service technician.
- HDD / SSD modules must all be marked clearly so that they can be reinstalled into their original mounting locations after an upgrade. Otherwise, data may be lost.
- Do not touch the circuitry on boards or soldered parts. Hold the metallic areas or the edges of the circuit boards.
- Before removing a hard disk drive, wait for about 30 seconds until the disk has stopped spinning completely.
- When a hard disk drive is starting up, a resonant noise may be audible for a short while. This does not indicate a failure.
- Depending on the OS, you can configure the write cache settings for the hard disk drives. If a power failure should occur while the write cache is enabled, cached data may be lost.
- When disposing of, transferring, or returning a hard disk or solid state drive, wipe out the data on the drive for your own security.
- Rough handling of hard disk drives may damage the stored data. To cope with any unexpected problems, always back up important data. When backing up data to another hard disk drive, you should make backups on a file or partition basis.
- Handle the device on a shock and vibration free surface.
- Do not use the device in extremely hot or cold locations, or locations with extreme temperature changes.
- Never attempt to disassemble a hard disk or solid state drive.
- For further safety information, please refer to chapter ["Important information"](#) on page 39.

## 7.1 Basic procedures

- Solid state drives (SSDs) are always equipped before installing hard disk drives.
- Hard disk drives / solid state drives with different capacities are installed from highest to lowest capacity.
- Hard disk drives with different rotation speeds are installed from highest to lowest speed.
- When installing hard disk drives with different bus technologies (SAS or SATA), first install SAS drives and then SATA drives.
- Please refer to sections "[Mounting order for 2.5-inch HDDs / SSDs](#)" on page 133 and "[6x3.5-inch HDD configuration](#)" on page 124 for a complete overview of the mounting sequence.
- Install dummy modules into unused HDD / SSD bays.

**i** The mounting order described above is only relevant for the factory manufacturing process. In case of upgrading a system you need not consider this mounting sequence.

## 7.2 3.5-inch hard disk drives

### 7.2.1 6x3.5-inch HDD configuration

#### 7.2.1.1 Mounting order

**i** Maximum configuration: 6x 3.5-inch HDDs

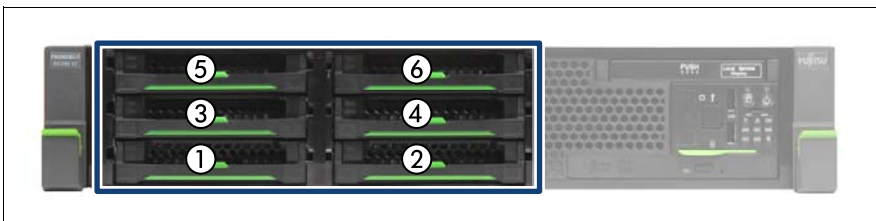


Figure 31: 3.5-inch HDD mounting order

### 7.2.1.2 HDD naming scheme

**i** The HDD numbering as listed in the ServerView RAID Manager differs from the HDD mounting order:

3.5-inch HDDs					
HDD	RAID Manager #	Channel	HDD	RAID Manager #	Channel
1	0	1	2	4	2
3	1	1	4	5	2
5	2	1	6	6	2

Table 4: HDD naming scheme

## 7.2.2 4x3.5-inch HDD configuration with tape/RDX drive

### 7.2.2.1 Mounting order with tape/RDX drive

**i** Maximum configuration: 4x 3.5-inch HDDs

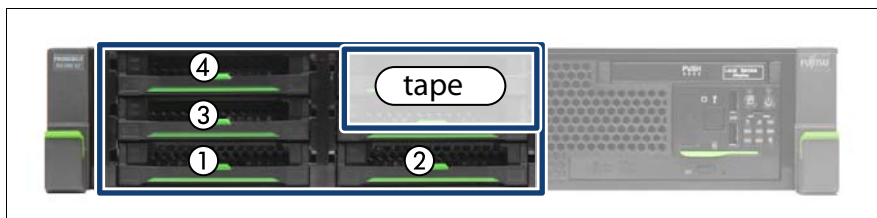


Figure 32: 3.5-inch HDD mounting order with tape

### 7.2.2.2 HDD naming scheme with tape drive



The HDD numbering as listed in the ServerView RAID Manager differs from the HDD mounting order:

3.5-inch HDDs					
HDD	RAID Manager #	Channel	HDD	RAID Manager #	Channel
1	[0]	1	2	[4]	2
3	[1]	1			
4	[2]	1			

Table 5: HDD naming scheme

### 7.2.3 Installing 3.5-inch HDD modules



**Customer Replaceable Unit (CRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less

#### 7.2.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ Locate the correct drive bay as described in section "[6x3.5-inch HDD configuration](#)" on page 124.

### 7.2.3.2 Removing a 3.5-inch dummy module

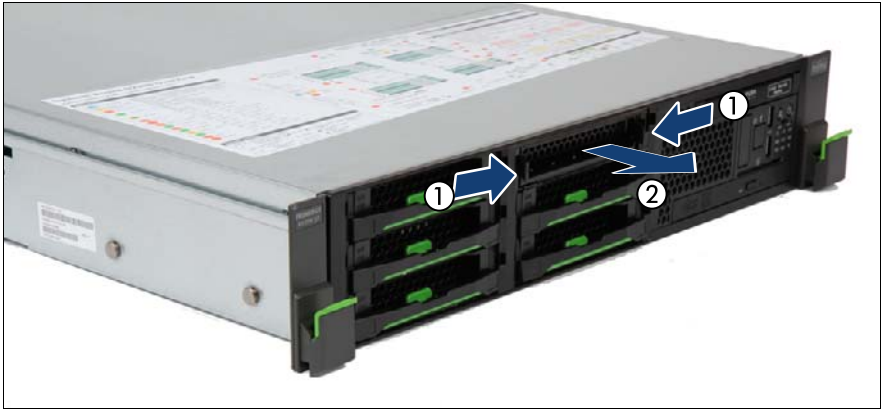


Figure 33: Removing a 3.5-inch dummy module

**i** Dummy modules have been installed into unused HDD bays. Before installing an additional HDD, the dummy module needs to be removed from the desired drive bay.

- ▶ Press in on the locking tabs on both sides of the dummy module to disengage the locking mechanism (1).
- ▶ While keeping the locking tabs pressed, pull the dummy module out of its bay (2).



#### **CAUTION!**

Save the dummy module for future use.  
Always replace dummy modules into unused HDD bays to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements.

### 7.2.3.3 Installing a 3.5-inch HDD module



Figure 34: Opening the 3.5-inch HDD module locking lever

- ▶ While pressing down on the locking button (1) fold up the lever (2).



Figure 35: Inserting the 3.5-inch HDD module

- ▶ Insert the HDD module into a drive bay and carefully push back as far as it will go (1).
- ▶ Fold down the lever to lock the HDD module in place (2).

### 7.2.3.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Performing a RAID array rebuild" on page 96](#)

## 7.2.4 Removing 3.5-inch HDD modules



**Customer Replaceable Unit (CRU)**





**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less

### 7.2.4.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ If the HDD module to be removed is combined into a RAID array, please proceed as follows:

RAID level	Procedure
RAID 0	<p>Only remove an HDD module combined in a RAID 0 array if defective.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION!</b> Removing an operational HDD module will result in data loss!</p>
RAID 1 RAID 5	<p>Removing an HDD module from a RAID 1 or RAID 5 array will not result in data loss.</p> <p>However, the removed drive needs to be replaced immediately by an HDD module of the same or larger capacity.</p> <p> After replacing the HDD module, RAID rebuild will be performed as a background process as described in section <a href="#">"Performing a RAID array rebuild" on page 96</a>.</p>



### **CAUTION!**

All data on all HDDs in the array will be lost! Be sure to back up your data before deleting a RAID array.



For further information, please refer to the "ServerView Suite RAID Management" user guide.

### 7.2.4.2 Removing a 3.5-inch HDD module



Figure 36: Removing a 3.5-inch HDD module

- ▶ While pressing down on the locking button (1) fold up the lever (2).



Thereby, the HDD module is pushed out of its drive bay by about 1 cm and disconnected from the SAS / SATA backplane.

- ▶ Wait about 30 seconds to allow the hard disk drive to spin down.
- ▶ Pull the HDD module completely out of its bay.

### 7.2.4.3 Installing a 3.5-inch dummy module



#### CAUTION!

If the removed HDD module is not replaced immediately, always replace a dummy module into the unused HDD bay to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements.



Figure 37: Installing a 3.5-inch dummy module

- ▶ Slide the 3.5-inch dummy module into the drive bay until it locks in place.

### 7.2.4.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Performing a RAID array rebuild" on page 96](#)

## 7.2.5 Replacing a 3.5-inch HDD module



**Customer Replaceable Unit (CRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less



### **CAUTION!**

- Only remove an HDD / SSD module during operation if the drive is not currently being accessed. Observe the indicators on the HDD module, as described in the operating manual of your server.
- Under no circumstances should you remove an HDD / SSD module while the system is in operation if you are not sure that the drive is operated by a RAID controller and belongs to a disk array that is operating in RAID level 0, 1, 1E, 10, 5, 50, 6 or 60.

An HDD / SSD module can only be replaced during operation in conjunction with a corresponding RAID configuration.

- All HDD / SSD modules (drives) must be uniquely identified so that they can be reinstalled in their original mounting locations later. If this is not done, existing data can be lost.

### 7.2.5.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ Locate the defective HDD module as described in section ["Local diagnostic indicators on the front" on page 53](#).

#### **Only applicable for removing intact HDD modules:**

- ▶ Before removing a non-defective HDD module, put the drive into "Offline" mode using your RAID configuration software.



For further information, please refer to the "ServerView Suite RAID Management" user guide.

### 7.2.5.2 Removing a 3.5-inch HDD module

- ▶ ["Removing a 3.5-inch HDD module" on page 130](#)

### 7.2.5.3 Installing a 3.5-inch HDD module

- ▶ ["Installing 3.5-inch HDD modules" on page 126](#)

### 7.2.5.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Performing a RAID array rebuild" on page 96](#)

## 7.3 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configurations

### 7.3.1 Mounting order for 2.5-inch HDDs / SSDs

Maximum configuration: 16x 2.5-inch HDDs / SSDs

#### Basic information

- Solid state drives (SSDs) are always equipped before installing hard disk drives.
- If only one HDD/SSD module is installed, the HDD/SSD module will be installed in position 1. Empty bays must be equipped with a dummy module.

#### 7.3.1.1 HDD / SSD mounting order for 4x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration

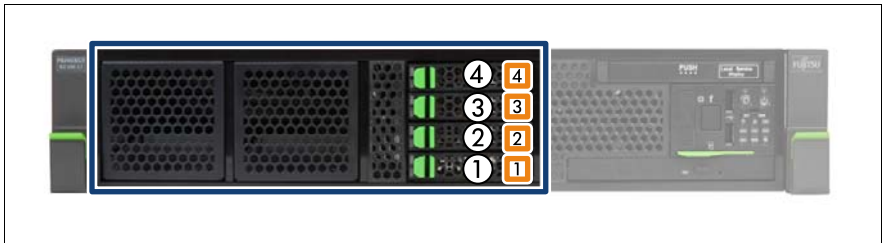


Figure 38: 2.5-inch HDD / SSD mounting order configuration 2 and 3

#### 7.3.1.2 HDD / SSD naming scheme for 4x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration



The HDD / SSD numbering as listed in the ServerView RAID Manager differs from the HDD mounting order:

2.5-inch HDDs / SSDs		
HDD	RAID Manager #	Channel
1	0	1
2	1	1
3	2	1
4	3	1

Table 6: HDD naming scheme

**7.3.1.3 HDD / SSD mounting order for 8x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configurations**

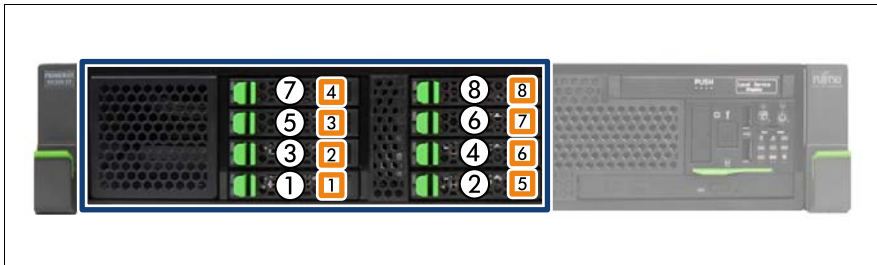


Figure 39: 2.5-inch HDD / SSD mounting order configuration 4

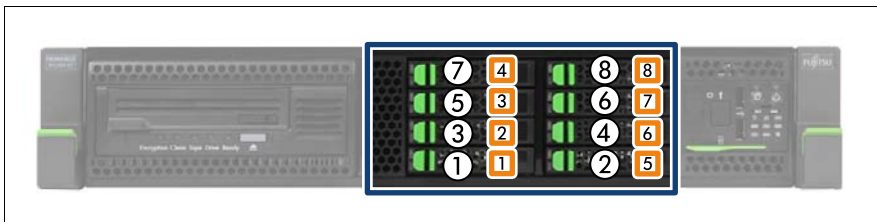


Figure 40: 2.5-inch HDD / SSD mounting order configuration 6 and 15

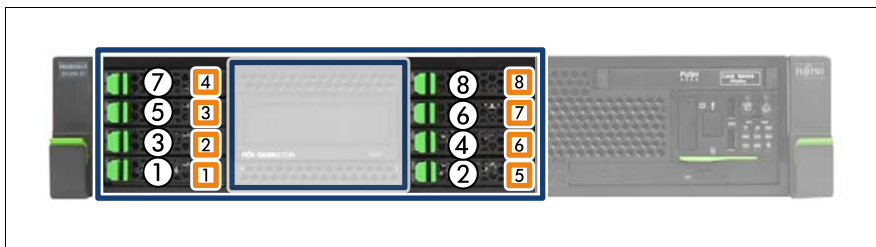


Figure 41: 2.5-inch HDD / SSD mounting order configuration 5 and 12

### 7.3.1.4 HDD / SSD naming scheme for 8x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configurations

**i** The HDD / SSD numbering as listed in the ServerView RAID Manager differs from the HDD mounting order:

2.5-inch HDDs / SSDs					
HDD	RAID Manager #	Channel	HDD	RAID Manager #	Channel
1	0	1	5	4	2
2	1	1	6	5	2
3	2	1	7	6	2
4	3	1	8	7	2

Table 7: HDD naming scheme

### 7.3.1.5 HDD / SSD mounting order for 12x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration

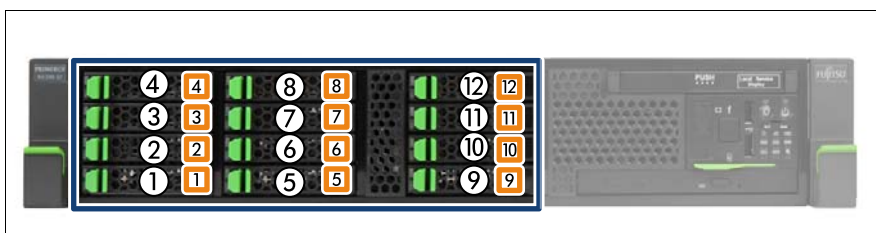


Figure 42: 2.5-inch HDD / SSD mounting order configuration 7 and 10

**7.3.1.6 HDD / SSD naming scheme for 12x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration**

**i** The HDD / SSD numbering as listed in the ServerView RAID Manager differs from the HDD mounting order:

2.5-inch HDDs / SSDs	
HDD	RAID Manager #
1	0
2	1
3	2
4	3
5	4
6	5
7	6
8	7
9	8
10	9
11	10
12	11

Table 8: HDD naming scheme

**7.3.1.7 HDD / SSD mounting order for 16x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration**

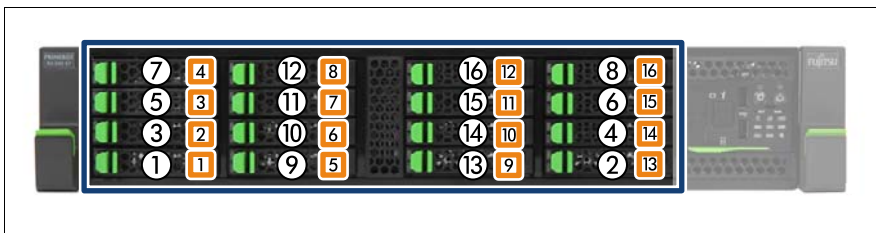



Figure 43: 2.5-inch HDD / SSD mounting order configuration 8

### 7.3.1.8 HDD / SSD naming scheme 16x 2.5-inch HDD / SSD configuration

 The HDD / SSD numbering as listed in the ServerView RAID Manager differs from the HDD mounting order:

2.5-inch HDDs / SSDs	
HDD	RAID Manager #
1	0
2	1
3	2
4	3
5	4
6	5
7	6
8	7
9	8
10	9
11	10
12	11
13	12
14	13
15	14
16	15

Table 9: HDD naming scheme

## 7.3.2 Installing 2.5-inch HDD / SSD modules



**Customer Replaceable Unit (CRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less

### 7.3.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ Locate the correct drive bay as described in section ["Mounting order for 2.5-inch HDDs / SSDs" on page 133](#).

### 7.3.2.2 Removing a 2.5-inch dummy module



Figure 44: Removing a 2.5-inch dummy module

- ▶ Press both tabs together (1) and pull the dummy module out of its bay (2).



#### **CAUTION!**

Save the dummy module for future use.  
Always replace dummy modules into unused HDD / SSD bays to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements.

### 7.3.2.3 Installing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module



Figure 45: Opening the 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module locking lever

- Pinch the green locking clips (1) and open the locking lever (2).



Figure 46: Inserting the 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module

## Hard disk drives / solid state drives

---

- ▶ Insert the HDD module into a drive bay and carefully push back as far as it will go (1).
- ▶ Close the locking lever to lock the hard disk drive in place (2).

### 7.3.2.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Performing a RAID array rebuild" on page 96](#)

## 7.3.3 Removing 2.5-inch HDD / SSD modules



**Customer Replaceable Unit (CRU)**





**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less

### 7.3.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ If the HDD / SSD module to be removed is combined into a RAID array, please proceed as follows:

RAID level	Procedure
RAID 0	<p>Only remove an HDD module combined in a RAID 0 array if defective.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION!</b> Removing an operational HDD module will result in data loss!</p>
RAID 1 RAID 5	<p>Removing an HDD module from a RAID 1 or RAID 5 array will not result in data loss.</p> <p>However, the removed drive needs to be replaced immediately by an HDD module of the same or larger capacity.</p> <p> After replacing the HDD module, RAID rebuild will be performed as a background process as described in section <a href="#">"Performing a RAID array rebuild" on page 96</a>.</p>

In order to permanently remove an operational HDD module that is part of a RAID array from the server, you first need to delete the array using ServerView RAID Manager.



### CAUTION!

All data on all HDDs / SSDs in the array will be lost! Be sure to back up your data before deleting a RAID array.

For further information, please refer to the "ServerView Suite RAID Management" user guide.



### CAUTION!

All data on all HDDs / SSDs in the array will be lost! Be sure to back up your data before deleting a RAID array.



For further information, please refer to the "ServerView Suite RAID Management" user guide.

### 7.3.3.2 Removing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module



Figure 47: Disconnecting a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module

- ▶ Pinch the green locking clips (1) and fully open the locking lever (2).



Thereby, the HDD / SSD module is pushed out of its drive bay by about 1 cm and disconnected from the SAS / SATA backplane.

## Hard disk drives / solid state drives

---

- ▶ Wait about 30 seconds to allow the hard disk drive to spin down.



This is not necessary when removing a solid state drive.



Figure 48: Removing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module

- ▶ Pull the HDD / SSD module completely out of its bay.

### 7.3.3.3 Installing a 2.5-inch dummy module



#### **CAUTION!**

If the removed HDD / SSD module is not replaced immediately, always replace a dummy module into the unused HDD / SSD bay to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements.



Figure 49: Installing a 2.5-inch dummy module

- ▶ Slide the dummy module into the drive bay until it locks in place.

#### 7.3.3.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Performing a RAID array rebuild" on page 96](#)

### 7.3.4 Replacing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module



**Customer Replaceable Unit (CRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less



#### **CAUTION!**

- Only remove an HDD / SSD module during operation if the drive is not currently being accessed. Observe the indicators for the corresponding HDD / SSD modules, see operating manual of your server.

- Under no circumstances should you remove an HDD / SSD module while the system is in operation if you are not sure that the drive is operated by a RAID controller and belongs to a disk array that is operating in RAID level 0, 1, 1E, 10, 5, 50, 6 or 60.

An HDD / SSD module can only be replaced during operation in conjunction with a corresponding RAID configuration.

- All HDD / SSD modules (drives) must be uniquely identified so that they can be reinstalled in their original mounting locations later. If this is not done, existing data can be lost.

### 7.3.4.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ Locate the defective HDD / SSD module as described in section ["Local diagnostic indicators on the front" on page 53](#).

#### **Only applicable for removing intact HDD / SSD modules:**

- ▶ Before removing a non-defective HDD / SSD module, put the drive into "Offline" mode using your RAID configuration software.

### 7.3.4.2 Removing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module

- ▶ Remove the HDD / SSD module to be replaced from the server as described in section ["Removing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module" on page 141](#).

### 7.3.4.3 Installing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module

- ▶ Install the new HDD / SSD module into the empty drive bay as described in section ["Installing 2.5-inch HDD / SSD modules" on page 137](#)

### 7.3.4.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Performing a RAID array rebuild" on page 96](#)

## 7.4 Replacing SAS / SATA HDD / SSD backplanes

### 7.4.1 Replacing the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane



Field Replaceable Unit  
(FRU)



Hardware: 10 minutes

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

#### 7.4.1.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ Remove all HDD / SSD modules from the server as described in section ["Removing 3.5-inch HDD modules" on page 129](#).



#### **CAUTION!**

Ensure that all hard disk drives are uniquely identified so that you can reinsert them into their original bays after replacing the HDD backplane.

- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 7.4.1.2 Removing the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane

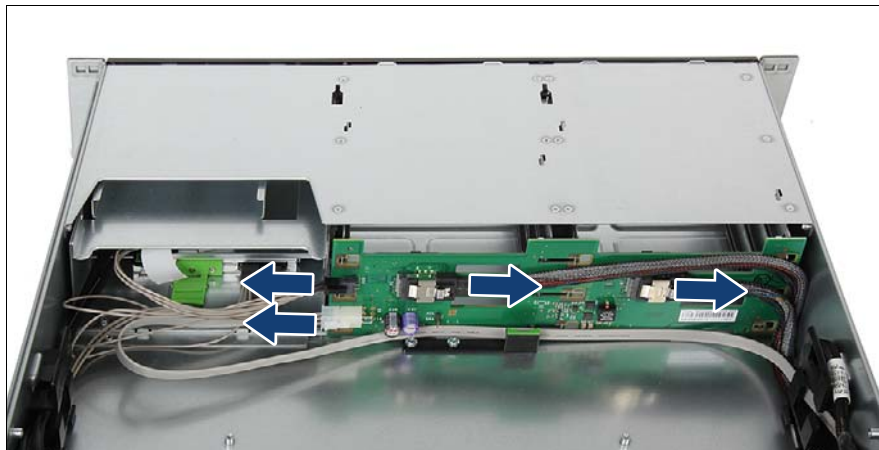


Figure 50: Disconnecting cables from the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane

- ▶ Disconnect all cables from the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane:
  - SAS cables
  - Power cables

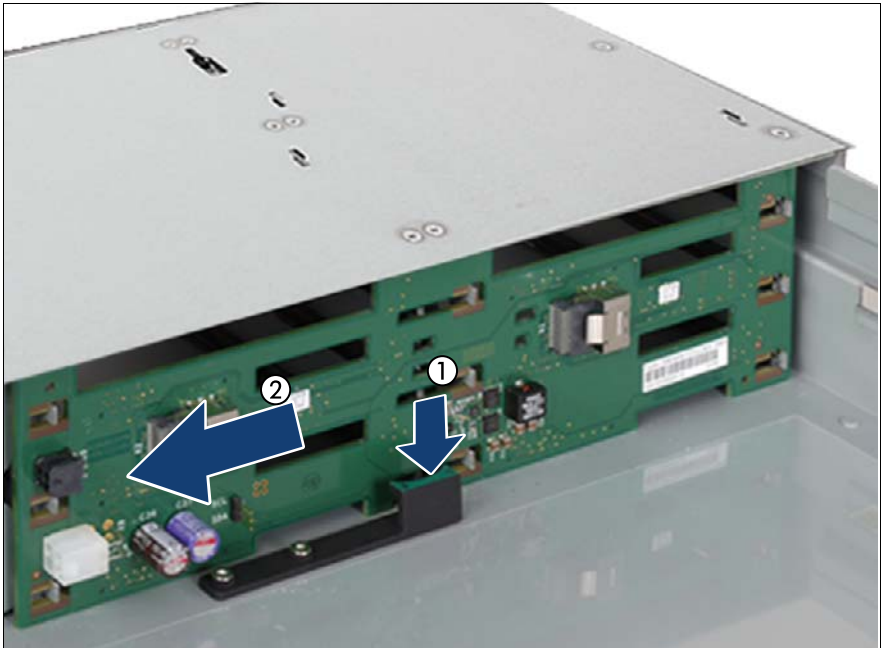


Figure 51: Removing the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane (A)

- ▶ Unlock the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane (1) and push the SAS / SATA backplane in the direction of the arrow (2) until it unlocks out of the locking noses and the locking mechanism on the bottom of the server.
- ▶ Remove the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane.

### 7.4.1.3 Installing the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane

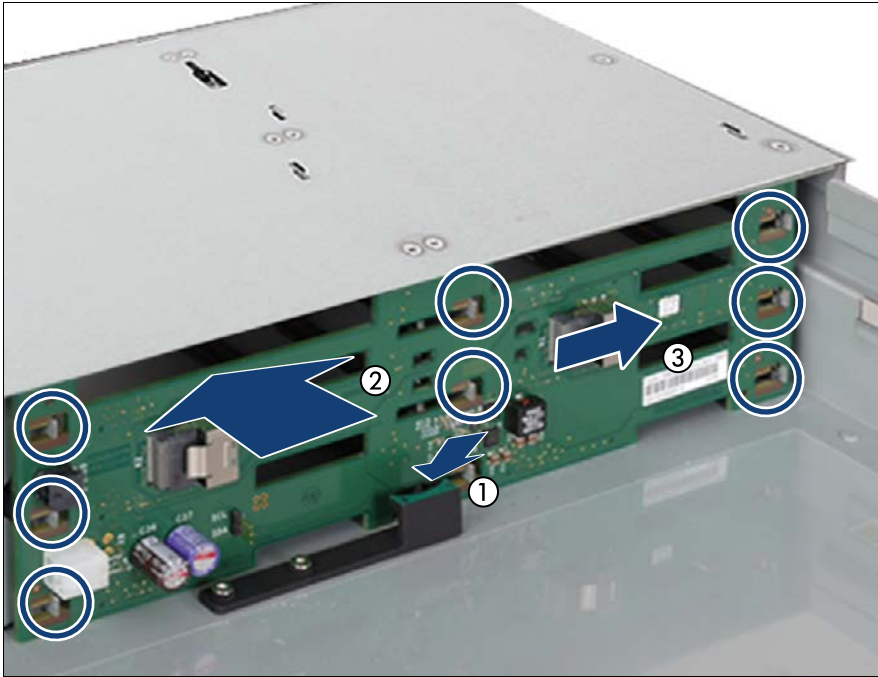


Figure 52: Installing the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane (A)

- ▶ At a slight angle insert the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane into the guide (1).
- ▶ Fit the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane on the eight hooks (circles) (2).
- ▶ Push the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane in the direction of the arrow (3).



Ensure that the eight hooks project through the recesses in the backplane.

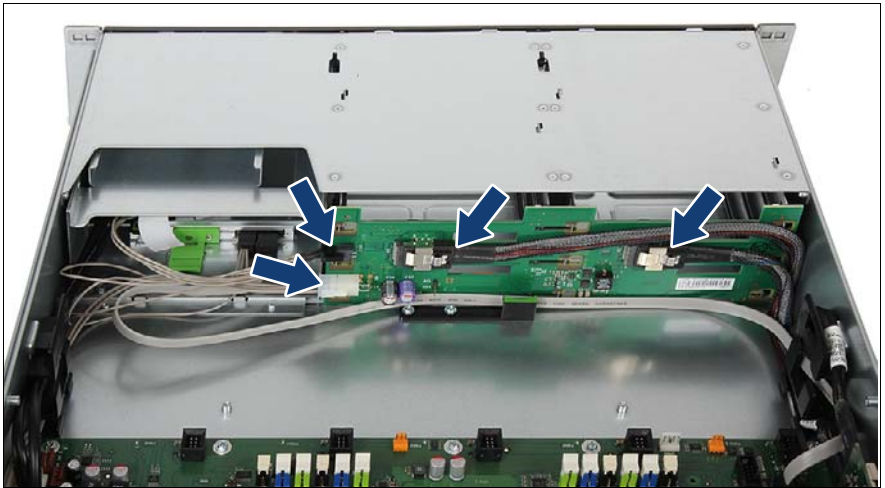


Figure 53: Installing the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane (B)

- ▶ Reconnect all cables to the 3.5-inch HDD SAS / SATA backplane:
  - Power cable (C5) to connector X10
  - Power cable (C3) to connector X9
  - SAS cable (C8) to connector X1
  - SAS cable (C9) to connector X2



For a complete cabling overview, please refer to section ["List of used cables"](#) on page 481.

### 7.4.1.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ Reinstall all HDD / SSD modules to their original drive bays as described in section ["Installing 3.5-inch HDD modules" on page 126](#).
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 7.4.2 Replacing the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 7.4.2.1 Basic information



For the 4x2.5-inch HDD SAS backplanes are two versions available: a SAS 2.0 backplane and a SAS 3.0 backplane. The removing and installing procedures of the backplanes are the same, but there are different connectors and cables.

### 7.4.2.2 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ Remove all HDD / SSD modules from the server as described in section ["Removing 2.5-inch HDD / SSD modules" on page 140](#).



**CAUTION!**

Ensure that all hard disk drives are uniquely identified so that you can reinsert them into their original bays after replacing the HDD backplane.

- ▶ "Getting access to the component" on page 57
- ▶ "Removing the front cover" on page 455
- ▶ "Removing the fan box" on page 164

**7.4.2.3 Removing the HDD cage**

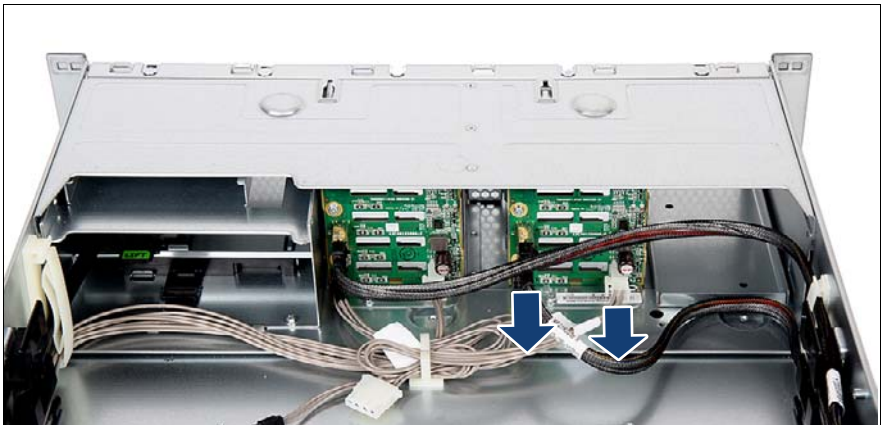


Figure 54: Disconnecting cables from the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane

- ▶ Disconnect all cables from the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane:
  - SAS / SATA cable
  - Power cable

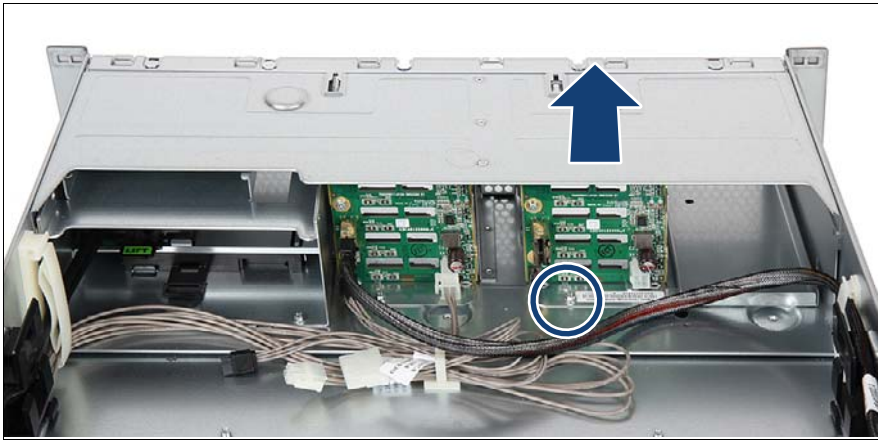


Figure 55: Removing the HDD cage

- ▶ Remove the screws of the HDD cage.
- ▶ Slide the HDD cage frontward out.

#### 7.4.2.4 Removing the 4x 2.5-inch SAS HDD backplane



Figure 56: Removing the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane

- ▶ Remove the screw (1).
- ▶ Remove the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane (2).

#### 7.4.2.5 Installing the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane

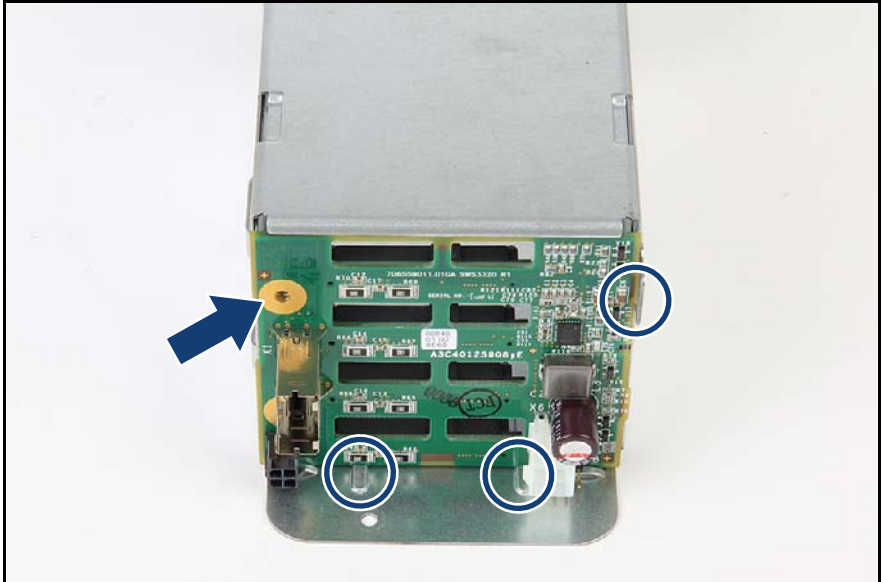


Figure 57: Installing the 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane

- ▶ Insert the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane in that way that it is in the guiding recesses (see circles).
- ▶ Fasten the 4x2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane with the screw (see arrow).

7.4.2.6 Installing the HDD cage

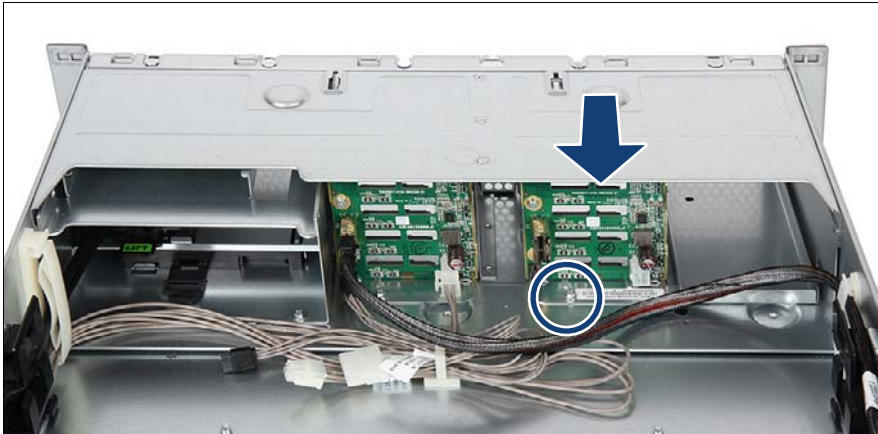


Figure 58: Installing the 2.5-inch HDD cage

- ▶ Secure the 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane on the drive cage with the screws.

4x 2.5-inch SAS 2.0 backplane



Figure 59: Reconnecting cables to the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS 2.0 backplane

- ▶ Reconnect all cables to the 2.5-inch HDD SAS 2.0 backplane:
  - Power cable to SAS backplane connector X6

- If applicable power cable to SAS backplane connector X9
- SAS cable to backplane connectors X1

**i** For a complete cabling overview, please refer to section ["List of used cables" on page 481](#).

### 4x2.5-inch SAS 3.0 backplane



Figure 60: Reconnecting cables to the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS 3.0 backplane

- ▶ Reconnect all cables to the 2.5-inch HDD SAS 3.0 backplane:
  - Power cable to SAS backplane connector X10
  - If applicable power cable to SAS backplane connector X14
  - If applicable OBB to SAS backplane connector X11
  - SAS cable to backplane connectors X5

**i** For a complete cabling overview, please refer to section ["List of used cables" on page 481](#).

#### 7.4.2.7 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the front cover" on page 459](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Installing 2.5-inch HDD / SSD modules" on page 137](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)

- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

### 7.4.3 Replacing the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

#### 7.4.3.1 Preliminary steps



The 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane is mounted on the drive cages. It is not necessary to remove the drive cage before replacing the SAS / SATA backplane

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ Remove all HDD / SSD modules from the server as described in section ["Removing 2.5-inch HDD / SSD modules" on page 140](#).



#### **CAUTION!**

Ensure that all hard disk drives are uniquely identified so that you can reinsert them into their original bays after replacing the HDD backplane.

- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 7.4.3.2 Removing the 12x2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane



Figure 61: Disconnecting cables from the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane

- ▶ Disconnect all cables from the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane:
  - SAS cables
  - Power cables

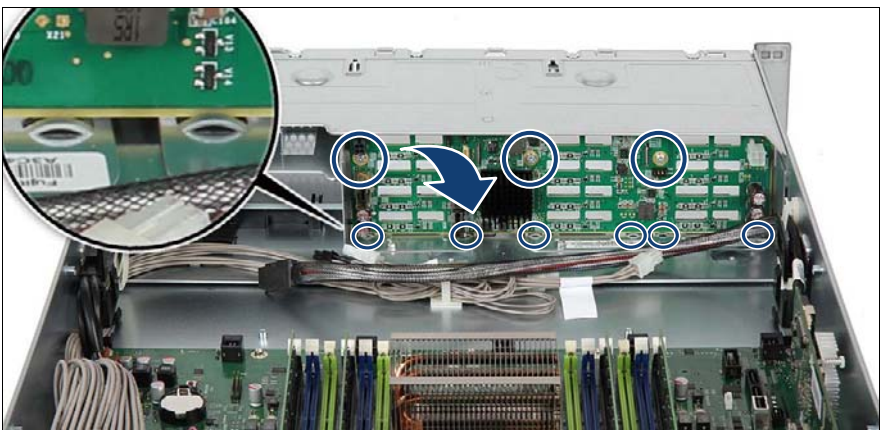


Figure 62: Removing the 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane (A)

## Hard disk drives / solid state drives

---

- ▶ Remove the three screws of the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane (see circles).
- ▶ Tilt out the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane as shown.
- ▶ At a slight angle, unHINGE the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane from the guides on the drive cage and remove it.

### 7.4.3.3 Installing the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane

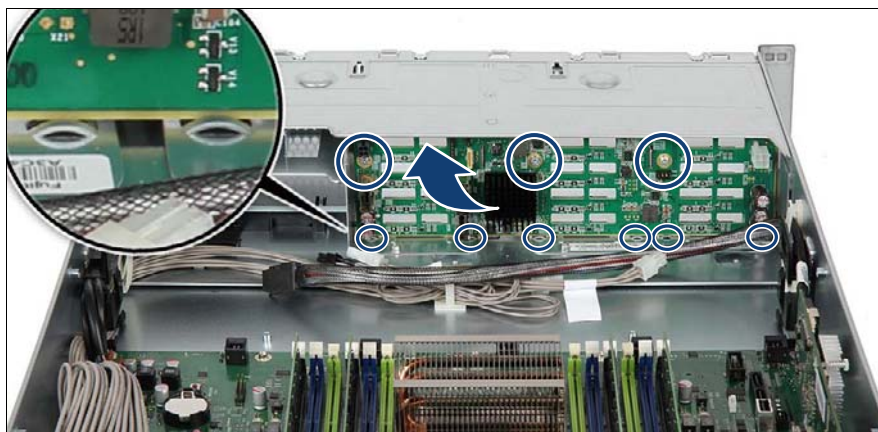


Figure 63: Installing the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane (A)

- ▶ At a slight angle, fit the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane into the guides on the bottom of the chassis.
- ▶ Fold in the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane.
- ▶ Secure the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane with the three screws .

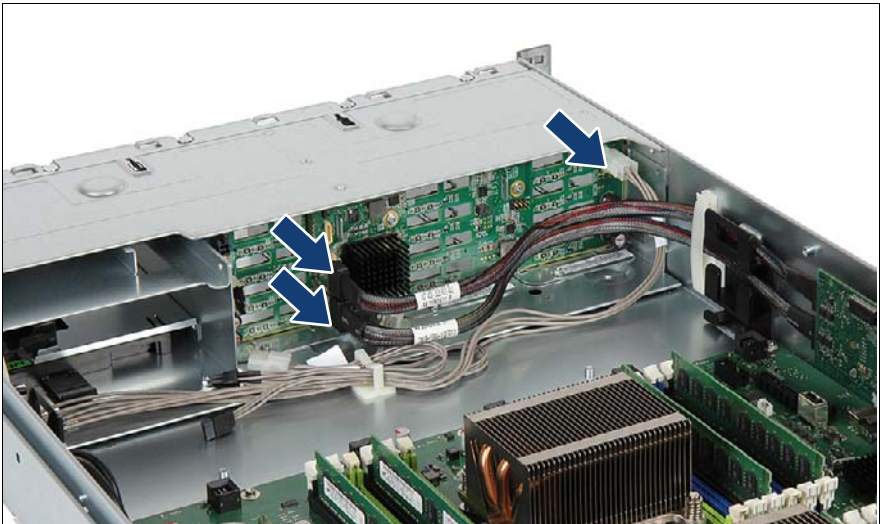


Figure 64: connecting cables to the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane

- ▶ Reconnect all cables to the 12x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane:
  - Power cable (C4) connected to SAS backplane connector X15
  - Power cable (C5) connected to SAS backplane connector X17
  - SAS cable (C9) connected to SAS controller connector MLC1 to primary backplane connectors X1
  - SAS cable (C9) connected to SAS controller connector MLC2 to secondary backplane connectors X2

**i** For a complete cabling overview, please refer to section "[List of used cables](#)" on page 481.

### 7.4.3.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Installing 2.5-inch HDD / SSD modules" on page 137](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

---

## 8 System fan

### Safety notes



#### CAUTION!

- Do not damage or modify internal cables or devices. Doing so may cause a device failure, fire, or electric shock.
- Devices and components inside the server remain hot after shutdown. After shutting down the server, wait for hot components to cool down before installing or removing internal options.
- Circuit boards and soldered parts of internal options are exposed and can be damaged by static electricity. Always discharge static build-up (e.g. by touching a grounded object) before handling electrostatic-sensitive devices (ESDs).
- Do not touch the circuitry on boards or soldered parts. Hold circuit boards by their metallic areas or edges.
- If devices are installed or disassembled using methods other than those outlined in this chapter, the warranty will be invalidated.
- For further information, please refer to chapter "[Important information](#)" on page 39

### 8.1 Basic information

The following fans are available:

- five system fans included in a system fan box
- up to two fans, that are integral parts of the power supply units and cannot be replaced separately



The fan configuration is redundant. One fan may be faulty. Replace the fan as soon as possible. During the server is switched on, only one fan may be removed.

# 8.2 Replacing the system fan



Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)



Hardware: 5 minutes

Tools: tool-less

## 8.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective component" on page 53](#)

## 8.2.2 Removing a system fan



Please notice the advices for redundancy!

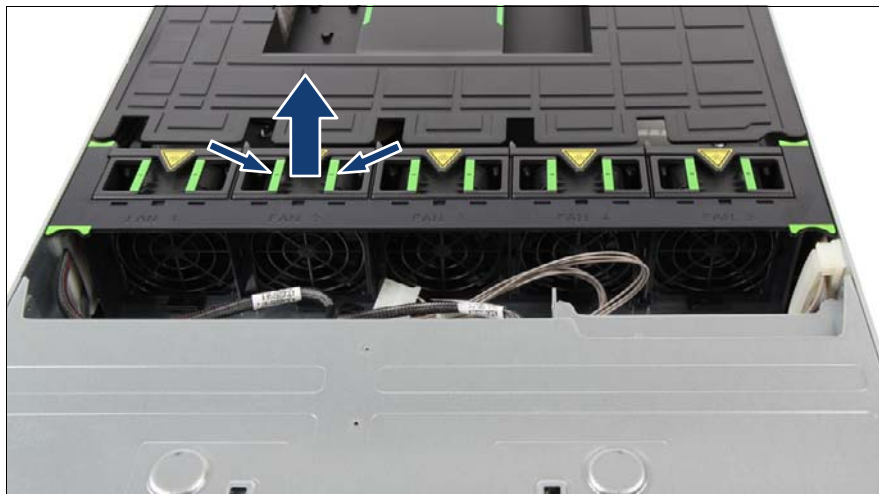


Figure 65: Removing a system fan

- ▶ Take the system fan by the green touch points.
- ▶ Lift the system fan out of the fan box.

## 8.2.3 Installing a system fan

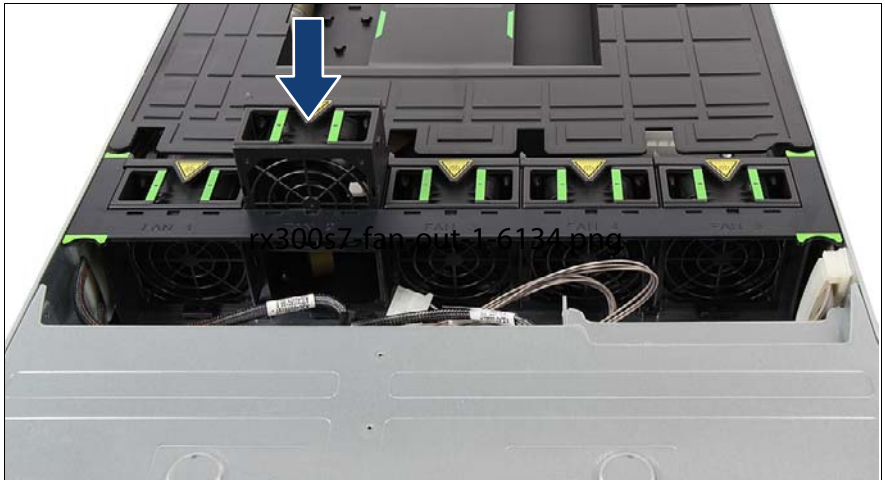


Figure 66: Installing a system fan module

- ▶ Insert the system fan as shown.
- ▶ Press down on the system fan until it locks.

## 8.2.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)



When a system fan module fails, the remaining fans will start operating at full speed. After the defective fan module has been replaced, all fans will continue to run at full speed for a couple of minutes, before resetting to a lower speed.

Ensure that all system fans reset to a normal operating speed.

- ▶ ["Performing a fan test after replacing a defective fan" on page 100](#)

### 8.3 Removing the fan box



Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)



Hardware: 5 minutes

Tools: screw driver

#### 8.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

#### 8.3.2 Removing the fan box

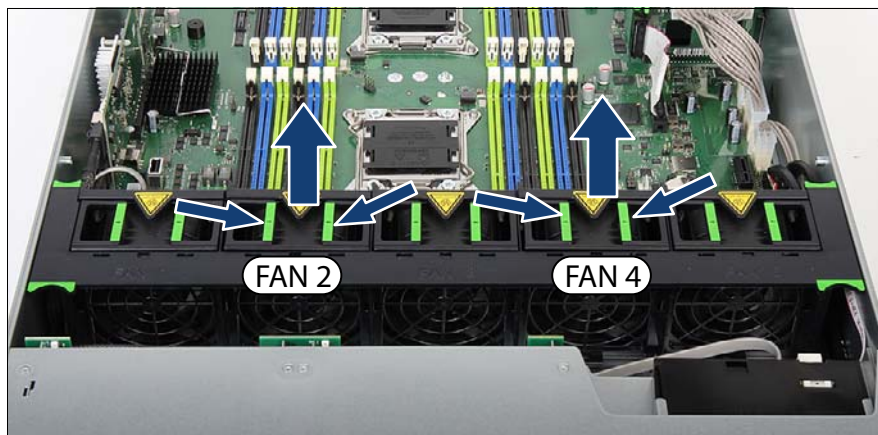


Figure 67: Removing a fan module

- ▶ Take the two system fans by the green touch points and lift the system fans out of the fan box.



Figure 68: Removing the fan box

- ▶ Remove the two screws.

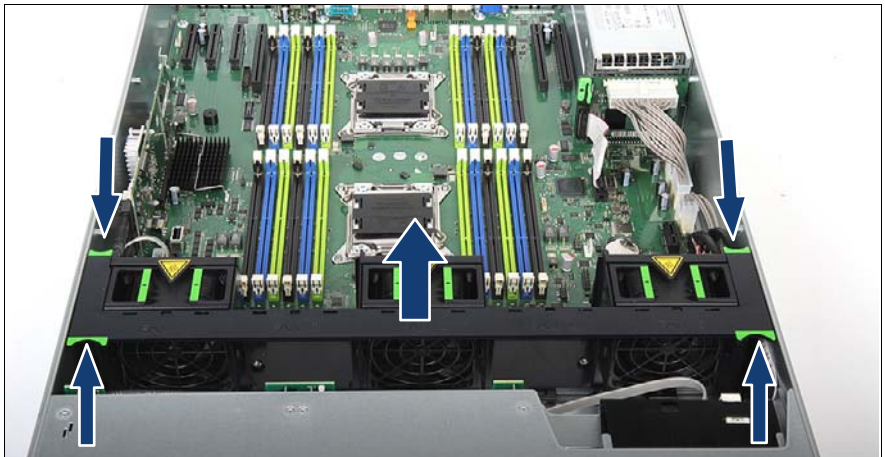


Figure 69: Removing the fan box

- ▶ Take the fan box by the green touch points and lift the fan box out of the chassis.

### 8.3.3 Installing the fan box

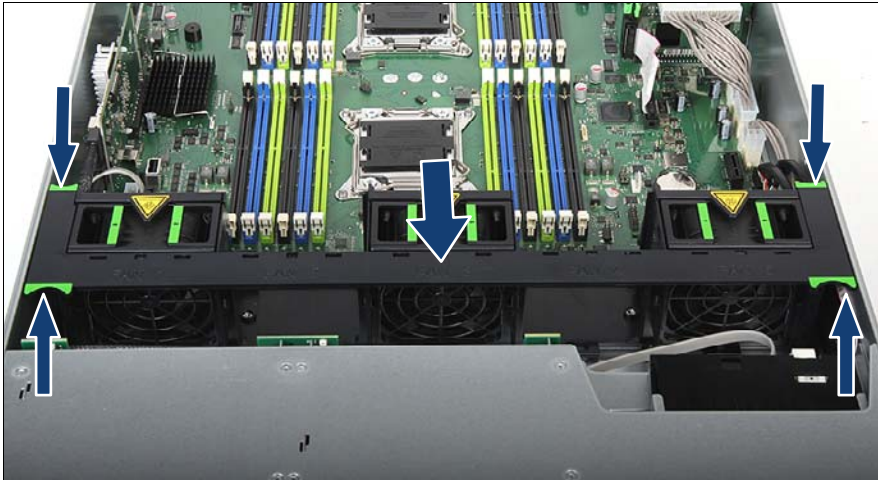


Figure 70: Installing the fan box

- ▶ Take the fan box by the green touch points and insert the fan box.



Figure 71: Installing the fan box

- ▶ Fasten the fan box with the 2 screws.

- ▶ Install the two fan modules see section ["Installing a system fan"](#) on [page 163](#).

### **8.3.4 Concluding steps**

- ▶ ["Reassembling"](#) on [page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source"](#) on [page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server"](#) on [page 71](#)



---

# 9 Expansion cards and backup units

## Safety notes



### CAUTION!

- Do not damage or modify internal cables or devices. Doing so may cause a device failure, fire, or electric shock.
- Devices and components inside the server remain hot after shutdown. After shutting down the server, wait for hot components to cool down before installing or removing internal options.
- Circuit boards and soldered parts of internal options are exposed and can be damaged by static electricity. Always discharge static build-up (e.g. by touching a grounded object) before handling electrostatic-sensitive devices (ESDs).
- Do not touch the circuitry on boards or soldered parts. Hold circuit boards by their metallic areas or edges.
- If devices are installed or disassembled using methods other than those outlined in this chapter, the warranty will be invalidated.
- For further information, please refer to chapter "[Important information](#)" on page 39.

## 9.1 Basic information

The system board is equipped with seven expansion slots:

## Expansion cards and backup units

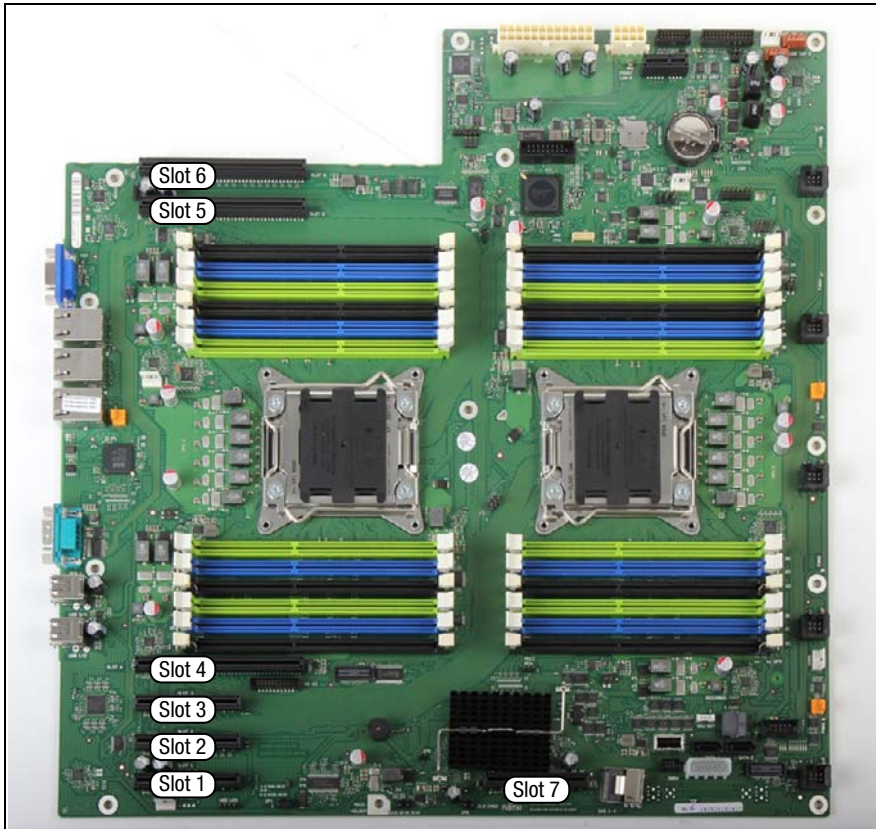


Figure 72: PCI slot overview

PCI slot	Type	Mechanical connector	Electrical interface	Function
1	PCIe Gen 3	x8	x8	preferred slot for Modular LAN controller (with NCSI connector) CPU1
2	PCIe Gen 3	x8	x8	CPU1
3	PCIe Gen 3	x8	x8	CPU1
4	PCIe Gen 3	x16	x8	CPU1
5	PCIe Gen 3	x16	x16	only available with CPU2
6	PCIe Gen 3	x16	x16	only available with CPU2
7	PCIe Gen 3	x8	x8	slot for SAS RAID controller

Expansion card overview and installations sequence

Vendor/Type	Bus	Max#	Slot 1	Slot2	Slot3	Slot4	Slot5	Slot6	Slot7
Misc									
Nvidia NVS300	x1 PCI2.0	1				1			
PCIe USB									
USB 3.0	x1 PCI1.0	1		1					
SAS/RAID									
D2616 RAID Ctrl SAS 6G 5/6 512 MB	x8 PCI2.0	1							1
D3116C RAID Ctrl SAS 6G1GB	x8 PCI3.0	1							1
D2607 RAID Ctrl SAS 6G 0/1	x8 PCI2.0	1							1
9286CV RAID Ctrl SAS 6G 8 ex 1GB LSI V3	x8 PCI3.0	4		4	1	5	3	2	
9286CV RAID Ctrl SAS 6G 8 ex 1GB LSI V3 <sup>1</sup>	x8 PCI3.0	4		4	1	2	3	5	
Modular LAN									
D2755 Dual Port SFP+	x8 PCI2.0	1	1						
D3045 Quad Port	x4 PCI2.0	1	1						
D2745	x4 PCI2.0	1	1						
D3035 Dual Port	x4 PCI2.0	1	1						
D2735	x4 PCI2.0	1	1						
PCIe-SSD (FusionIO)									
365 GB MLC	x8 PCI2.0	2	4	1	3	2			
785 GB MLC	x8 PCI2.0	2	4	1	3	2			

## Expansion cards and backup units

Vendor/Type	Bus	Max#	Slot 1	Slot2	Slot3	Slot4	Slot5	Slot6	Slot7
1.2 TB MLC	x8 PCI2.0	2	4	1	3	2			

Infiniband									
IB HCA 40 Gbit 1 port QDR enhanced	x8 PCI3.0	2	6	5	2	4	3	1	
IB HCA 40 Gbit 2 port QDR enhanced	x8 PCI3.0	2	6	5	2	4	3	1	
IB HCA 56 Gbit 1 port FDR	x8 PCI3.0	2	6	5	2	4	3	1	
IB HCA 56 Gbit 2 port FDR	x8 PCI3.0	2	6	5	2	4	3	1	
PIB EP QLE7340e	x8 PCI2.0	2	6	5	2	4	3	1	
PIB EP QLE7342e	x8 PCI2.0	2	6	5	2	4	3	1	
SAS (Backup)									
LSI SAS 9200-8e	x8 PCI2.0	3	4	2	3	1	6	5	
FC									
LPe 16000 16Gbit	x8 PCI3.0	4	6	5	1	4	3	2	
LPe 16002 16Gbit	x8 PCI3.0	4	6	5	1	4	3	2	
LPe 1250 8Gbit	x4 PCI2.0	4	6	5	1	4	3	2	
LPe 12002 8Gbit	x4 PCI2.0	4	6	5	1	4	3	2	
QLE2560 8Gbit	x4 PCI2.0	4	6	5	1	4	3	2	
QLE2562 8Gbit	x4 PCI2.0	4	6	5	1	4	3	2	
FC over Ethernet									
OCe10102	x8 PCI2.0	2	6	5	1	4	3	2	
Ethernet									

## Expansion cards and backup units

Vendor/Type	Bus	Max#	Slot 1	Slot2	Slot3	Slot4	Slot5	Slot6	Slot7
D2755 Dual Port 10GE SFP	x8 PCI2.0	2	1	6	5	4	3	2	
Dual Port 10GE X5640-T2	x8 PCI2.0	2	1	6	5	4	3	2	
D3045 Quad Port	x4 PCI2.0	4	1	6	5	4	3	2	
D2745 Quad Port	x4 PCI2.0	4	1	6	5	4	3	2	
D3035 Dual Port	x4 PCI2.0	4	1	6	5	4	3	2	
D2735 Dual Port	x4 PCI2.0	4	1	6	5	4	3	2	
PRO/1000 PF Dual	x4 PCI1.0	4	1	6	5	4	3	2	
Gigabit CT DT Cu	x1 PCI1.0	4	1	6	5	4	3	2	

<sup>1</sup> If two 9286CV RAID controllers are installed in the system with one FBU module each, the following slot number priority applies: 4-1-2-3-5.

Slot7: 1<sup>st</sup> Boot Slot Option ROM SCAN enabled = default

Slot3: 2<sup>nd</sup> Boot Slot Option ROM SCAN enabled = default

Slot1 Mod.LAN: Slot1 dedicated Modular LAN slot

Slot5/6: CPU 2 must be installed to use slot5 or 6



The list may be changed due to new controllers.

For the latest information on supported expansion cards, refer your server's hardware configurator available online at the following address:  
for the EMEA market:

[http://ts.fujitsu.com/products/standard\\_servers/index.htm](http://ts.fujitsu.com/products/standard_servers/index.htm)

for the Japanese market:

<http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/system/>

## 9.2 Handling slot brackets



Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)



Hardware: 5 minutes

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 9.2.1 Installing a slot bracket

#### 9.2.1.1 Installing a standard slot bracket



Figure 73: Installing a standard slot bracket (A)

- ▶ Place the controller on the mounting tabs on the slot bracket.
- ▶ Carefully shift the slot bracket towards the controller until the plug shells engage with the cut-outs in the slot bracket connector panel.

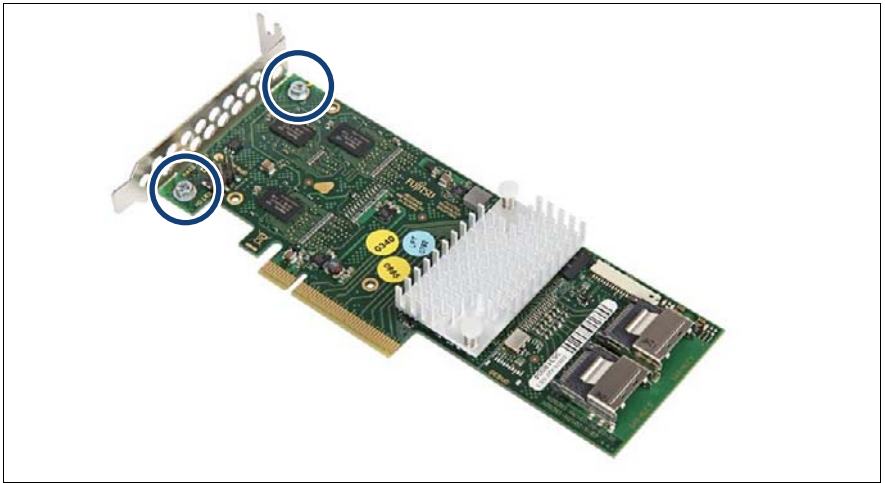


Figure 74: Installing a standard slot bracket (B)

- ▶ Secure the slot bracket to the controller with two M3 x 4.5 mm screws.

### 9.2.1.2 Installing a slot bracket to the Network adapter D2735

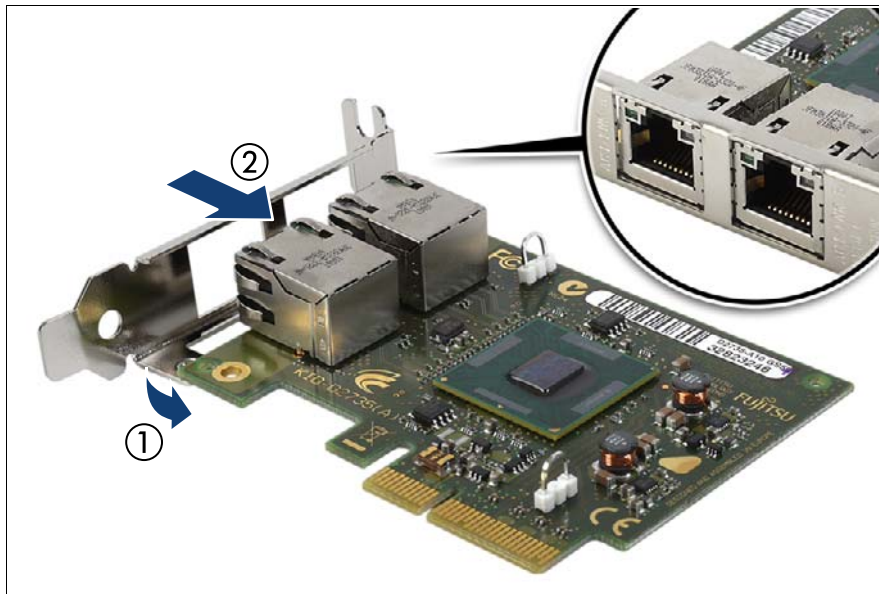


Figure 75: Network adapter D2735 - Mounting the slot bracket (A)

- ▶ Place the controller on the mounting tabs on the slot bracket (1).
- ▶ Carefully shift the slot bracket towards the controller (2) until the plug shells engage with the cut-outs in the slot bracket connector panel (see close-up).

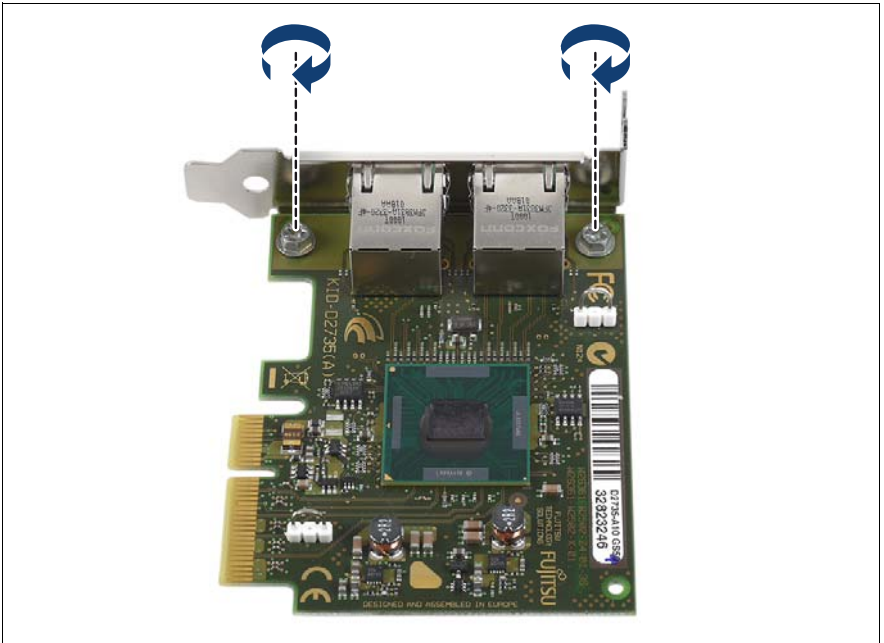


Figure 76: Network adapter D2735 - Mounting the slot bracket (B)

- Secure the slot bracket to the controller with two M3 x 4.5 mm screws.



Figure 77: Network adapter D2735 - Mounting the slot bracket (C)

9.2.1.3 Installing a slot bracket to the Network adapter D2745

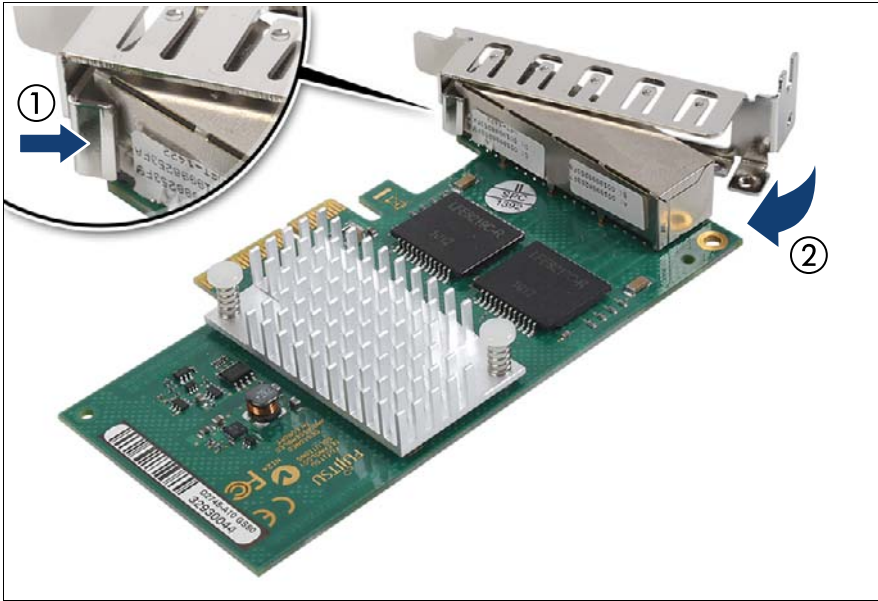


Figure 78: Network adapter D2745 - Mounting the slot bracket (A)

- ▶ Hinge the slot bracket to the plug shell as shown (1).
- ▶ Fold the slot bracket towards the controller until the threaded mounting tab is aligned with the screw hole on the controller (2).

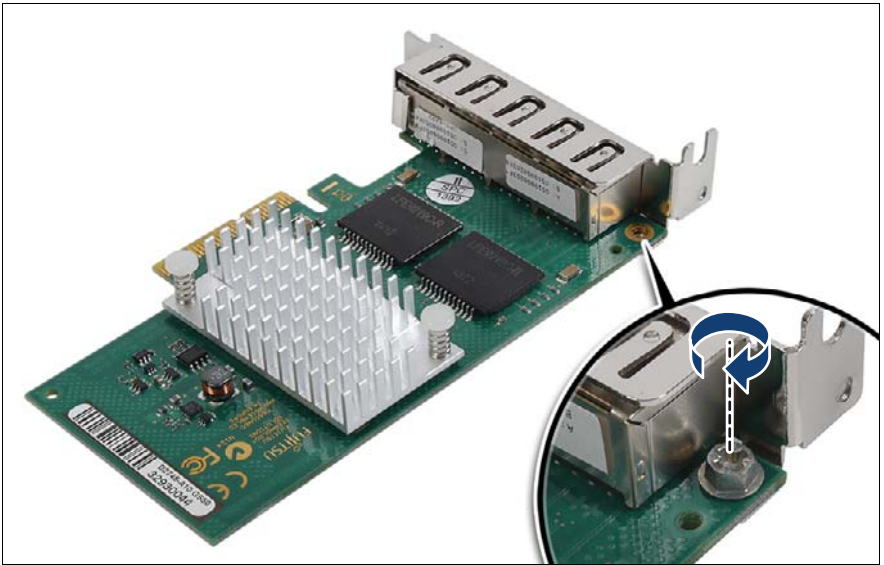


Figure 79: Network adapter D2745 - Mounting the slot bracket (B)

- ▶ Secure the slot bracket to the controller with one M3 x 4.5 mm screw.



Figure 80: Network adapter D2745 - Mounting the slot bracket (C)



Assembled network adapter D2745

### 9.2.1.4 Installing a slot bracket to the Network adapter D2755

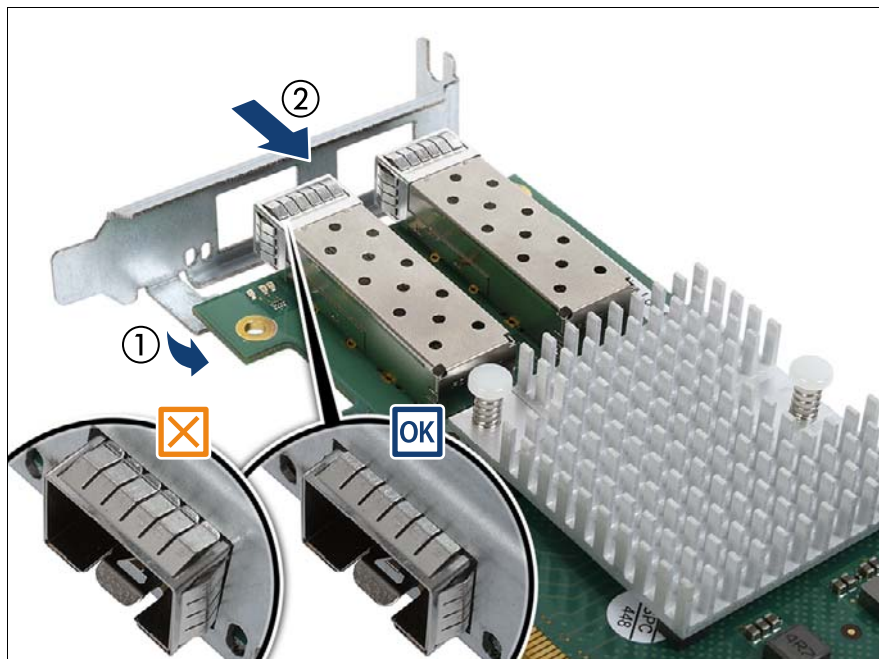


Figure 81: Network adapter D2755 - Mounting the slot bracket (A)

- ▶ Place the controller on the mounting tabs on the slot bracket (1).
- ▶ Carefully shift the slot bracket towards the controller until the plug shells engage with the cut-outs in the slot bracket connector panel (2).
- ▶ Ensure that the ESD springs on the plug shells properly engage with the slot bracket as shown (see close-ups).

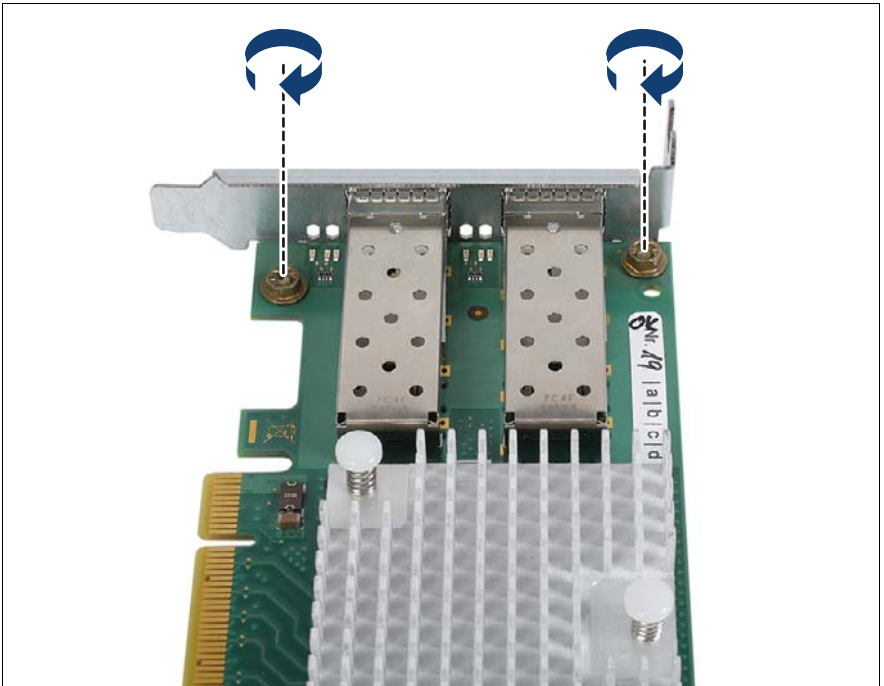


Figure 82: Network adapter D2755 - Mounting the slot bracket (B)

- Secure the slot bracket to the controller with two M3 x 4.5 mm screws.

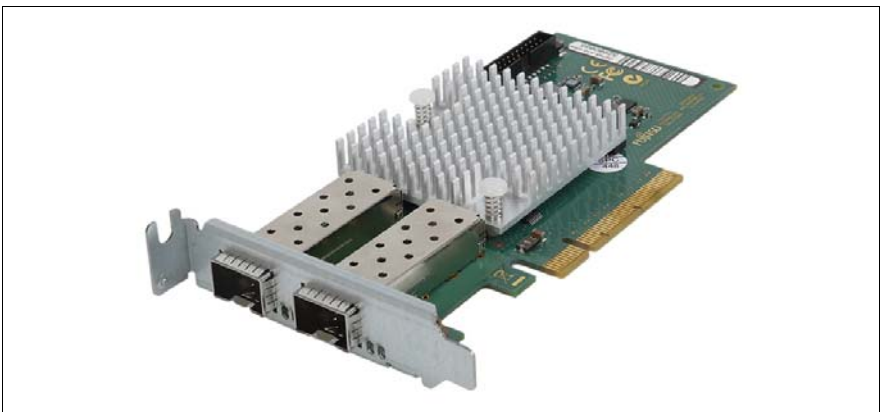


Figure 83: Network adapter D2755 - Mounting the slot bracket (C)



Assembled network adapter D2755

### 9.2.1.5 Installing a slot bracket to the USB 3.0 interface card D3305



#### CAUTION!

The USB 3.0 interface card D3305 comes pre-assembled with a full height slot bracket. When replacing the slot bracket, ensure to use the original M3 x 5 mm screws. Standard M3 screws may damage onboard components.

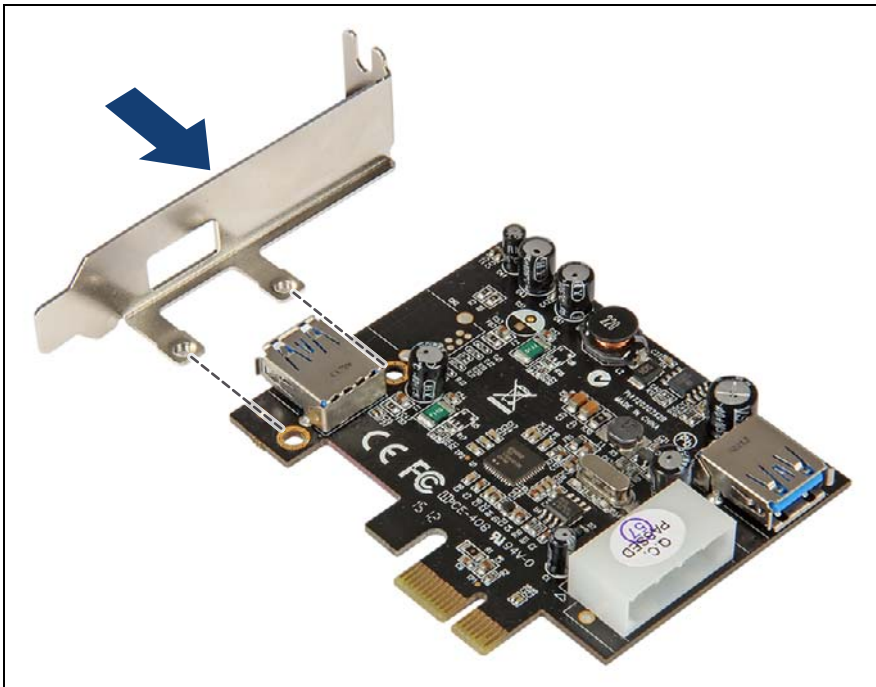


Figure 84: Mounting the slot bracket (A)

- ▶ Place the controller on the mounting tabs on the slot bracket.
- ▶ Carefully shift the slot bracket towards the controller until the plug shells engage with the cut-outs in the slot bracket connector panel.

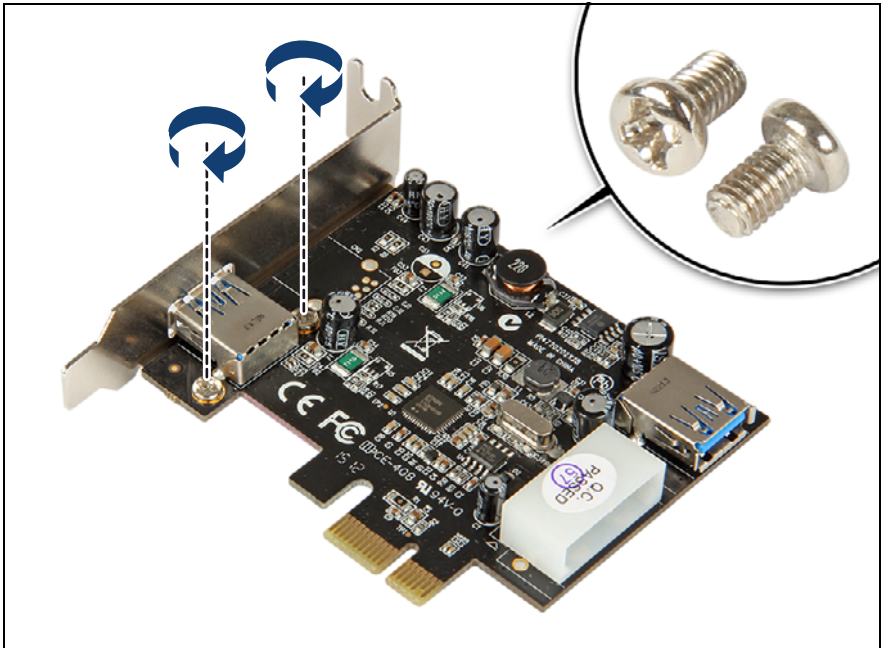


Figure 85: Mounting the PCI slot bracket (B)

- ▶ Secure the slot bracket to the controller with the two M3 x 5 mm screws contained in the expansion card kit.

## 9.2.2 Removing a slot bracket



**Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### Removing the slot bracket

- ▶ Remove the two screws.
- ▶ Remove the controller from the mounting tabs on the slot bracket.

## 9.3 Expansion cards

### 9.3.1 Installing expansion cards



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**  
**Software: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

#### 9.3.1.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

#### 9.3.1.2 Removing the slot bracket

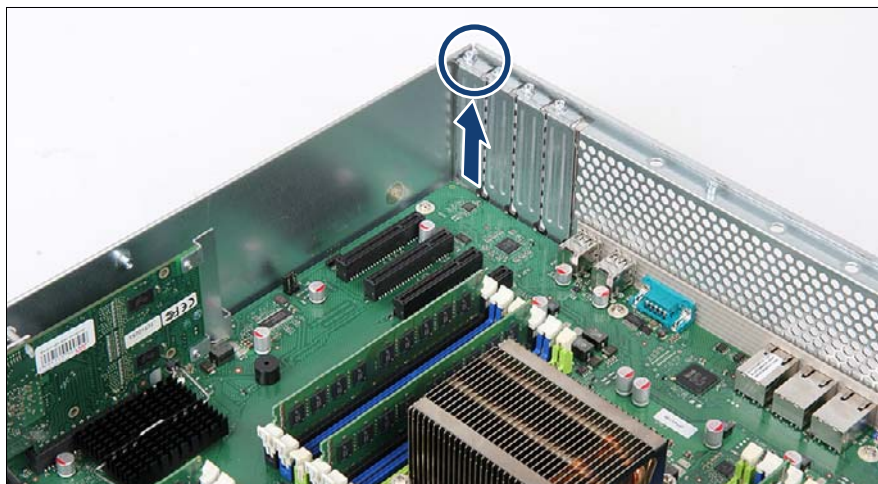


Figure 86: Removing the slot bracket (B)

- ▶ Remove the screw.
- ▶ Remove the slot bracket.



### CAUTION!

Keep the slot bracket for further use.

Always replace slot brackets into unused PCI slot openings to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements.

### 9.3.1.3 Installing an expansion card

- ▶ Remove the expansion card from its protective packaging.



For further instructions regarding controller settings, please refer to the accompanying documentation.

- ▶ If applicable, attach the required slot bracket to the expansion card as described in section ["Installing a slot bracket" on page 174](#).

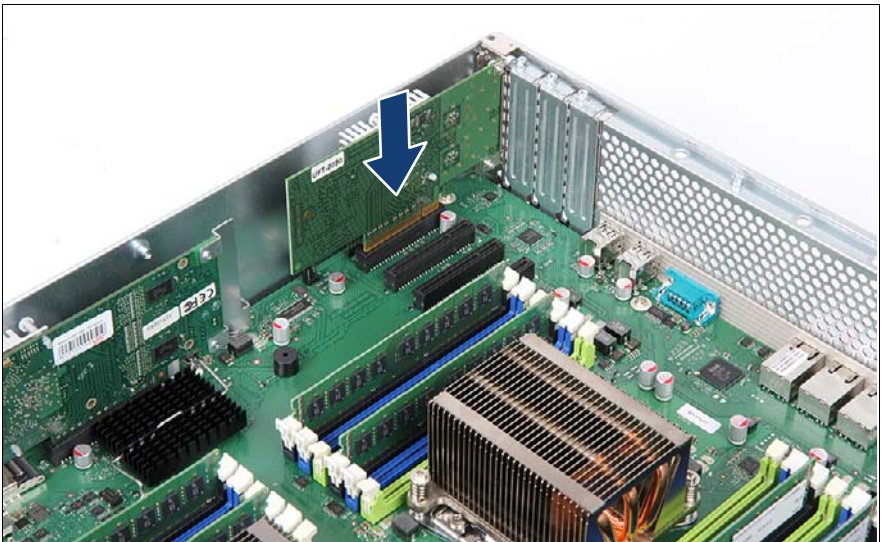


Figure 87: Installing the expansion card (A)

- ▶ Carefully insert the expansion card into the desired PCI slot and press down firmly until it is fully seated in the slot.

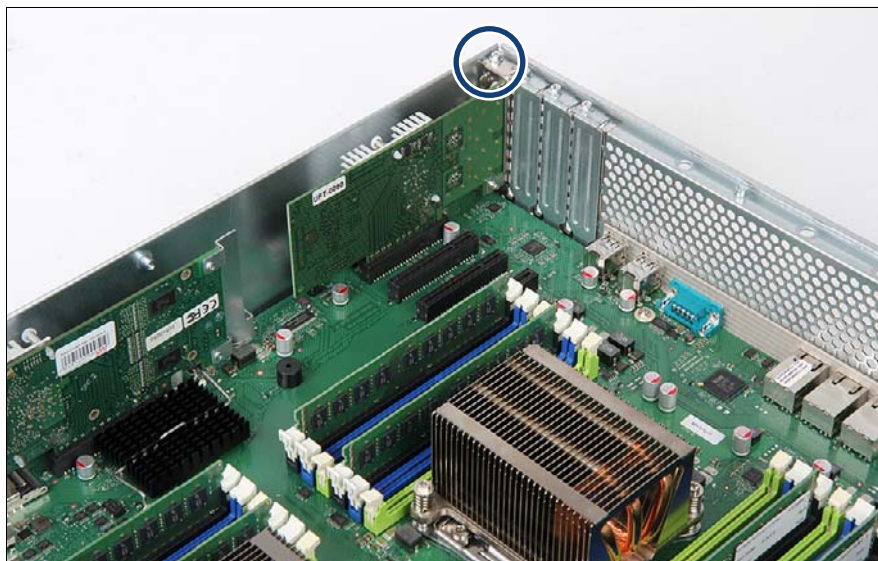


Figure 88: Installing the expansion card (B)

- ▶ Fasten the expansion card with the screw.
- ▶ If applicable, install SFP+ transceiver modules into the new expansion card, as described in section ["Installing SFP+ transceiver modules" on page 241](#).
- ▶ If applicable, connect internal cables to the expansion card.



For a complete cabling overview, please refer to section ["List of used cables" on page 481](#).

- ▶ If applicable, connect a BBU to the expansion card as described in section ["Installing a BBU" on page 212](#).

### 9.3.1.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ Reconnect all external cables to the expansion card.
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Updating RAID controller firmware" on page 84](#)
- ▶ If applicable, ["Enabling Option ROM scan" on page 85](#).

- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

### 9.3.2 Removing expansion cards



**Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

<b>Tools:</b> Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver
---

#### 9.3.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ Remove all external cables from the expansion card to be removed.
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

#### 9.3.2.2 Removing an expansion card

- ▶ If applicable, disconnect internal cables from the expansion card.

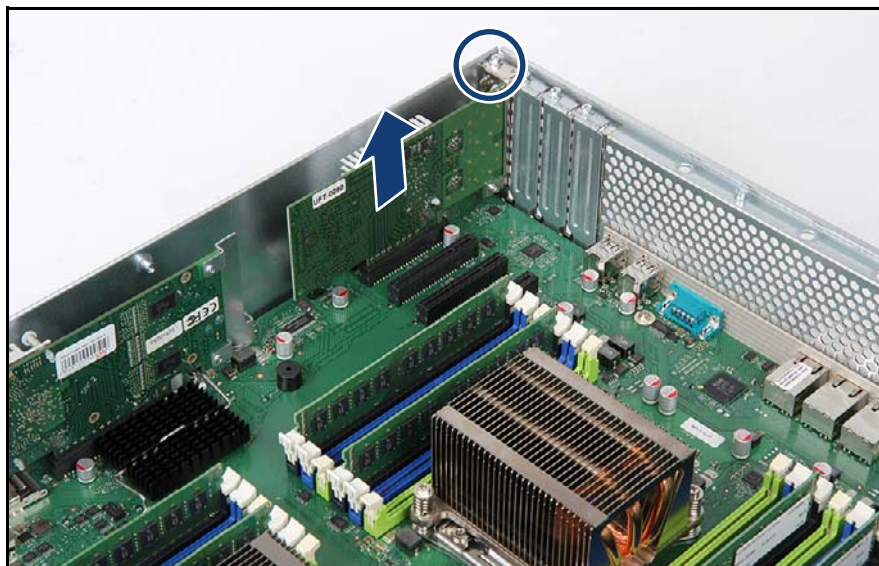


Figure 89: Removing an expansion card (A)

- ▶ If applicable, ["Removing an SFP+ transceiver module" on page 246.](#)
- ▶ Remove the screw.
- ▶ Carefully remove the expansion card from its slot.

### 9.3.2.3 Installing a PCI slot bracket



#### CAUTION!

Always replace slot brackets into unused PCI slot openings to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements.

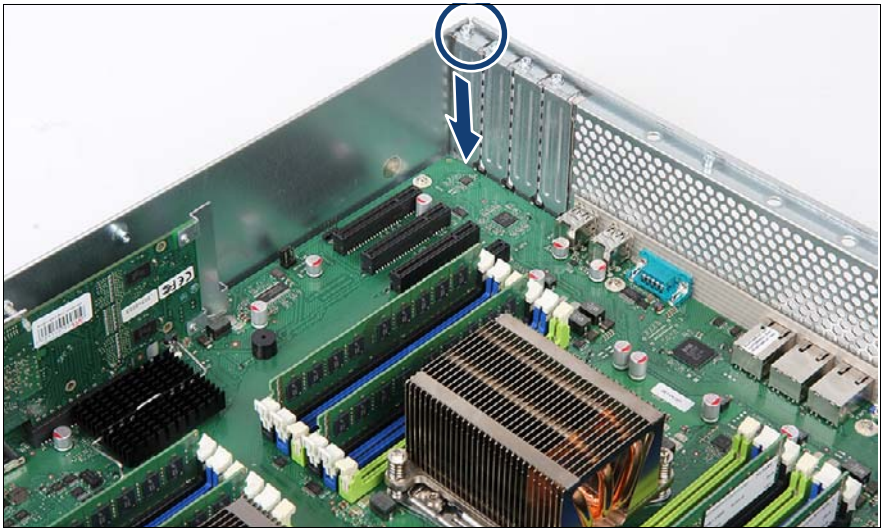


Figure 90: Installing a slot bracket (A)

- ▶ Insert a slot bracket into the unused PCI slot opening.
- ▶ Fasten slot bracket with the screw.

### 9.3.2.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Mounting the housing cover" on page 65](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

### 9.3.3 Replacing expansion cards



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**  
**Software: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

#### Note on network settings recovery



When replacing network controllers or the system board, network configuration settings in the operating system will be lost and replaced by default values. This applies to all static IP address and LAN teaming configurations.

Ensure to note down your current network settings before replacing a controller or the system board.

#### 9.3.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ If applicable, ["Note on network settings recovery"](#) on page 190.
- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality"](#) on page 73
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality"](#) on page 74
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server"](#) on page 51
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server"](#) on page 54
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords"](#) on page 54
- ▶ Remove all external cables from the expansion card to be replaced.
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component"](#) on page 57
- ▶ Locate the defective expansion card using the onboard Local Diagnostic LEDs as described in section ["Onboard indicators and controls"](#) on page 511.

#### 9.3.3.2 Removing an expansion card

- ▶ If applicable, ["Removing an SFP+ transceiver module"](#) on page 246.
- ▶ ["Removing expansion cards"](#) on page 187

- ▶ If the slot bracket on the defective expansion card is to be reused, remove it from the board as described in section ["Removing the slot bracket"](#) on page 184.

### 9.3.3.3 Installing an expansion card

- ▶ If applicable, ["Installing a slot bracket"](#) on page 174.
- ▶ ["Installing expansion cards"](#) on page 184.
- ▶ If applicable, ["Installing SFP+ transceiver modules"](#) on page 241.

### 9.3.3.4 Connecting cables to the expansion card

- ▶ If applicable, connect internal cables to the expansion card.



For a complete cabling overview, please refer to section ["List of used cables"](#) on page 481.

### 9.3.3.5 Connecting a battery backup unit to the expansion card

- ▶ If applicable, connect a BBU or FBU to the expansion card as described in sections ["Installing a BBU"](#) on page 212 or ["Installing a FBU"](#) on page 224.

### 9.3.3.6 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling"](#) on page 63
- ▶ Reconnect all external cables to the replaced expansion card.
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source"](#) on page 69
- ▶ ["Switching on the server"](#) on page 71
- ▶ ["Enabling replaced components in the system BIOS"](#) on page 89
- ▶ Inform the customer about changed WWN and MAC addresses. For further information, refer to section ["Looking up changed MAC / WWN addresses"](#) on page 96.
- ▶ ["Updating RAID controller firmware"](#) on page 84
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality"](#) on page 89
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality"](#) on page 95

### 9.4 SAS RAID controller in PCI slot 7

#### 9.4.1 Additional information on SAS 3.0 RAID controllers



This section only applies to 2.5-inch HDD configurations.

When installing SAS 3.0 RAID controller D3216 (PRAID EP400i / EP420i) to the system, please proceed as follows:

- ▶ Disconnect all SAS and power cables from SAS 2.0 HDD / SSD backplanes 1 and 2.
- ▶ Remove SAS 2.0 HDD / SSD backplanes 1 and 2 from the system and replace them by SAS 3.0 HDD / SSD backplanes A3C40157842 as described in section "[Replacing a 2.5-inch HDD / SSD module](#)" on page 143.



SAS 3.0 HDD / SSD backplanes are installed in the first 2.5-inch HDD drive cage.

- ▶ Connect SAS cables to the SAS 3.0 HDD / SSD backplanes and SAS RAID controller as described in section "[Cabling plans](#)" on page 485.
- ▶ If applicable, install the TFM and FBU as described in section "[Installing a FBU](#)" on page 224.

#### 9.4.2 Installing the SAS RAID controller



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**  
**Software: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

##### 9.4.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ "[Suspending BitLocker functionality](#)" on page 73
- ▶ "[Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality](#)" on page 74

- ▶ "Shutting down the server" on page 54
- ▶ "Disconnecting power cords" on page 54
- ▶ "Getting access to the component" on page 57

### 9.4.2.2 Preparing the SAS RAID controller

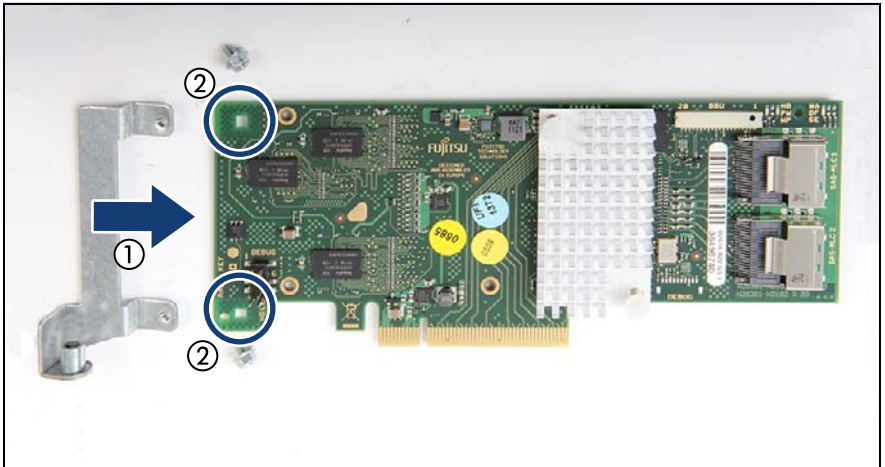


Figure 91: Installing the RAID card holder

- ▶ Place the controller on the mounting tabs on the slot bracket (1).
- ▶ Secure the slot bracket to the controller with two M3 x 4.5 mm screws (2).

### 9.4.2.3 Installing the SAS RAID controller

- ▶ Remove the SAS RAID controller from its protective packaging.



For further instructions regarding controller settings, please refer to the accompanying documentation.

- ▶ If applicable, attach the required slot bracket to the expansion card as described in section ["Preparing the SAS RAID controller" on page 193](#).

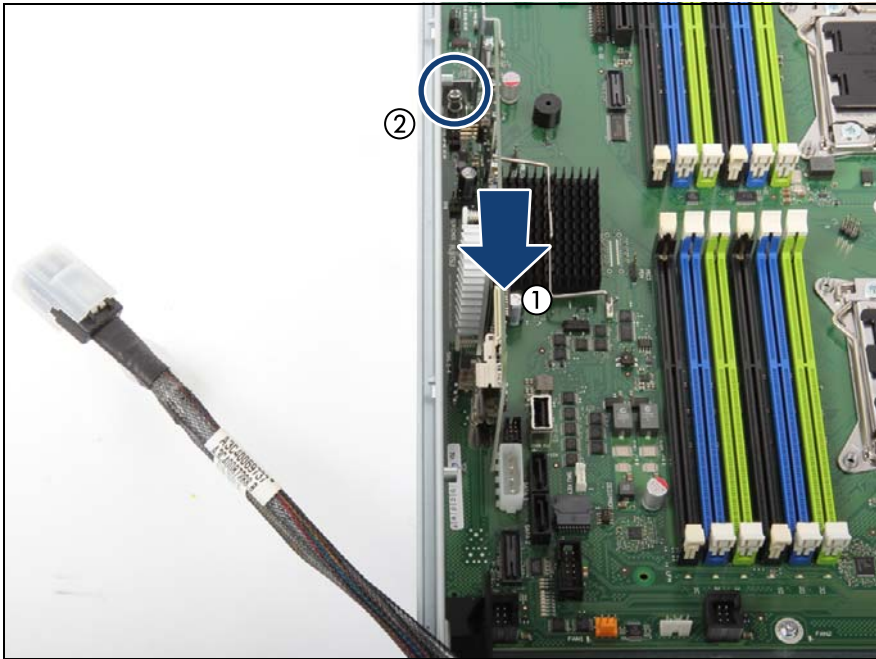


Figure 92: Installing the SAS RAID controller

- ▶ Carefully insert the RAID controller into PCI slot 7 and press down firmly until it is fully seated in the slot (1).

**i** For slot preferences, please refer to section ["Basic information" on page 169](#).

- ▶ Secure the RAID controller with the screw on the RAID card holder (2).

### 9.4.2.4 Connecting cables to the expansion card

- ▶ Connect SAS cables to the SAS RAID controller.

**i** For a complete cabling overview, please refer to section ["List of used cables" on page 481](#).

### 9.4.2.5 Connecting a backup unit to the expansion card

- ▶ If applicable, connect a BBU or FBU to the expansion card as described in sections ["Installing a BBU" on page 212](#) or ["Installing a FBU" on page 224](#).

### 9.4.2.6 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ In order to configure an expansion card that has been installed or replaced, the card's Option ROM has to be enabled in the system board BIOS. If applicable, proceed as described in section ["Enabling Option ROM scan" on page 85](#).
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)
- ▶ ["Updating RAID controller firmware" on page 84](#)

### 9.4.3 Removing the SAS RAID controller



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

#### 9.4.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

### 9.4.3.2 Removing the SAS RAID controller

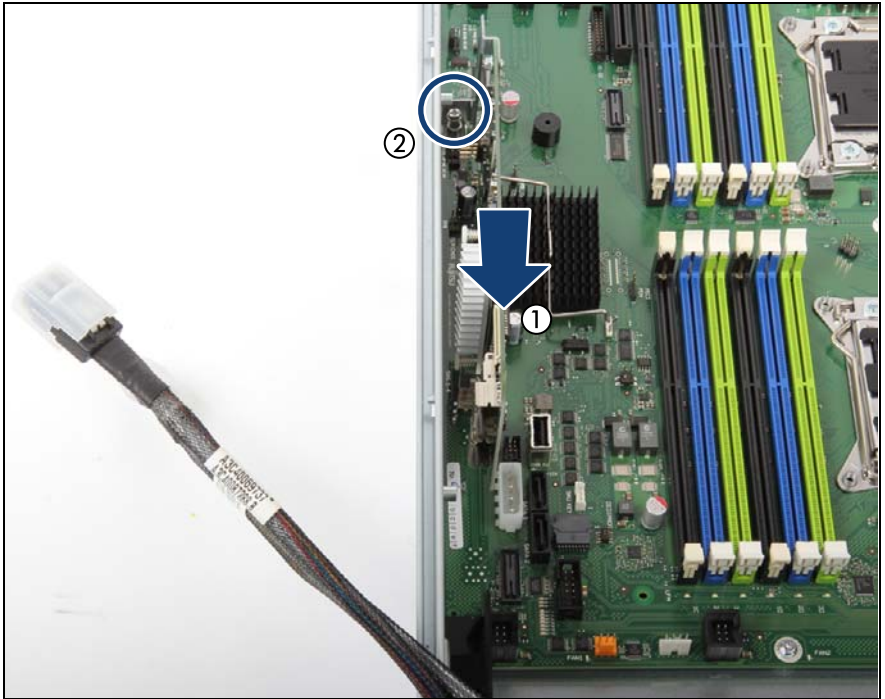


Figure 93: Removing the SAS RAID controller

- ▶ Loosen the screw on the RAID card holder (2).
- ▶ Carefully pull up on the SAS RAID controller in a vertical motion and remove it from its slot (1).

### 9.4.3.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ In order to configure an expansion card that has been installed or replaced, the card's Option ROM has to be enabled in the system board BIOS. If applicable, proceed as described in section ["Enabling Option ROM scan" on page 85](#).

- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)
- ▶ ["Updating RAID controller firmware" on page 84](#)

### 9.4.4 Replacing the SAS RAID controller



**Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes  
Software: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

#### 9.4.4.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

### 9.4.4.2 Removing the defective SAS RAID controller

- ▶ ["Removing the SAS RAID controller" on page 196](#)
- ▶ If the RAID card holder on the defective controller is to be reused, remove it from the board as described in section ["Preparing the SAS RAID controller" on page 193](#).

### 9.4.4.3 Installing the new SAS RAID controller

- ▶ If applicable, install the RAID card holder on the new SAS RAID controller as described in section ["Preparing the SAS RAID controller" on page 193](#).
- ▶ ["Installing the SAS RAID controller" on page 192](#)

### 9.4.4.4 Connecting cables to the expansion card

- ▶ Connect SAS cables to the SAS RAID controller.



For a complete cabling overview, please refer to section ["List of used cables" on page 481](#).

### 9.4.4.5 Connecting a backup unit to the expansion card

- ▶ If applicable, connect a BBU or FBU to the expansion card as described in sections ["Installing a BBU" on page 212](#) or ["Installing a FBU" on page 224](#).

### 9.4.4.6 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ In order to configure an expansion card that has been installed or replaced, the card's Option ROM has to be enabled in the system board BIOS. If applicable, proceed as described in section ["Enabling Option ROM scan" on page 85](#).
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)
- ▶ ["Updating RAID controller firmware" on page 84](#)

## 9.5 Modular LAN controller in PCI slot 1

### 9.5.1 Basic information



PCI slot 1 is the preferred slot for Modular LAN controllers.

If you want to use the Modular Service LAN function with the Modular LAN controller D2755 connect the controller with the NCSI sideband cable to the system board.

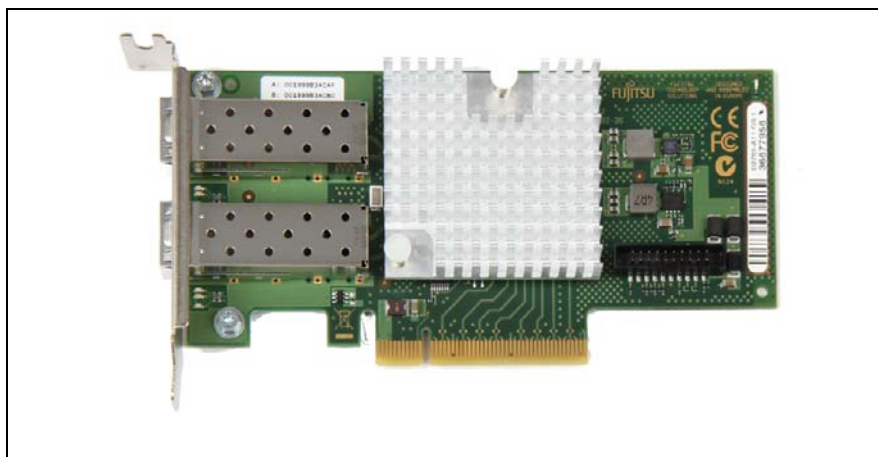


Figure 94: Modular LAN controller D2755

### 9.5.2 Installing the Modular LAN controller



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes  
Software: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

#### 9.5.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)

- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the slot bracket" on page 184](#)
- ▶ Remove the Modular LAN controller from its protective packaging.



For further instructions regarding controller settings, please refer to the accompanying documentation.

- ▶ ["Installing a slot bracket to the Network adapter D2755" on page 180](#)

### 9.5.2.2 Connecting the NCSI sideband cable to the Modular LAN controller



If the Modular LAN controller is to be used for dedicated network connections only, please skip this section.

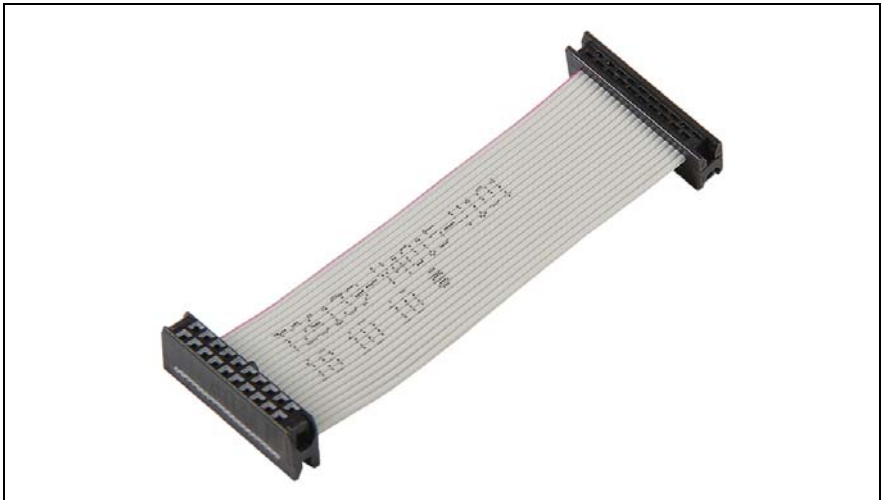


Figure 95: NCSI sideband cable

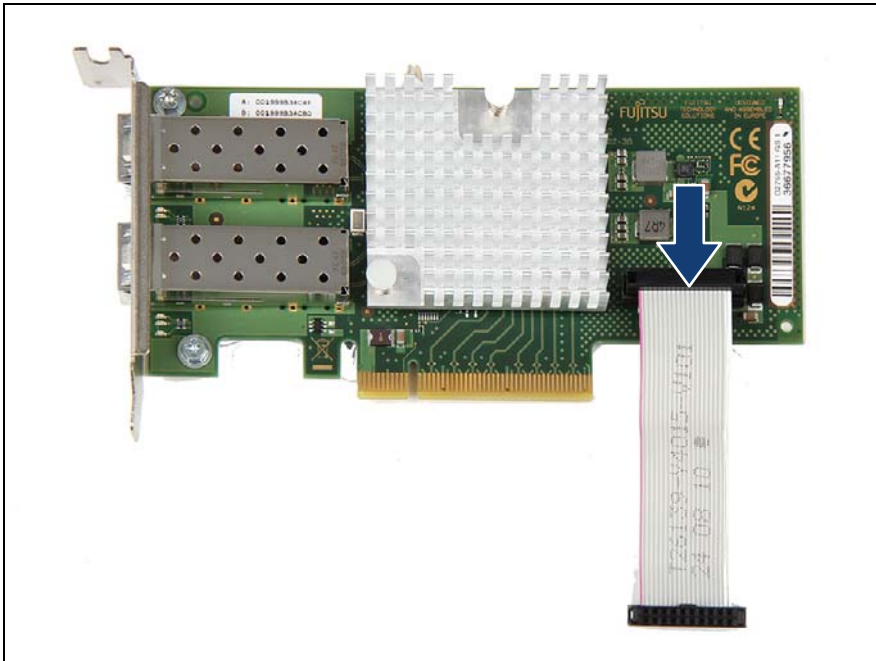


Figure 96: Connecting the NCSI sideband cable

- ▶ Connect the NCSI sideband cable to the Modular LAN controller:

Connector	Cable
20-pin (black)	NCSI sideband cable T26139-Y4015-V101



For a complete cabling overview, please refer to section "[List of used cables](#)" on page 481.

### 9.5.2.3 Installing the Modular LAN controller

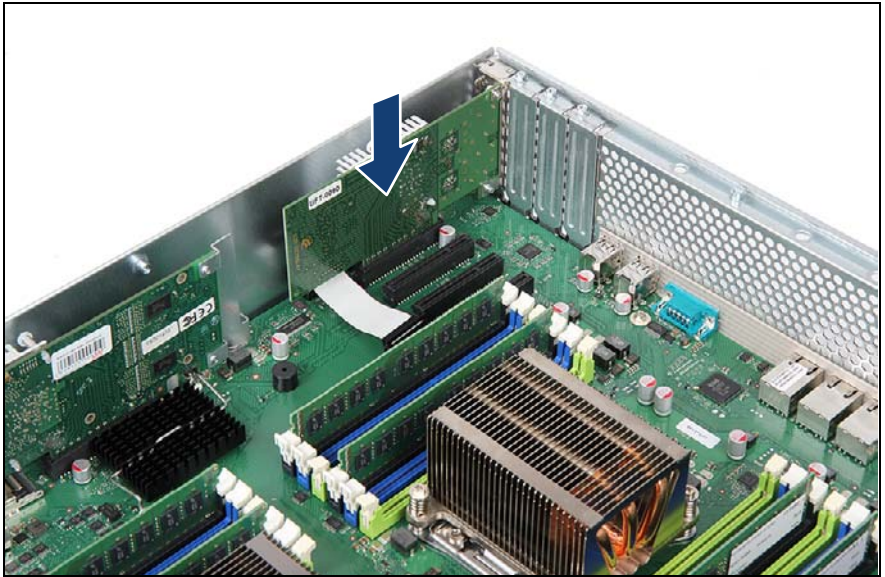


Figure 97: Installing the Modular LAN controller

- ▶ Carefully insert the Modular LAN controller into PCI slot 1 and press down firmly until it is fully seated in the slot.

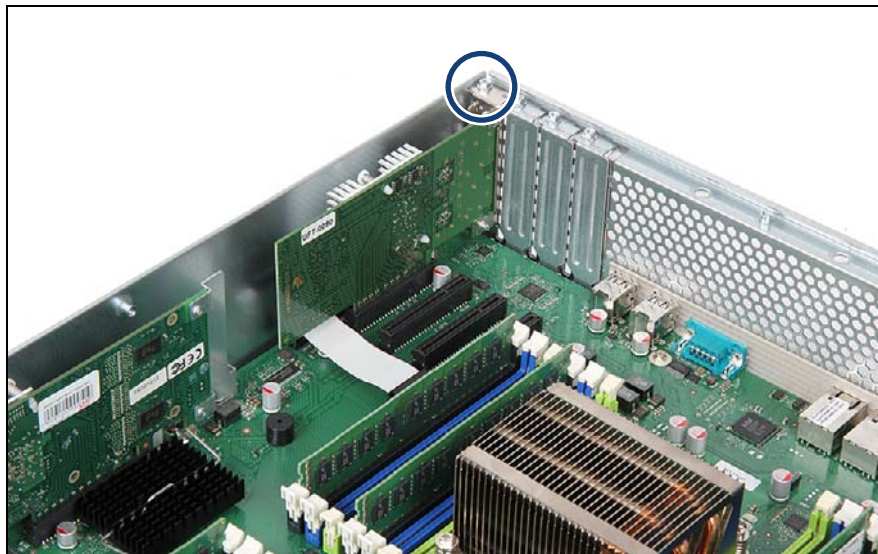


Figure 98: Fasten the Modular LAN controller

- ▶ Fasten the Modular LAN controller with a screw.
- ▶ If applicable, install SFP+ transceiver modules into the Modular LAN controller, as described in section "[Installing SFP+ transceiver modules](#)" on [page 241](#).

### 9.5.2.4 Connecting the NCSI sideband cable to the system board

**i** Connecting the NCSI sideband cable is only necessary in order to use the Modular LAN controller as a shared LAN interface, that allows both, management and dedicated LAN connections.

If the Modular LAN controller is to be used for dedicated network connections only, please skip this section.

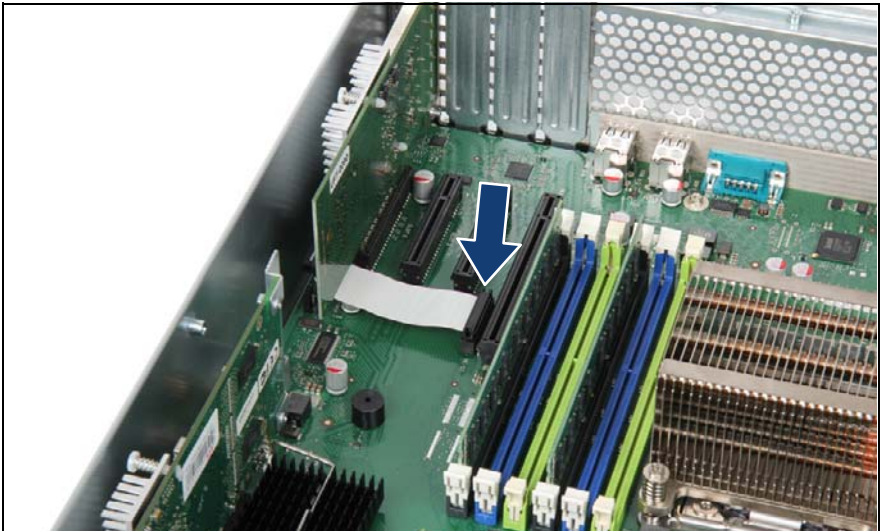


Figure 99: Connecting cable

- ▶ Connect the loose end of the NCSI sideband cable to the system board:

Connector	Cable
NC-SI	NCSI sideband cable T26139-Y4015-V101

#### 9.5.2.5 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69.](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71.](#)
- ▶ In order to configure an expansion card that has been installed or replaced, the card's Option ROM has to be enabled in the system board BIOS. If applicable, proceed as described in section ["Enabling Option ROM scan" on page 85.](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89.](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95.](#)
- ▶ If applicable, ["After replacing / upgrading LAN controllers" on page 99.](#)

### 9.5.2.6 Concluding software tasks

If the Modular LAN controller is to be used as a shared LAN interface, please proceed as follows:

- ▶ Ensure that the NCSI cable has been connected to the Modular LAN controller and the system board as described in sections "[Connecting the NCSI sideband cable to the Modular LAN controller](#)" on page 201 and "[Connecting the NCSI sideband cable to the system board](#)" on page 204.
- ▶ Enter the BIOS.
- ▶ Select the *Server Mgmt* menu.
- ▶ Under *iRMC LAN Parameters Configuration* set the *Management LAN Port* setting to *Shared 2*.
- ▶ Save your changes and exit the BIOS.



For detailed information on how to access the BIOS and modify settings, refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual.

## 9.5.3 Removing the Modular LAN controller



Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)



Hardware: 5 minutes

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 9.5.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

### 9.5.3.2 Removing the Modular LAN controller

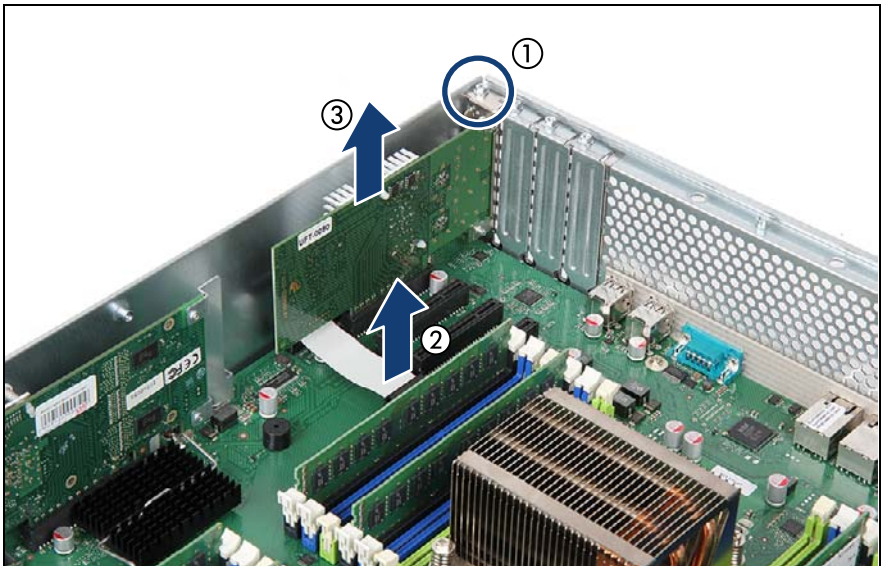


Figure 100: Detaching the Modular LAN controller

- ▶ If applicable, remove SFP+ transceiver modules from the Modular LAN controller, as described in section ["Removing an SFP+ transceiver module" on page 246](#).
- ▶ Remove the screw (1).
- ▶ Disconnect the NCSI sideband cable from the system board (2).
- ▶ Carefully pull up on the Modular LAN controller in a vertical motion and remove it from its slot (3).
- ▶ ["Installing a PCI slot bracket" on page 189](#)

### 9.5.3.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#).
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#).
- ▶ In order to configure an expansion card that has been installed or replaced, the card's Option ROM has to be enabled in the system board BIOS. If applicable, proceed as described in section ["Enabling Option ROM scan" on page 85](#).
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#).
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#).
- ▶ If applicable, ["After replacing / upgrading LAN controllers" on page 99](#).

## 9.5.4 Replacing the Modular LAN controller



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**  
**Software: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 9.5.4.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ Note on network settings recovery



When replacing network controllers or the system board, network configuration settings in the operating system will be lost and replaced by default values. This applies to all static IP address and LAN teaming configurations.

Ensure to note down your current network settings in the operating system. For further information, please refer to section ["Note on network settings recovery" on page 209](#).

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

### 9.5.4.2 Removing the Modular LAN controller

- ▶ If applicable, remove SFP+ transceiver modules from the Modular LAN controller to be removed, as described in section ["Removing an SFP+ transceiver module" on page 246](#).
- ▶ Remove the defective Modular LAN controller as described in section ["Removing the Modular LAN controller" on page 207](#).
- ▶ If the slot bracket on the defective Modular LAN controller is to be reused, remove it from the board as described in section ["Removing a slot bracket" on page 183](#).

### 9.5.4.3 Installing the Modular LAN controller

- ▶ If applicable, install a slot bracket on the new Modular LAN controller as described in section ["Installing a slot bracket to the Network adapter D2755" on page 180](#).
- ▶ Install the new Modular LAN controller as described in section ["Installing the Modular LAN controller" on page 200](#).
- ▶ If applicable, reinstall SFP+ transceiver modules on the new Modular LAN controller, as described in section ["Installing SFP+ transceiver modules" on page 241](#).

### 9.5.4.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ Reconnect all external cables to the replaced expansion card.
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#).
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#).
- ▶ In order to configure an expansion card that has been installed or replaced, the card's Option ROM has to be enabled in the system board BIOS. If applicable, proceed as described in section ["Enabling Option ROM scan" on page 85](#).
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#).
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#).
- ▶ Reconfigure your network settings in the operation system according to the original configuration of the replaced controller (expansion card or onboard).



Configuration of network settings should be performed by the customer.

For further information, please refer to section ["Note on network settings recovery" on page 209](#).

- ▶ If applicable, ["After replacing / upgrading LAN controllers" on page 99](#).

## 9.6 Backup Units

### 9.6.1 Basic information

The Battery Backup Unit (BBU) or Flash Backup Unit (FBU) backs up the memory contents of the connected SAS RAID controller in the event of a power failure. The PRIMERGY RX300 S8 server can accommodate up to two backup units.



Figure 101: BBU / FBU mounting positions

1	Mounting position for first BBU / FBU
2	Mounting position for second BBU / FBU

### 9.6.2 Installing a BBU



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less



#### **CAUTION!**

For further safety information, please refer to chapter ["Important information"](#) on page 39.

#### 9.6.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality"](#) on page 74
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server"](#) on page 54
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords"](#) on page 54
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component"](#) on page 57

### 9.6.2.2 Connecting the BBU cable to the BBU

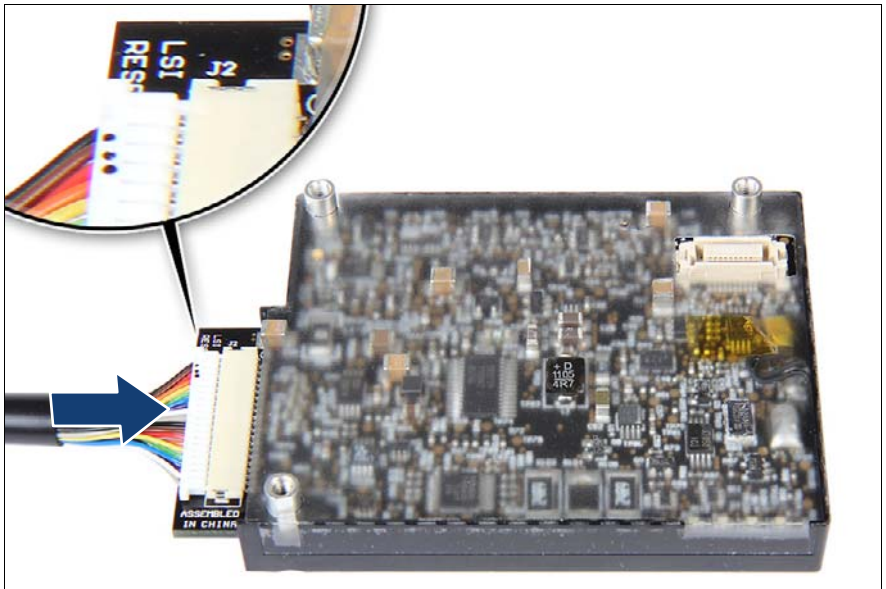


Figure 102: Connecting the BBU cable

- ▶ Connect the BBU cable to the BBU.



#### **CAUTION!**

Make sure that the connector side with the three dots points towards you (see close-up). Otherwise, short-circuits may result!



There are different BBUs available. Please notice the position of the three bolts (see circles [figure 103](#)) to recognise the right position for installing the BBU in the BBU holder.

### 9.6.2.3 Installing the BBU in the holder

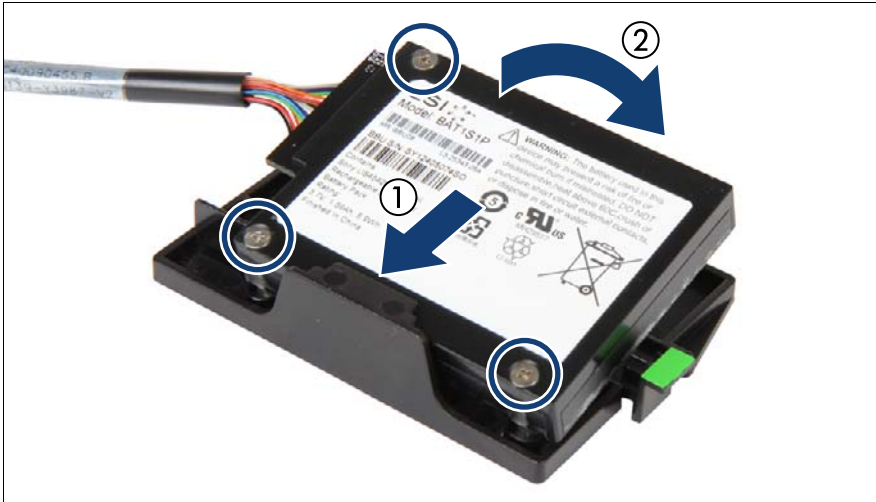


Figure 103: Installing the BBU in the BBU holder (example B)

- ▶ At a slight angle, fit the BBU under the right retaining bracket on the BBU holder (1).
- ▶ Fold down the BBU until it locks in place (2).

### 9.6.2.4 Installing the BBU holder onto the air duct



There are different BBUs available. The position of the BBU cable on the BBU can differ from the following example.

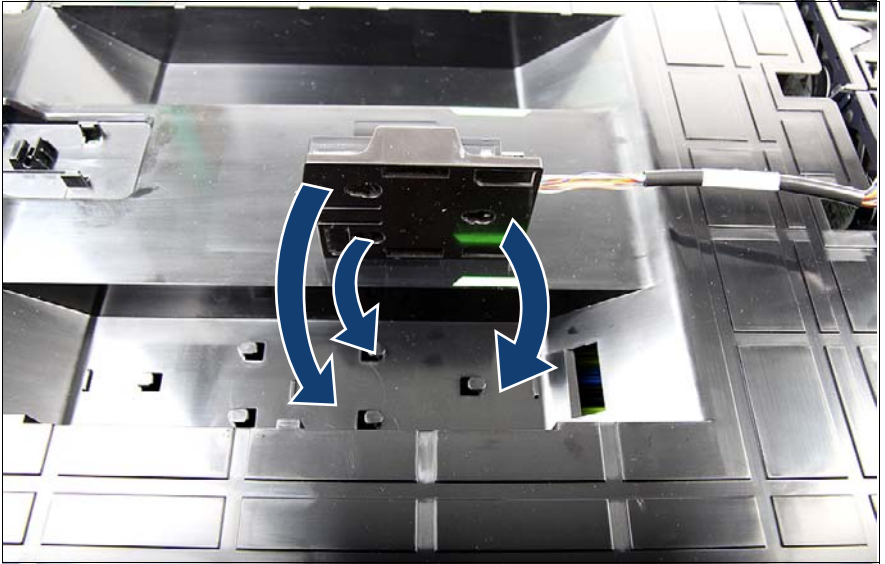


Figure 104: Installing the BBU holder (A)

**i** Note the positions of the fixation bolts on the air duct and keyhole slots on the BBU holder.

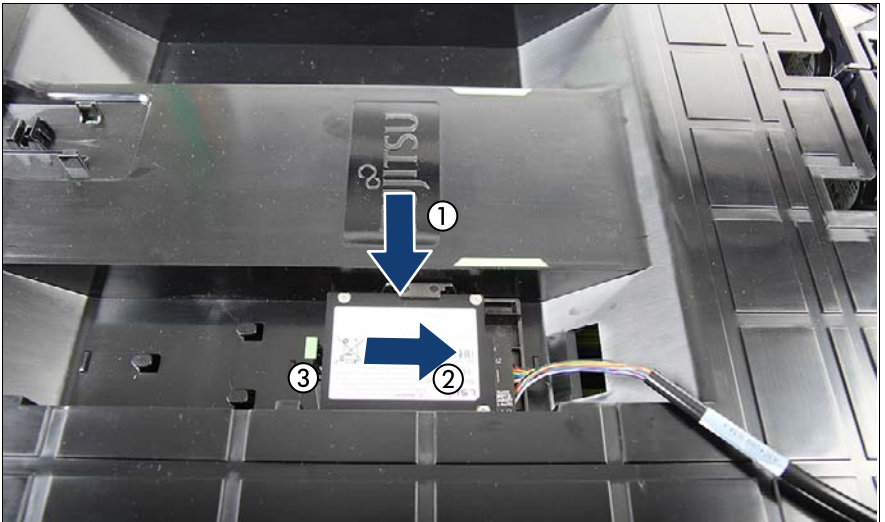


Figure 105: Installing the BBU holder (B)

## Expansion cards and backup units

- ▶ Insert the BBU holder into the air duct so that the three hooks on the air duct rest in the wide ends of the keyhole slots on the BBU holder (1).
- ▶ Slide the BBU holder in as far as it will go (2).  
The hooks on the air duct will lock in the narrow ends of the keyhole slots on the BBU holder.
- ▶ Ensure that the locking handle on the BBU holder properly snaps in place (3).

### 9.6.2.5 Installing the air duct with a BBU

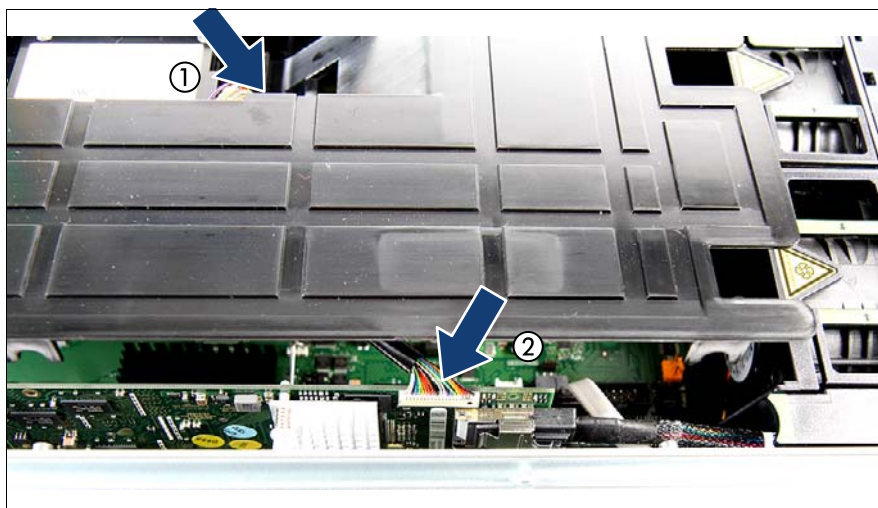


Figure 106: Connecting the BBU to the controller

- ▶ Insert the air duct.
- ▶ Tilt up the air duct a little.
- ▶ Thread the BBU cable through the gap in the air duct (1)
- ▶ Connect the BBU cable to the RAID controller (2).



#### **CAUTION!**

Make sure that the connector side with the three dots points towards you. Otherwise, short-circuits may result!

### 9.6.2.6 Concluding steps

- ▶ "Reassembling" on page 63
- ▶ "Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69
- ▶ "Switching on the server" on page 71
- ▶ If applicable, "Updating RAID controller firmware" on page 84.
- ▶ "Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89

### Note on BBU charging and calibration

The BBU may be deeply discharged due to extended storage time and wrongly show as bad or defective in the ServerView RAID Manager.

In this case, the BBU will automatically enter a trickle charge cycle for recovery. This initial charge may take up to 8 hours before the BBU will initiate a recalibration cycle.

- ▶ Enter the ServerView RAID Manager and check the current BBU status.



For further information, please refer to the "ServerView Suite RAID Management" user guide, available online at

- ▶ If the BBU is shown as bad or defective, do not power off the server for at least 8 hours to allow the charge and calibration cycles to finish.
- ▶ If the BBU status does not change after 8 hours, please try to initiate the recalibration process manually using the ServerView RAID Manager.



If this procedure still does not fix the BBU status, please contact your local Fujitsu customer service partner.

### 9.6.3 Removing a BBU



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less



#### **CAUTION!**

Do not throw battery backup units into the trash can. Batteries must be disposed of in accordance with local regulations concerning special waste.

For further safety information, please refer to section "[Environmental protection](#)" on page 49.

#### **9.6.3.1 Preliminary steps**

- ▶ "[Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality](#)" on page 74
- ▶ "[Shutting down the server](#)" on page 54
- ▶ "[Disconnecting power cords](#)" on page 54
- ▶ "[Getting access to the component](#)" on page 57

### 9.6.3.2 Removing the air duct with a BBU

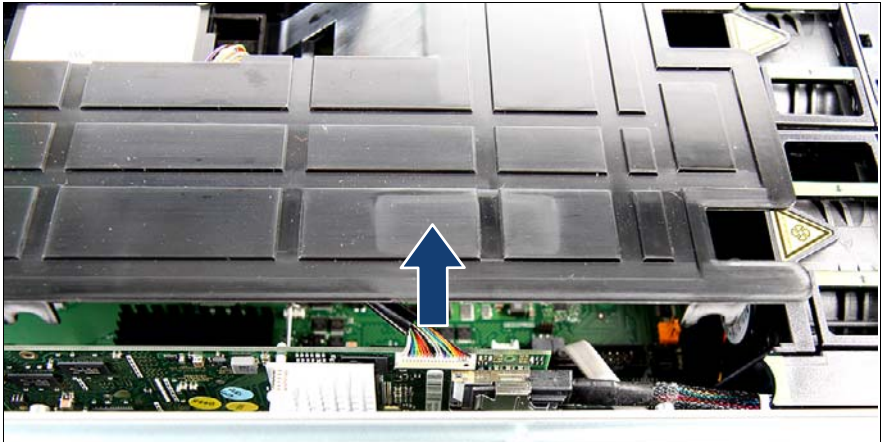


Figure 107: Disconnecting the BBU cable

- ▶ Tilt up the air duct a little.
- ▶ Carefully disconnect the BBU cable from the RAID controller (see arrow).
- ▶ Pull the BBU cable through the gap in the air duct.

### 9.6.3.3 Removing the BBU holder from the air duct

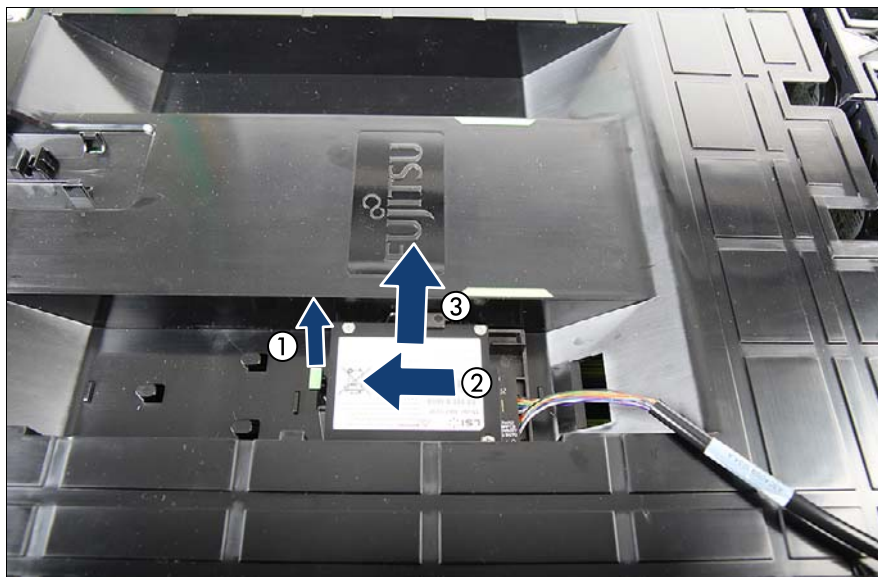


Figure 108: Removing the BBU holder from the air duct (A)

- ▶ Lift up the green locking handle on the BBU holder (1) while sliding the BBU holder in the direction of the arrow as far as it will go (2).

**i** After that, the fixation bolts on the air duct will rest in the wide ends of the keyhole slots on the holder.

- ▶ Lift the BBU holder from the air duct (3).

### 9.6.3.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ If applicable, ["Updating RAID controller firmware" on page 84.](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)

## 9.6.4 Replacing a BBU



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less



### **CAUTION!**

Do not throw battery backup units into the trash can. Batteries must be disposed of in accordance with local regulations concerning special waste.

For further safety information, please refer to section ["Environmental protection" on page 49](#).

### **9.6.4.1 Preliminary steps**

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

### **9.6.4.2 Removing a BBU from the air duct**

- ▶ Remove the BBU module from the air duct as described in section ["Removing the BBU holder from the air duct" on page 220](#).

### 9.6.4.3 Removing the BBU from the BBU holder

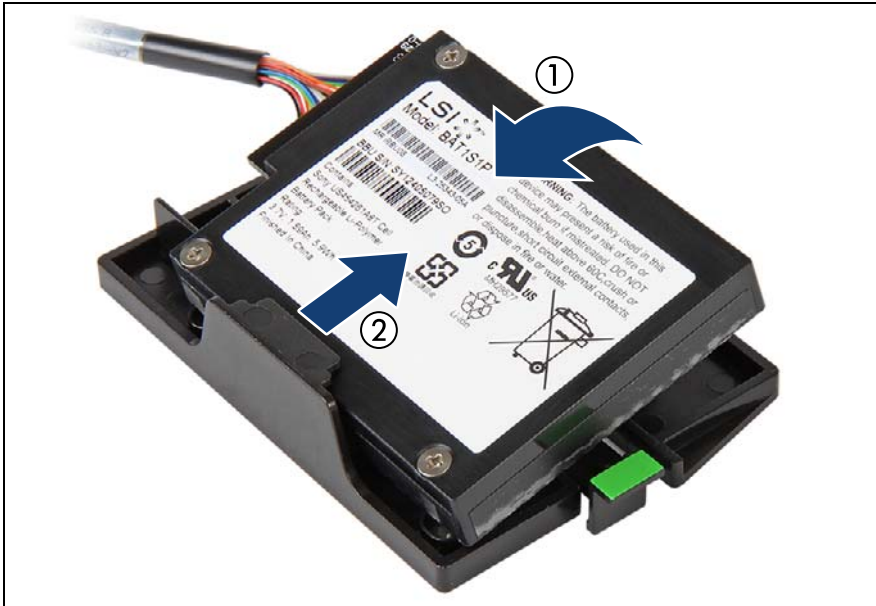


Figure 109: Removing the BBU from the BBU holder

- ▶ Press out on the right retaining bracket on the BBU holder (1) to disengage the locking mechanism while pulling up the BBU (2).

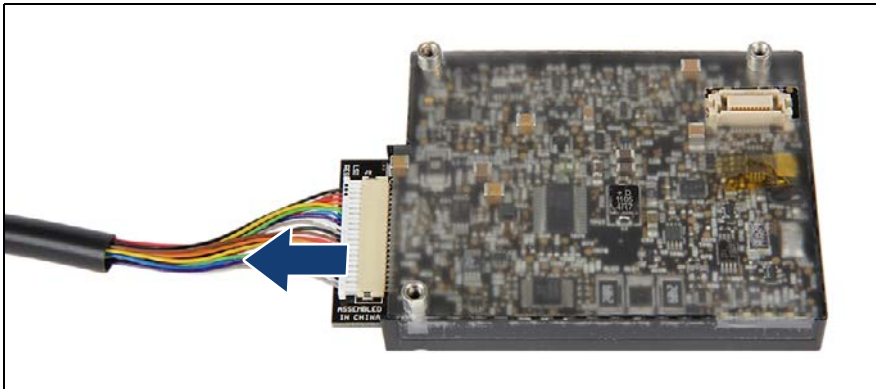


Figure 110: Disconnecting the BBU cable from the BBU

- ▶ Carefully disconnect the BBU cable from the BBU.

### 9.6.4.4 Installing a new BBU

- ▶ Install the new BBU into the BBU holder as described in section ["Connecting the BBU cable to the BBU" on page 213](#).
- ▶ ["Installing the BBU holder onto the air duct" on page 214](#)
- ▶ Connect the BBU to the controller.

### 9.6.4.5 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ If applicable, ["Updating RAID controller firmware" on page 84](#).
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)

### Note on BBU charging and calibration

The BBU may be deeply discharged due to extended storage time and wrongly show as bad or defective in the ServerView RAID Manager.

In this case, the BBU will automatically enter a trickle charge cycle for recovery. This initial charge may take up to 8 hours before the BBU will initiate a recalibration cycle.

- ▶ Enter the ServerView RAID Manager and check the current BBU status.



For further information, please refer to the "ServerView Suite RAID Management" user guide, available online at

- ▶ If the BBU is shown as bad or defective, do not power off the server for at least 8 hours to allow the charge and calibration cycles to finish.
- ▶ If the BBU status does not change after 8 hours, please try to initiate the recalibration process manually using the ServerView RAID Manager.



If this procedure still does not fix the BBU status, please contact your local Fujitsu customer service partner.

### 9.6.5 Installing a FBU



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH0 screw driver



#### **CAUTION!**

For further safety information, please refer to chapter "[Important information](#)" on page 39.

#### 9.6.5.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ "[Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality](#)" on page 74
- ▶ "[Shutting down the server](#)" on page 54
- ▶ "[Disconnecting power cords](#)" on page 54
- ▶ "[Getting access to the component](#)" on page 57

### 9.6.5.2 Preparing the FBU

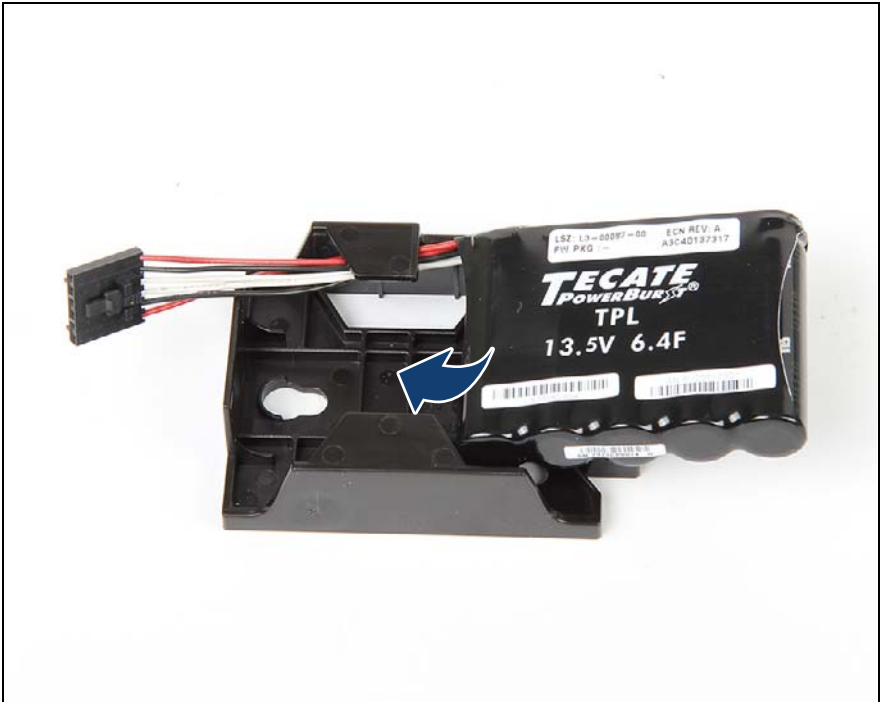


Figure 111: Installing the FBU in the FBU holder (A)

- ▶ At a slight angle, fit the FBU under both retaining brackets of the FBU holder as shown.
- ▶ Push in the FBU until it locks in place.

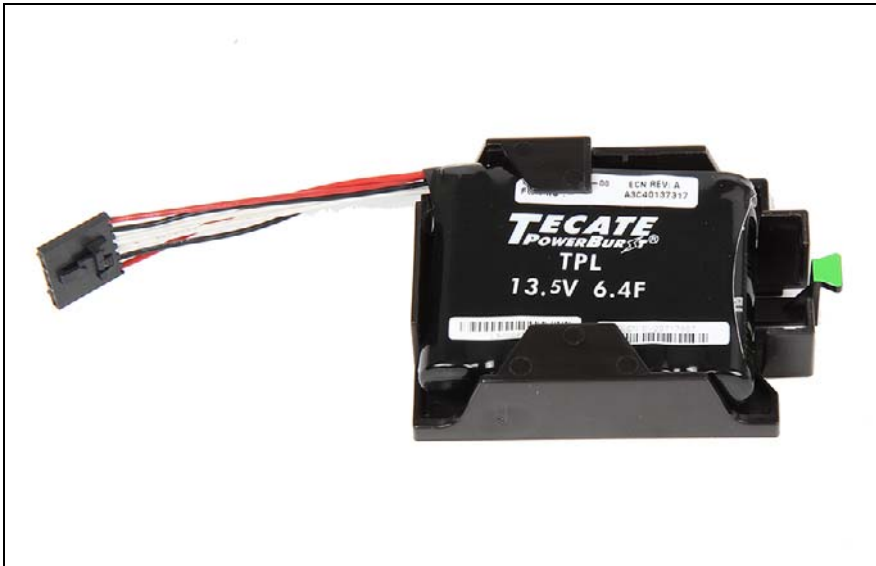


Figure 112: Installing the FBU in the FBU holder (B)

- Ensure that the FBU is properly seated in the holder.

### 9.6.5.3 Installing TFM to the RAID controller (if applicable)

#### Note on TFM

**i** A TFM is required in order to connect an FBU to SAS RAID controllers D3116 and D3216. Other controllers, so as D9285 can be connected directly. Three different TFM kits are available:

RAID controller	TFM kit
D3116 SAS RAID controller	TFM (LSZ:L3-25419-01)
D3216 PRAID EP400i SAS 3.0 RAID controller	TFM 4G (LSZ:03-25444-05)
D3216 PRAID EP420i SAS 3.0 RAID controller	TFM 8G (LSZ:03-25444-01)

### SAS 2.0 Installing TFM to SAS RAID controller D3116

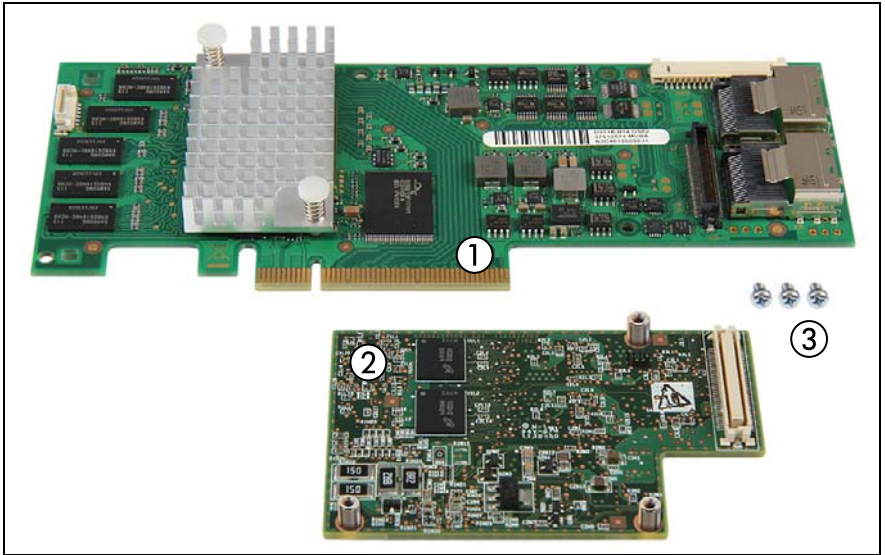


Figure 113: SAS RAID controller and TFM kit

**1** SAS RAID controller D3116

**2-3** TFM kit including three pre-assembled spacer bolts and three screws

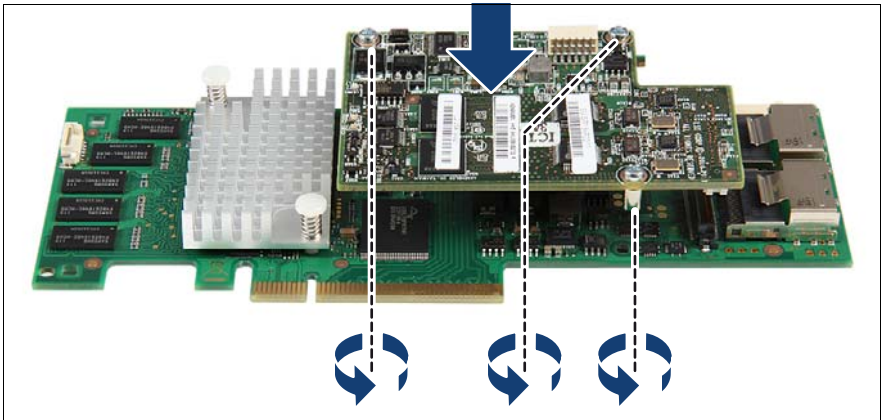


Figure 114: Mounting the TFM kit (A)

► Fit the spacer bolts on the TFM on SAS RAID controller.

## Expansion cards and backup units

---

- ▶ Secure the TFM on the controller with the three screws .

### 9.6.5.4 SAS 2.0 Connecting the FBU cable to the FBU

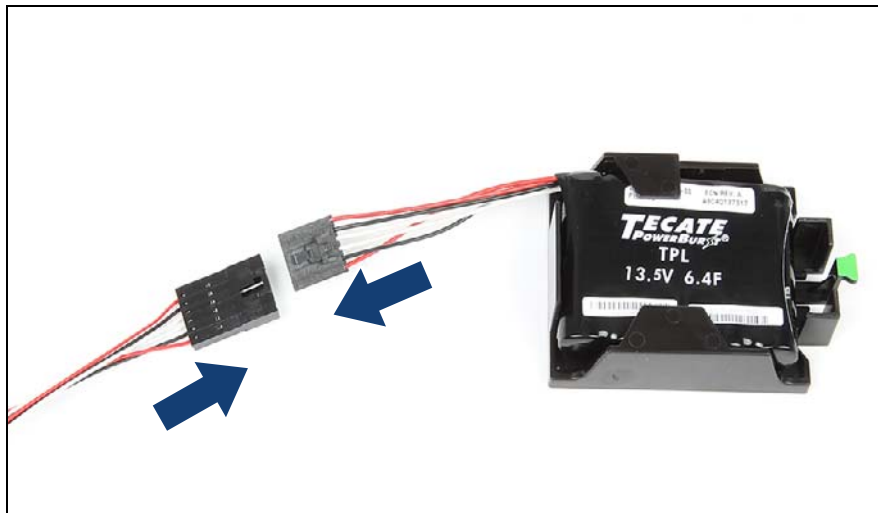


Figure 115: Connecting the FBU adapter cable to the FBU

- ▶ Connect the cable end on the FBU module to the FBU adapter cable as shown.

### 9.6.5.5 SAS 2.0 installing the FBU holder onto the air duct



The Installation of a FBU onto the air duct is similar to the installation of an BBU see section ["Installing the BBU holder onto the air duct"](#) on [page 214](#).

### 9.6.5.6 SAS 2.0 Installing the air duct with an FBU



Figure 116: Connecting the FBU to the controller

- ▶ Insert the air duct.
- ▶ Thread the FBU cable through the gap in the air duct.
- ▶ Tilt up the air duct a little.

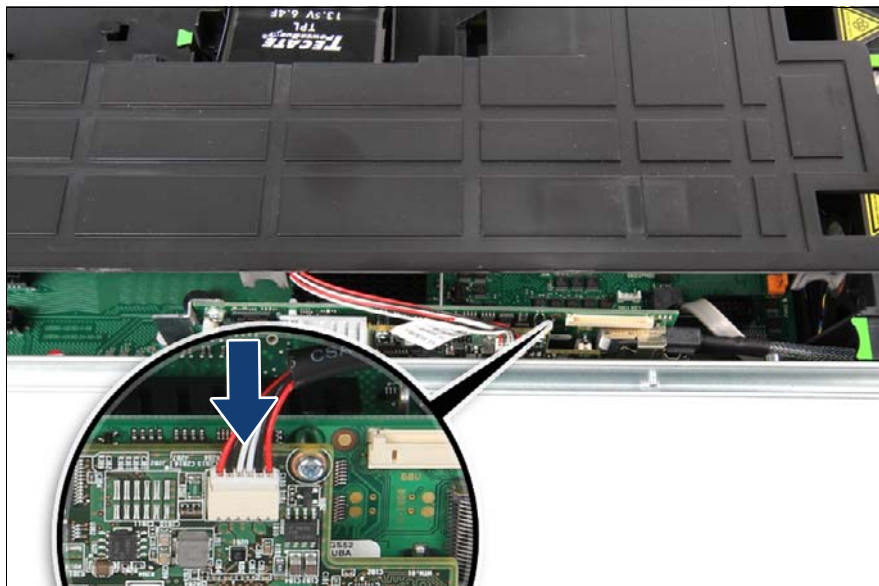


Figure 117: Connecting the FBU to the controller

- ▶ Connect the FBU cable to the RAID controller.

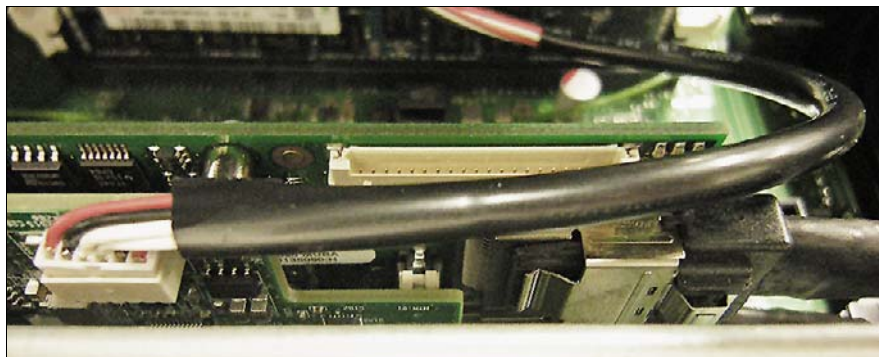


Figure 118: Routing the FBU cable

- ▶ Route the cable in such a way that the cable is not pinched under the air duct.

9.6.5.7 SAS 3.0 installing TFM toSAS RAID controller D3216

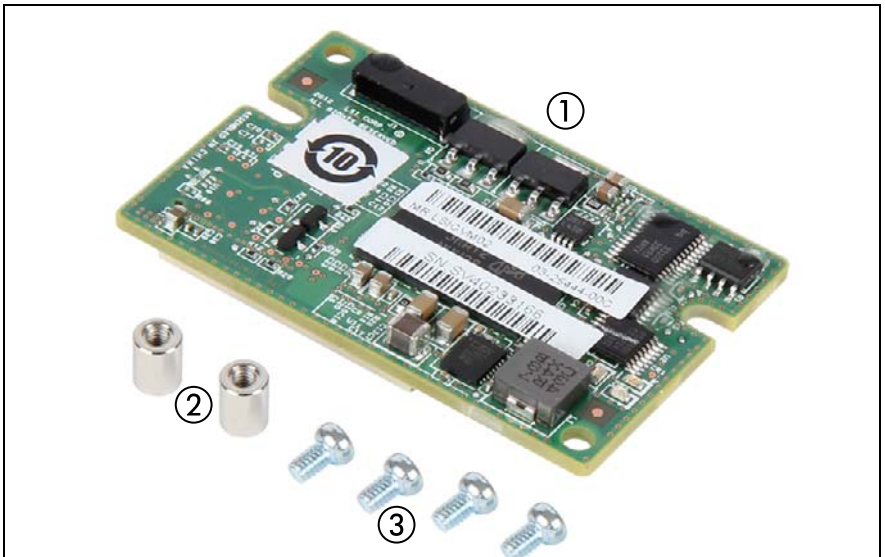


Figure 119: TFM 4G / 8G kit

- 1** TFM 4G / 8G kit (LSZ:03-25444-05 / LSZ:03-25444-01)
- 2-3** Two spacer bolts and four screws

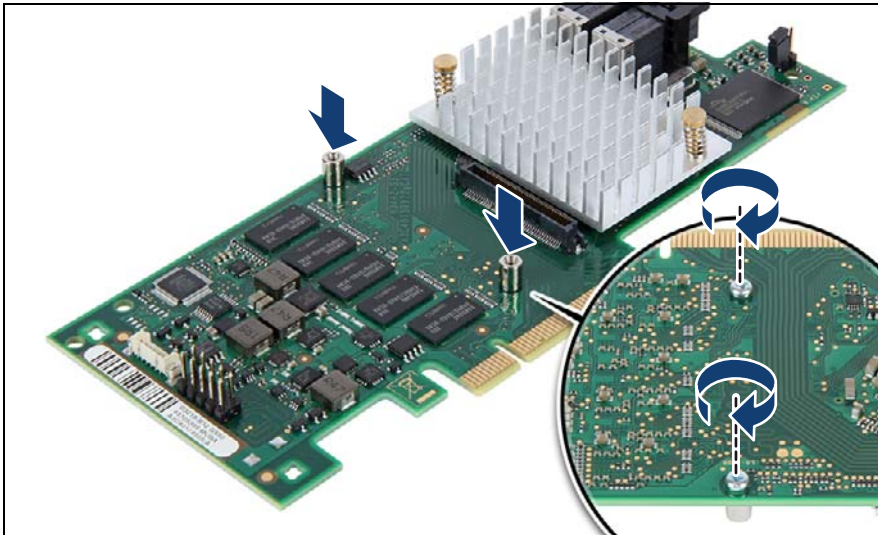


Figure 120: Mounting the TFM kit (A)

- ▶ Fit the two spacer bolts on the SAS RAID controller as shown and secure each with a screw from the TFM kit.

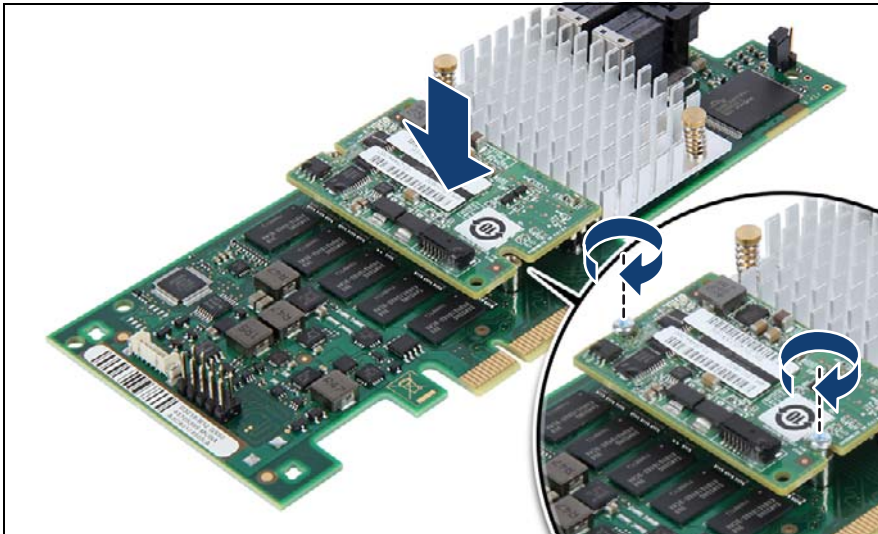


Figure 121: Mounting the TFM (B)

- ▶ Attach the TFM to the RAID controller as shown.
- ▶ Secure the TFM on the spacer bolts with two screws from the TFM kit.

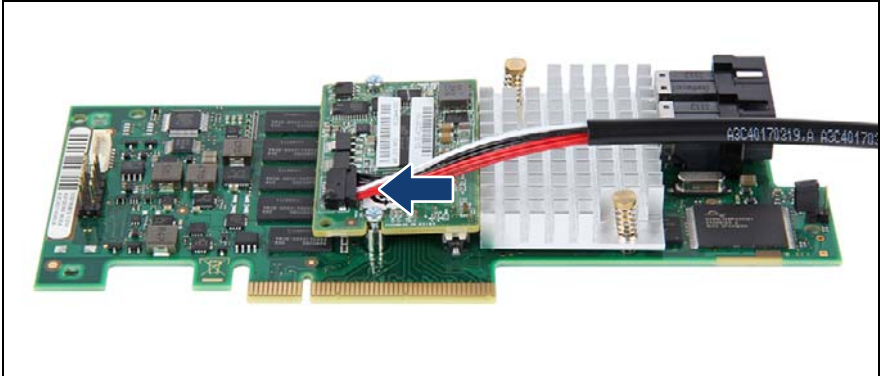


Figure 122: Mounting the TFM (C)

- ▶ Connect the FBU adapter cable (T26139-Y4031-V103) to the TFM.
- ▶ Reinstall the SAS RAID controller as described in sections ["Installing the SAS RAID controller" on page 192](#) or ["Installing expansion cards" on page 184](#).
- ▶ Connect the SAS cables to their original connectors on the SAS RAID controller.
- ▶ Insert the air duct.
- ▶ Install the FBU onto the air duct.



The Installation of a FBU onto the air duct is similar to the installation of an BBU see section ["Installing the BBU holder onto the air duct" on page 214](#).

- ▶ Tilt up the air duct a little.
- ▶ Thread the FBU adapter cable through the gap in the air duct.
- ▶ Connect the FBU adapter cable to the FBU cable.

### 9.6.5.8 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)

## Expansion cards and backup units

---

- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ If applicable, ["Updating RAID controller firmware" on page 84.](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)

## 9.6.6 Removing a FBU



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less



### **CAUTION!**

Do not throw backup units into the trash can. Batteries must be disposed of in accordance with local regulations concerning special waste.

For further safety information, please refer to section "[Environmental protection](#)" on page 49.

### **9.6.6.1 Preliminary steps**

- ▶ "[Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality](#)" on page 74
- ▶ "[Shutting down the server](#)" on page 54
- ▶ "[Disconnecting power cords](#)" on page 54
- ▶ "[Getting access to the component](#)" on page 57

### 9.6.6.2 Removing the air duct with an FBU

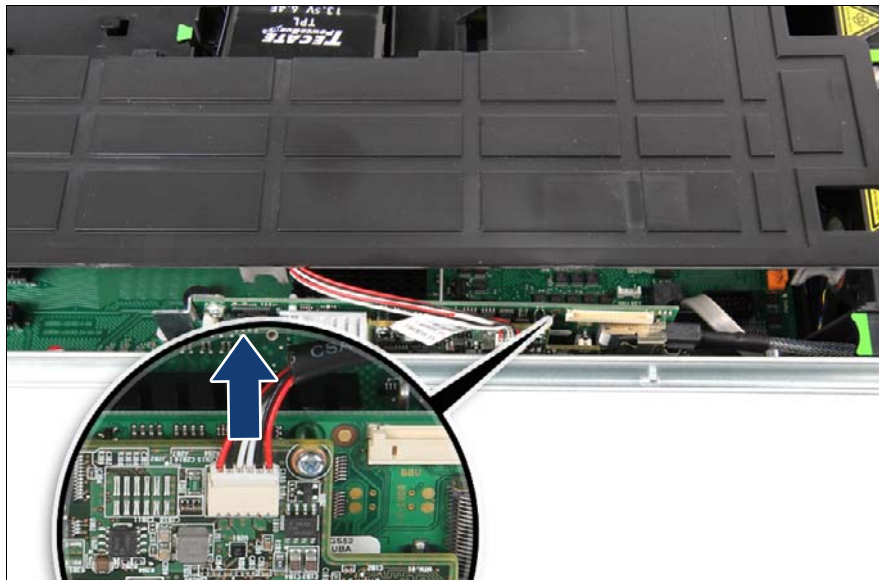


Figure 123: Disconnecting the FBU cable

- ▶ Carefully disconnect the FBU cable from the RAID controller (see arrow).
  - i For SAS 3.0 controller:
    - ▶ Disconnect the FBU cable from the FBU adapter cable.
    - ▶ Remove the air duct.
- ▶ Pull the FBU cable through the gap in the air duct.

### 9.6.6.3 Removing the FBU holder from the air duct

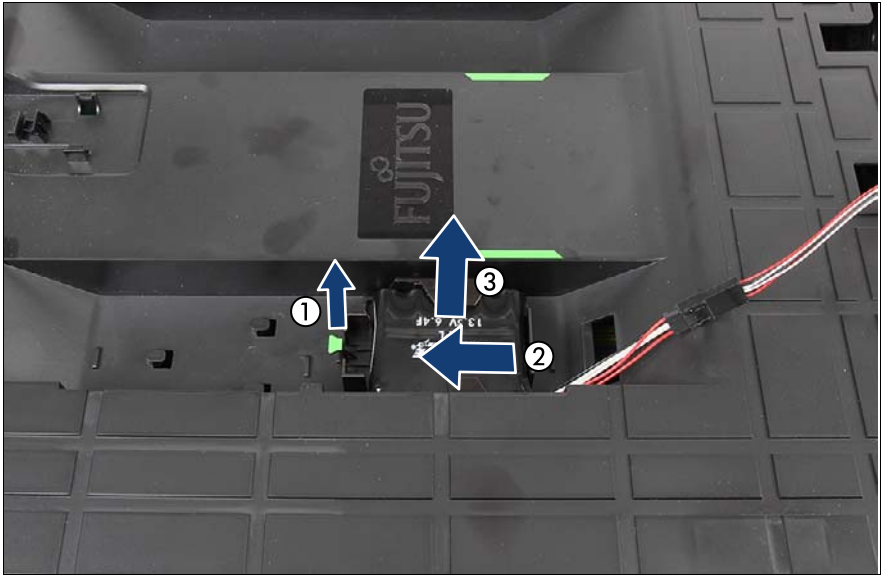


Figure 124: Removing the FBU holder from the air duct (A)

- ▶ Lift up the green locking handle on the FBU holder (1) while sliding the FBU holder to the left as far as it will go (2).

**i** After that, the hooks on the air duct will rest in the wide ends of the keyhole slots on the holder.

- ▶ Lift the FBU holder from the air duct (3).

### 9.6.6.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ If applicable, ["Updating RAID controller firmware" on page 84.](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)

### 9.6.7 Replacing a FBU



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less



#### **CAUTION!**

Do not throw battery backup units into the trash can. Batteries must be disposed of in accordance with local regulations concerning special waste.

For further safety information, please refer to section "[Environmental protection](#)" on page 49.

#### **9.6.7.1 Preliminary steps**

- ▶ "[Locating the defective server](#)" on page 51
- ▶ "[Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality](#)" on page 74
- ▶ "[Shutting down the server](#)" on page 54
- ▶ "[Disconnecting power cords](#)" on page 54
- ▶ "[Getting access to the component](#)" on page 57

### 9.6.7.2 Removing a FBU from the air duct

- ▶ "Removing the FBU holder from the air duct" on page 237

### 9.6.7.3 Disconnecting the FBU cable from the FBU

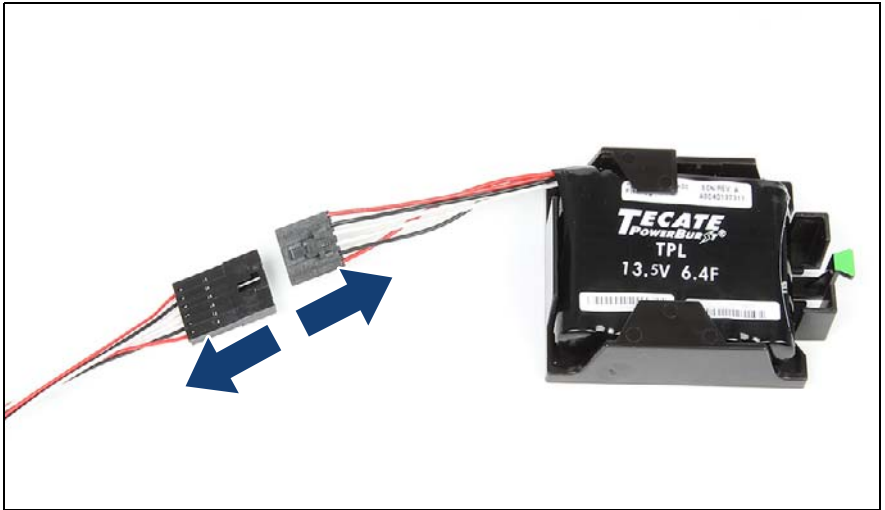


Figure 125: Disconnecting the FBU adapter cable from the FBU

- ▶ Press down on the locking latch on the FBU cable and disconnect the FBU adapter cable.

### 9.6.7.4 Removing the FBU from the holder

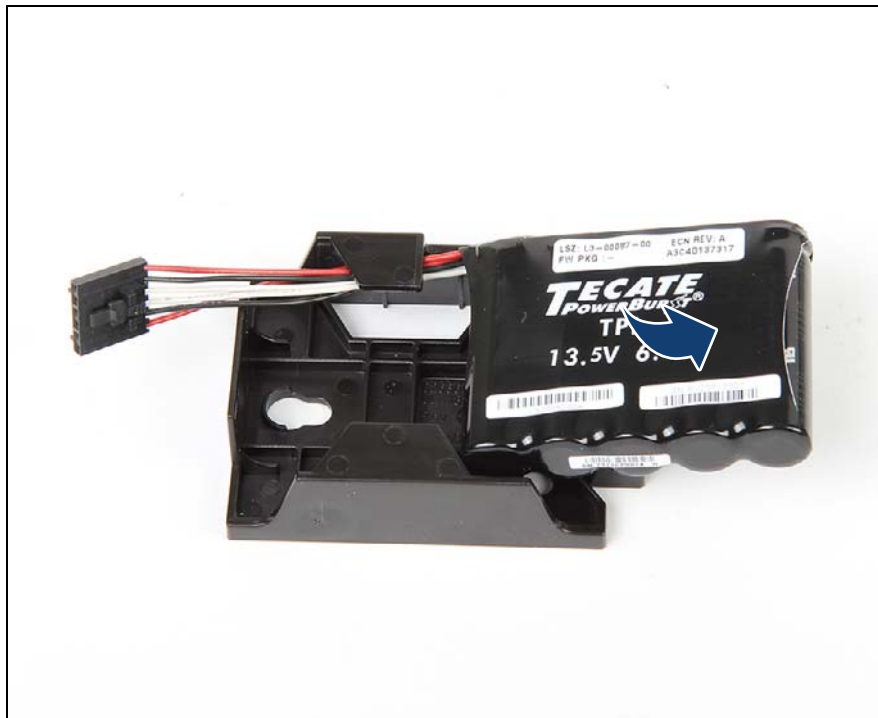


Figure 126: Removing the FBU from the holder

- ▶ Pull the FBU at a slight angle out of the holder.

### 9.6.7.5 Installing a new FBU

- ▶ ["SAS 2.0 Connecting the FBU cable to the FBU" on page 228](#)
- ▶ ["Preparing the FBU" on page 225](#)
- ▶ ["SAS 2.0 installing the FBU holder onto the air duct" on page 228](#)

### 9.6.7.6 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)

- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ If applicable, ["Updating RAID controller firmware" on page 84](#).
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)

## 9.7 Handling SFP+ transceiver modules

For Fiber Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) configurations, the Ethernet server adapter is equipped with one or two SFP+ (small form-factor pluggable) transceiver modules.

### 9.7.1 Installing SFP+ transceiver modules



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

<b>Tool:</b> tool-less
------------------------

Preparing the SFP+ transceiver module



Figure 127: Removing the protective optical port plug

- ▶ Remove the SFP+ transceiver module from its protective packaging.
- ▶ Remove the optical port plug from the new / additional SFP+ transceiver module.



### CAUTION!

- Always keep the protective port plugs attached to the transceiver optical bores and fiber-optic cable connectors until you are ready to make a connection.
- Save the protective port plug for future use.



Figure 128: Unlatching the locking bail

- ▶ Carefully unlatch and fold down the locking bail on the SFP+ transceiver module.

### Inserting the SFP+ transceiver module

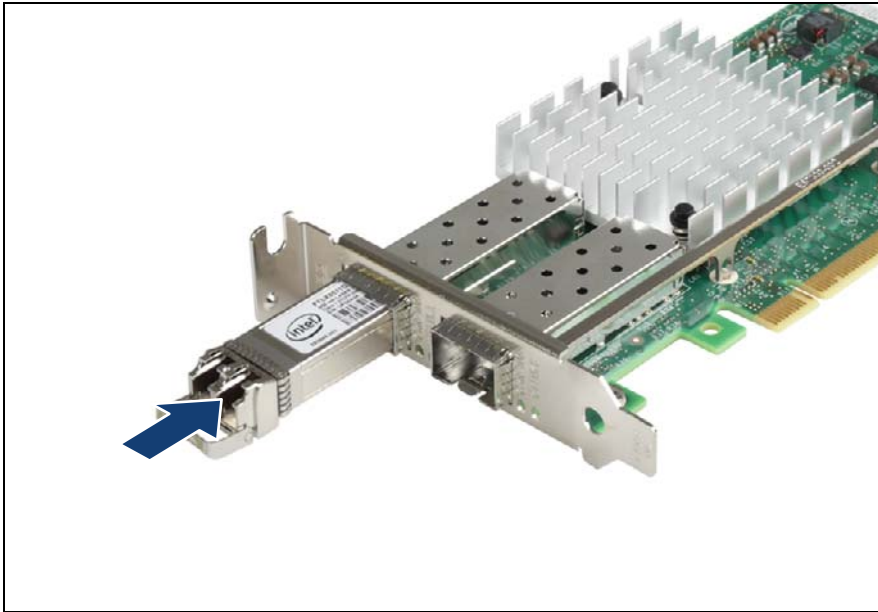


Figure 129: Inserting the SFP+ transceiver module

- ▶ Insert and slide the SFP+ transceiver module into the socket connector as far as it will go.

**i** If only one slot is equipped with a SFP+ transceiver module, use the primary connector as shown.

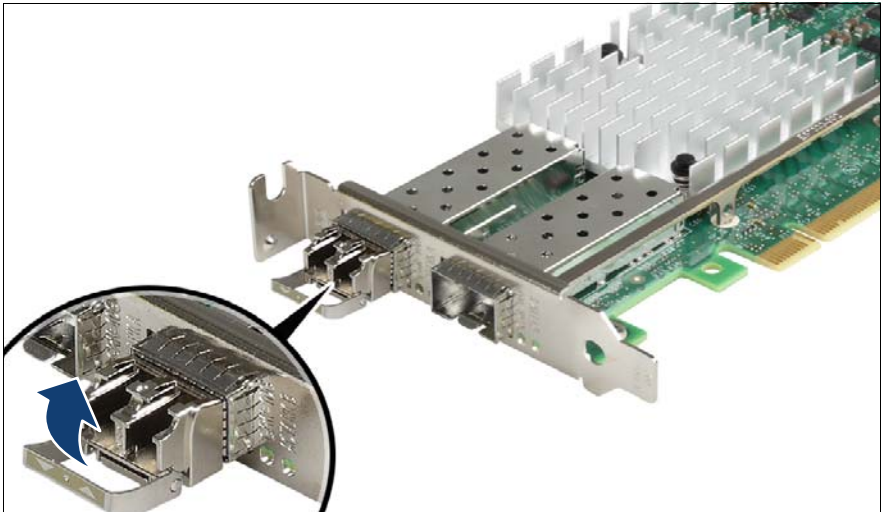


Figure 130: Latching the locking bail

- ▶ Carefully fold up and latch the locking bail.



Figure 131: Attaching the protective optical port plug

- ▶ If the SFP+ transceiver module is not immediately connected to an LC connector, attach the protective optical port plug to the transceiver optical bores.

### Installing the secondary SFP+ transceiver module



Figure 132: Installing the secondary SFP+ transceiver module

- ▶ If applicable, install the secondary SFP+ transceiver module accordingly.

### 9.7.2 Removing an SFP+ transceiver module



**Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tool:** tool-less

For Fiber Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) configurations, the ethernet server adapter is equipped with one or two SFP+ (small form-factor pluggable) transceiver modules.



Figure 133: Removing the protective optical port plug

- If present, remove the protective optical port plug from the SFP+ transceiver module.



**CAUTION!**

Save the protective port plug for future use.

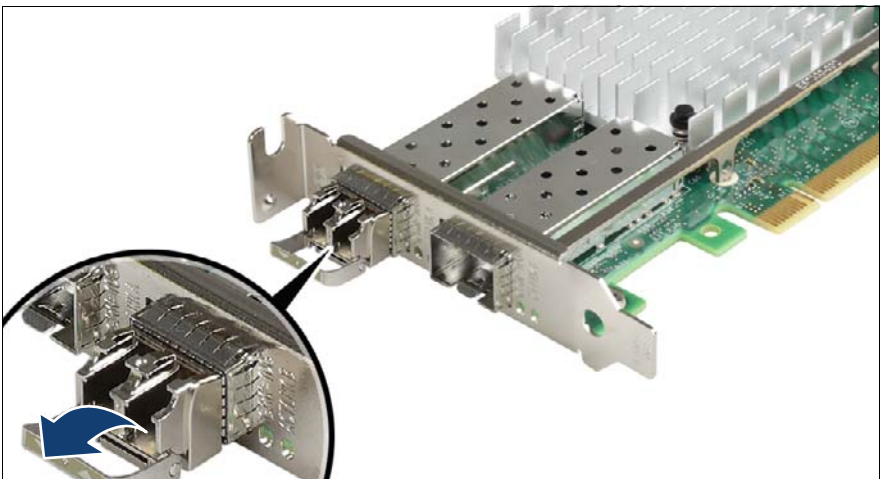


Figure 134: Unlatching the locking bail

## Expansion cards and backup units

- ▶ Carefully unlatch and fold down the locking bail on the SFP+ transceiver module to eject the transceiver from the socket connector.

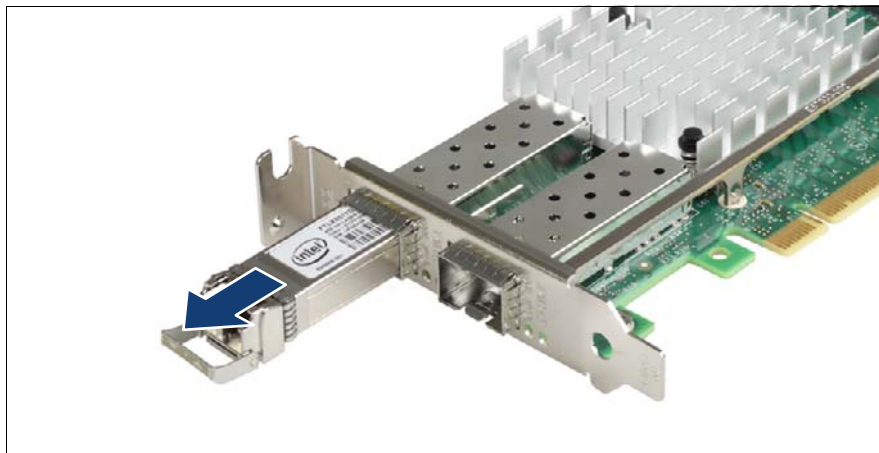


Figure 135: Removing the SFP+ transceiver

- ▶ Pull the SFP+ transceiver module out of its socket connector.
  - ▶ Reattach the protective optical port plug to the transceiver optical bores.
- i** Place the removed SFP+ transceiver module in an antistatic bag or other protective environment.

### 9.7.3 Replacing SFP+ transceiver modules



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tool:** tool-less

For Fiber Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) configurations, the ethernet server adapter is equipped with one or two SFP+ (small form-factor pluggable) transceiver modules.

### Removing SFP+ transceiver modules

- ▶ Remove the defective SFP+ transceiver module(s) as described in section ["Removing an SFP+ transceiver module" on page 246](#).

### Installing SFP+ transceiver modules

- ▶ Unpack the new SFP+ transceiver module.
- ▶ Verify that the new SFP+ transceiver module is the same type of transceiver you are replacing.
- ▶ Install the new SFP+ transceiver module(s) as described in section ["Installing SFP+ transceiver modules" on page 241](#).
- ▶ Inform the customer about changed WWN and MAC addresses. For further information, refer to section ["Looking up changed MAC / WWN addresses" on page 96](#).



---

# 10 Main memory

## Safety notes



### CAUTION!

- Do not install unsupported third party memory modules. For further information on supported memory modules, refer to section "[Basic information](#)" on page 252.
- Memory modules remain hot after shutdown. Wait for components to cool down before installing or removing memory modules to prevent burns.
- Do not insert and remove memory modules repeatedly. Doing so may cause failures.
- Pressing out the securing clips on the memory slot will eject the installed memory module. To prevent damage and injuries eject memory modules carefully without applying excessive force.
- For further information, please refer to chapter "[Important information](#)" on page 39.

## 10.1 Basic information

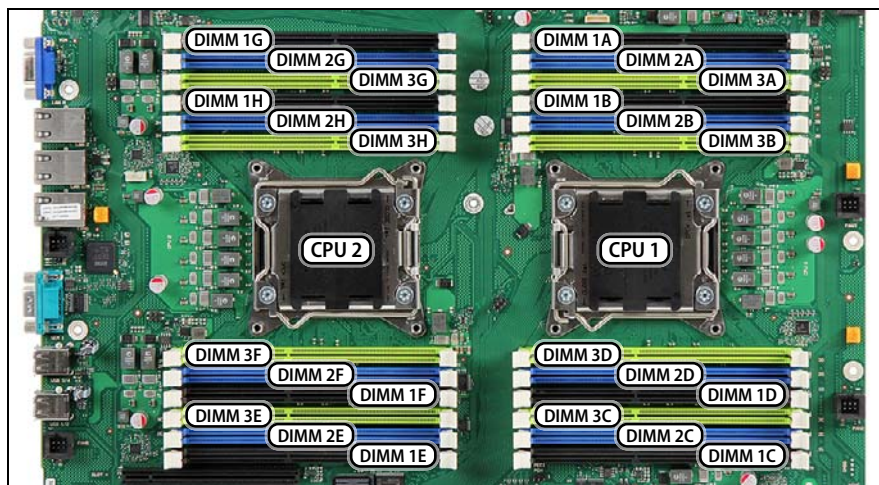


Figure 136: Memory overview

- The system board is equipped with 24 memory slots (12 connectors per CPU).
- In mono processor configurations only 12 memory slots are usable.
- The system has to be equipped with at least one memory module per processor.
- Supported capacities: 2 GB, 4 GB, 8 GB, 16 GB, 32 GB or 64 GB
- Maximum amount of RAM: 1536 GB (768 GB per CPU)
- Supported memory modules:

Type		Ranking <sup>1</sup>			Error Correction
		SR	DR	QR	
DDR3-1600 PC3-12800	RDIMMs (Registered DIMMs)	x	x	x	ECC or non-ECC
DDR3-1866 PC3-14900	UDIMMs (Unbuffered DIMMs)	x	x		
DDR3-1333 PC3-10600	LRDIMMs (Load-Reduced DIMMs)			x	

<sup>1</sup> SR: Single-Rank, DR: Dual-Rank, QR: Quad-Rank

## 10.1.1 Memory sequence

### 10.1.1.1 Population rules

- Populate memory slot 1 / channel A (DIMM 1A) first.
- In case of dual processor configurations, populate memory slot 1 / channel E (DIMM 1E) second.
- Within all channels, memory slot 1 must be populated prior to slot 2. Slot 2 must be populated prior to slot 3 (for all CPUs).
- If memory modules with different ranks are used, always populate the higher number rank DIMM first (starting from slot 1).
- If memory modules with different capacities are used:
  - Populate modules with higher capacities first.
  - Within a channel, populate modules in descending order of capacity.
- If memory modules with different speeds are used, the lowest clock rate applies for all DIMMs.

Regardless of the mode, all DIMMs will run at the highest common frequency that is allowed by the SPD Data of the DIMMs and the maximum speed of the selected configuration.

- Mixing UDIMMs, RDIMMs or LRDIMMs is not allowed.
- Mixing ECC and non-ECC DIMMs is not allowed.

## Main memory

---

- Mixing of quad-rank DIMMs in one channel and three DIMMs in another channel (3DPC) on the same CPU is not allowed.

10.1.1.2 Independant Channel mode

CPU	CPU 1												CPU 2											
Channel	A			B			D			C			E			F			H			G		
DIMM	1A	2A	3A	1B	2B	3B	1D	2D	3D	1C	2C	3C	1E	2E	3E	1F	2F	3F	1H	2H	3H	1G	2G	3G
# DIMMs	Mono CPU configuration																							
1	1																							
2	1									2														
3	1			3						2														
4	1			3			4			2														
5	1	5		3			4			2														
6	1	5		3			4			2	6													
7	1	5		3	7		4			2	6													
8	1	5		3	7		4	8		2	6													
9	1	5	9	3	7		4	8		2	6													
10	1	5	9	3	7		4	8		2	6	10												
11	1	5	9	3	7	11	4	8		2	6	10												
12	1	5	9	3	7	11	4	8	12	2	6	10												
# DIMMs	Dual CPU configuration																							
1	1																							
2	1												2											
3	1									3			2											
4	1									3			2									4		
5	1									3			2									4		
6	1			5						3			2		6							4		
7	1			5			7			3			2		6							4		
8	1			5			7			3			2		6			8				4		
9	1	9		5			7			3			2		6			8				4		
10	1	9		5			7			3			2	10	6			8				4		
11	1	9		5			7			3	11		2	10	6			8				4		
12	1	9		5			7			3	11		2	10	6			8				4	12	
13	1	9		5	13		7			3	11		2	10	6			8				4	12	
14	1	9		5	13		7			3	11		2	10	6	14		8				4	12	
15	1	9		5	13		7	15		3	11		2	10	6	14		8				4	12	
16	1	9		5	13		7	15		3	11		2	10	6	14		8	16			4	12	
17	1	9	17	5	13		7	15		3	11		2	10	6	14		8	16			4	12	
18	1	9	17	5	13		7	15		3	11		2	10	18	6	14		8	16		4	12	
19	1	9	17	5	13		7	15		3	11	19	2	10	18	6	14		8	16		4	12	
20	1	9	17	5	13		7	15		3	11	19	2	10	18	6	14		8	16		4	12	20
21	1	9	17	5	13	21	7	15		3	11	19	2	10	18	6	14		8	16		4	12	20
22	1	9	17	5	13	21	7	15		3	11	19	2	10	18	6	14	22	8	16		4	12	20
23	1	9	17	5	13	21	7	15	23	3	11	19	2	10	18	6	14	22	8	16		4	12	20
24	1	9	17	5	13	21	7	15	23	3	11	19	2	10	18	6	14	22	8	16	24	4	12	20

## Main memory

### Notes on Independant Channel mode

- Configurations marked in grey are only possible with registered DIMMs (RDIMMS) and LR-DIMMs

#### 10.1.1.3 Mirrored Channel and Performance modes

CPU	CPU 1												CPU 2											
Channel	A			B			D			C			E			F			H			G		
DIMM	1A	2A	3A	1B	2B	3B	1D	2D	3D	1C	2C	3C	1E	2E	3E	1F	2F	3F	1H	2H	3H	1G	2G	3G
# DIMMs	Mono CPU configuration																							
4	1			1			1			1														
8	1	2		1	2		1	2		1	2													
12	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3												
# DIMMs	Dual CPU configuration																							
8	1			1			1			1			2			2			2			2		
12	1	3		1	3		1	3		1	3		2			2			2			2		
16	1	3		1	3		1	3		1	3		2	4		2	4		2	4		2	4	
20	1	3	5	1	3	5	1	3	5	1	3	5	2	4		2	4		2	4		2	4	
24	1	3	5	1	3	5	1	3	5	1	3	5	2	4	6	2	4	6	2	4	6	2	4	6

### Notes on Mirrored Channel and Performance modes

- Always populate memory modules in multiples of 4.
- Same numbers mean identical modules (capacity, rank).

10.1.1.4 Rank Sparing mode

Single-/Dual-Rank RDIMMs

CPU	CPU 1												CPU 2											
Channel	A			B			D			C			E			F			H			G		
DIMM	1A	2A	3A	1B	2B	3B	1D	2D	3D	1C	2C	3C	1E	2E	3E	1F	2F	3F	1H	2H	3H	1G	2G	3G
# DIMMs	Mono CPU configuration																							
2	1	1																						
3	1	1	1																					
4	1	1								1	1													
5	1	1	1							1	1													
6	1	1	1							1	1	1												
7	1	1	1	1	1					1	1													
8	1	1	1	1	1					1	1	1												
9	1	1	1	1	1	1				1	1	1												
10	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1												
11	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1												
12	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1												
# DIMMs	Dual CPU configuration (if all modules are of the same capacity)																							
4	1	1											1	1										
5	1	1	1										1	1										
6	1	1	1										1	1	1									
7	1	1	1							1	1		1	1										
8	1	1	1							1	1		1	1	1									
9	1	1	1							1	1	1	1	1	1									
10	1	1	1							1	1		1	1	1									
11	1	1	1							1	1	1	1	1	1									
12	1	1	1							1	1	1	1	1	1									
13	1	1	1	1	1					1	1	1	1	1	1									
14	1	1	1	1	1					1	1	1	1	1	1									
15	1	1	1	1	1	1				1	1	1	1	1	1									
16	1	1	1	1	1					1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1							
17	1	1	1	1	1	1				1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1							
18	1	1	1	1	1	1				1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1						
19	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1						
20	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1						
21	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1						
22	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1				
23	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1			
24	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

# Main memory

CPU	CPU 1												CPU	CPU 2												
Ch.	A			B			D			C			Ch.	E			F			H			G			
DIMM	1A	2A	3A	1B	2B	3B	1D	2D	3D	1C	2C	3C	DIMM	1E	2E	3E	1F	2F	3F	1H	2H	3H	1G	2G	3G	
#	Dual CPU configuration (if modules are of different capacities)												#	Dual CPU configuration (if modules are of different capacities)												
2	1	1											2	2	2											
3	1	1	1										3	2	2	2										
4	1	1									1	1		4	2	2								2	2	
5	1	1	1								1	1		5	2	2	2							2	2	
6	1	1	1								1	1	1	6	2	2	2							2	2	2
7	1	1	1	1	1						1	1		7	2	2	2	2	2					2	2	
8	1	1	1	1	1						1	1	1	8	2	2	2	2	2					2	2	2
9	1	1	1	1	1	1					1	1	1	9	2	2	2	2	2	2				2	2	2
10	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1			1	1	1	10	2	2	2	2	2		2	2		2	2	2
11	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	11	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2		2	2	2
12	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	12	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2



For detailed population rules, refer to section ["Notes on Rank Sparing mode"](#) on page 260.

Quad-Rank RDIMMs

CPU	CPU 1												CPU 2											
Channel	A			B			D			C			E			F			H			G		
DIMM	1A	2A	3A	1B	2B	3B	1D	2D	3D	1C	2C	3C	1E	2E	3E	1F	2F	3F	1H	2H	3H	1G	2G	3G
# DIMMs	Mono CPU configuration																							
1	1																							
2	1	1																						
3	1	1									1													
4	1	1									1	1												
5	1	1		1							1	1												
6	1	1		1	1						1	1												
7	1	1		1	1		1				1	1												
8	1	1		1	1		1	1			1	1												
9	1	1	1	1	1		1	1			1	1												
10	1	1	1	1	1		1	1			1	1	1											
11	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1			1	1	1											
12	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1											
# DIMMs	Dual CPU configuration (if all modules are of the same capacity)																							
1	1																							
2	1													1										
3	1	1												1										
4	1	1												1	1									
5	1	1									1			1	1									
6	1	1									1	1		1	1									
7	1	1									1	1		1	1							1		
8	1	1									1	1		1	1							1	1	
9	1	1		1							1	1		1	1							1	1	
10	1	1		1	1						1	1		1	1							1	1	
11	1	1		1	1						1	1		1	1		1					1	1	
12	1	1		1	1						1	1		1	1		1	1				1	1	
13	1	1		1	1		1				1	1		1	1		1	1				1	1	
14	1	1		1	1		1	1			1	1		1	1		1	1				1	1	
15	1	1		1	1		1	1			1	1		1	1		1	1		1		1	1	
16	1	1		1	1		1	1			1	1		1	1		1	1		1	1	1	1	
17	1	1	1	1	1		1	1			1	1		1	1		1	1		1	1	1	1	
18	1	1	1	1	1		1	1			1	1		1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	
19	1	1	1	1	1		1	1			1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	
20	1	1	1	1	1		1	1			1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1
21	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1			1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1
22	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1			1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
23	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
24	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

# Main memory

CPU	CPU 1												CPU	CPU 2											
Ch.	A			B			D			C			Ch.	E			F			H			G		
DIMM	1A	2A	3A	1B	2B	3B	1D	2D	3D	1C	2C	3C	DIMM	1E	2E	3E	1F	2F	3F	1H	2H	3H	1G	2G	3G
#	Dual CPU configuration (if modules are of different capacities)												#	Dual CPU configuration (if modules are of different capacities)											
1	1												1	2											
2	1	1											2	2	2										
3	1	1										1	3	2	2									2	
4	1	1										1	4	2	2									2	2
5	1	1		1								1	5	2	2		2							2	2
6	1	1		1	1							1	6	2	2		2	2						2	2
7	1	1		1	1		1					1	7	2	2		2	2		2				2	2
8	1	1		1	1		1	1				1	8	2	2		2	2		2	2			2	2
9	1	1	1	1	1		1	1				1	9	2	2	2	2	2		2	2			2	2
10	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1		1	10	2	2	2	2	2		2	2			2	2
11	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	11	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2			2	2
12	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	12	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2

## Notes on Rank Sparing mode

- Same numbers mean identical modules (capacity, rank)
- In case of Single-/Dual-Rank memory configurations, at least two 1R or 2R modules must be populated per a channel.
- In case of Quad-Rank memory modules, please note the following: Due to performance reasons, always populate a new channel before installing the 3rd memory slot of a channel.
- Only one memory module capacity per CPU is allowed.

If two different memory module capacities have been ordered for Rank Sparing mode, populate them on different CPUs, so that each CPUs only comprises modules of one capacity

*Example:*

12 modules have been ordered, 8 x 4 GB and 4 x 8 GB.  
In this case, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Use the capacity group with more memory modules for CPU 1 and populate them according to the population sequence for mono CPU configurations.
- ▶ Populate the other capacity group on CPU 2 according to the population rules for mono CPU configurations.

- In order to satisfy cooling requirements, populate memory channels on alternating sides of the processor:

Order	CPU 1	CPU 2
1	Channel A	Channel E
2	Channel C	Channel G
3	Channel B	Channel F
4	Channel D	Channel H

## 10.2 Installing memory modules



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less

### 10.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

### 10.2.2 Installing a memory module

- ▶ Identify the correct memory slot see section ["Memory sequence" on page 253](#).

## Main memory

---

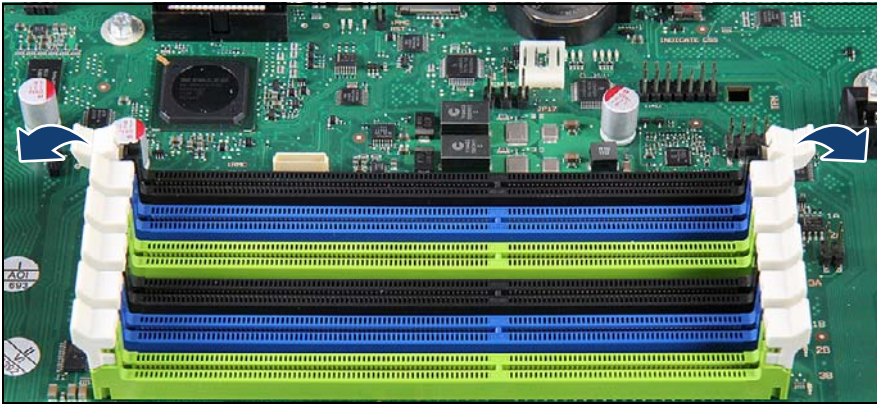


Figure 137: Installing memory modules (A)

- ▶ Press out the securing clip at each end of the memory slot.

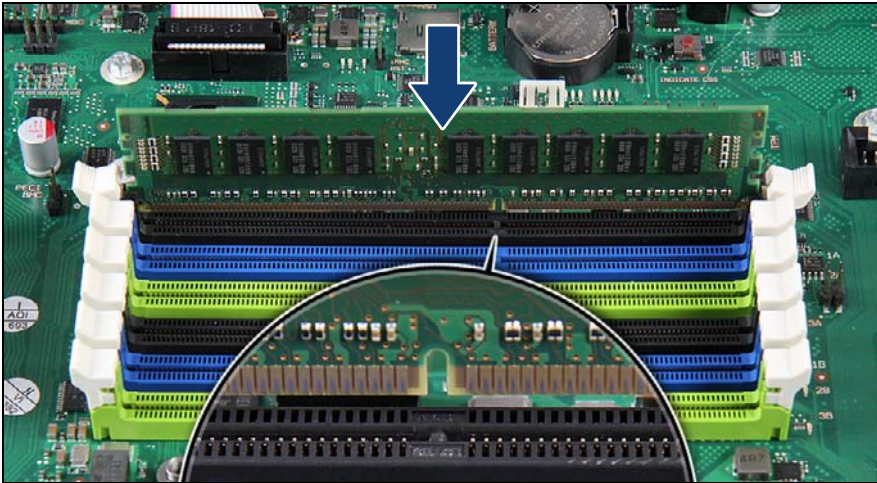


Figure 138: Installing memory modules (B)

- ▶ Align the notch on the bottom of the module with the crossbar in the slot (see close-up).

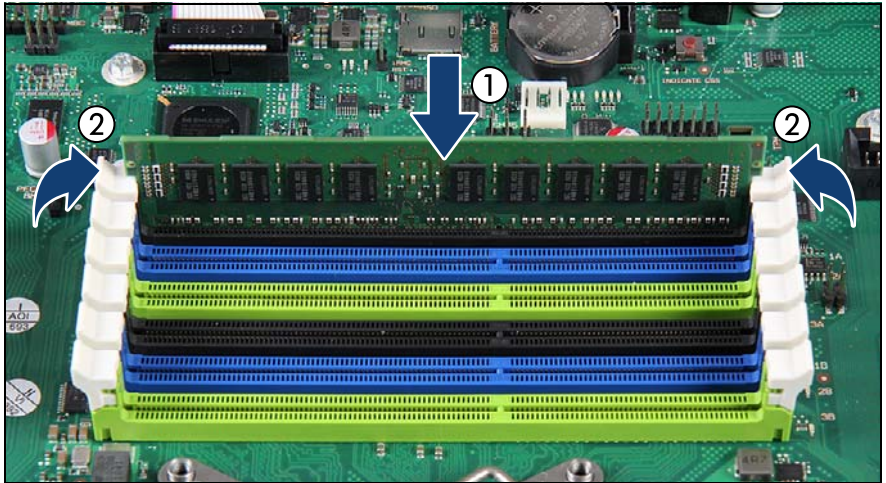


Figure 139: Installing memory modules (C)

- ▶ Press down on the memory module until the securing clips snap into the cutouts at each end of the module.

## 10.2.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling"](#) on page 63
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source"](#) on page 69
- ▶ ["Switching on the server"](#) on page 71
- ▶ ["Updating or recovering the system board BIOS and iRMC"](#) on page 81
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality"](#) on page 89
- ▶ ["Verifying the memory mode"](#) on page 90
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality"](#) on page 95

### 10.3 Removing memory modules



Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)



Hardware: 5 minutes

Tools: tool-less
------------------

#### 10.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

#### 10.3.2 Removing a memory module

- ▶ Identify the desired memory slot see section ["Memory sequence" on page 253](#).



#### CAUTION!

Ensure to maintain an operational configuration when removing memory modules. For additional information, please refer to section ["Basic information" on page 252](#).

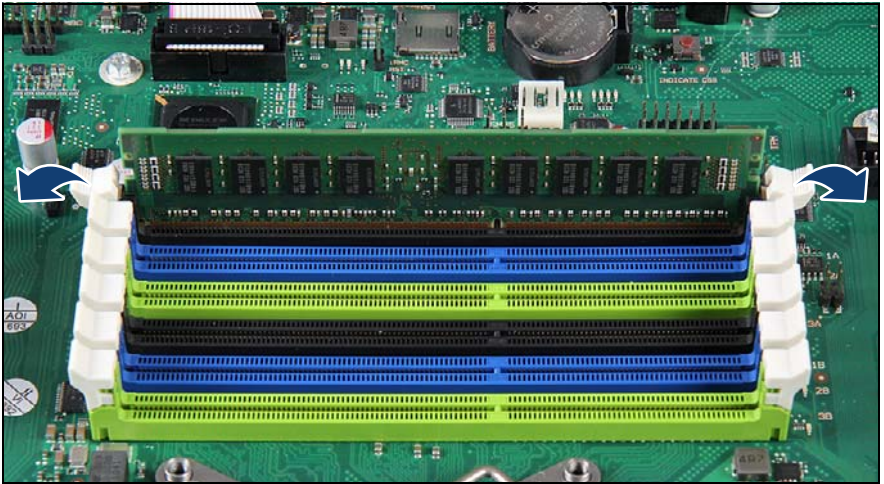


Figure 140: Removing memory modules (A)

- ▶ Eject the desired memory module by pressing out the securing clips at each end of the memory slot.

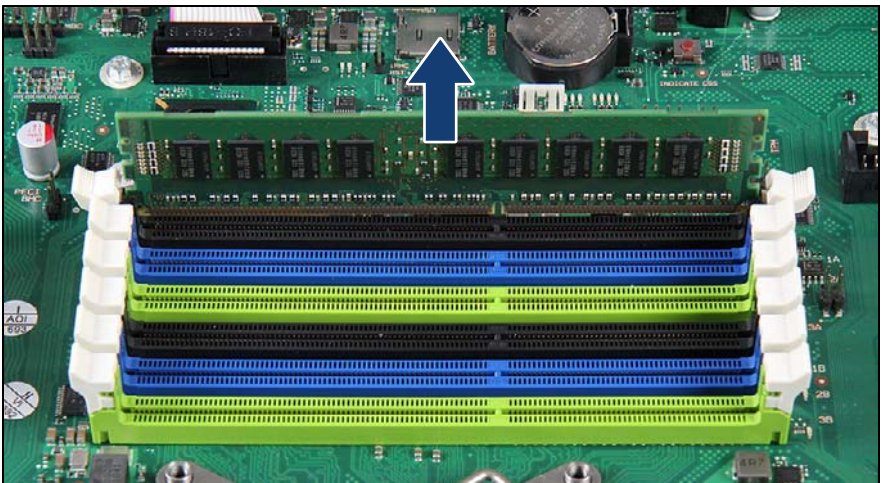


Figure 141: Removing memory modules (B)

- ▶ Remove the ejected memory module.

### 10.3.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Updating or recovering the system board BIOS and iRMC" on page 81](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 10.4 Replacing memory modules



**Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes  
Software: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less

### 10.4.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ Identify the defective memory slot using the server management software.
- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54.](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ Locate the defective memory module using the onboard Local Diagnostic LEDs as described in section ["Onboard indicators and controls" on page 511.](#)

## 10.4.2 Removing the defective memory module

- ▶ Remove the defective memory module as described in section ["Removing a memory module" on page 264](#).

## 10.4.3 Installing a new memory module

- ▶ Install memory module as described in section ["Installing a memory module" on page 261](#).

## 10.4.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Updating or recovering the system board BIOS and iRMC" on page 81](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling replaced components in the system BIOS" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying the memory mode" on page 90](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)



---

# 11 Processors

## Safety notes



### CAUTION!

- Do not install unsupported processors. For further information on supported processors, refer to section ["Basic information" on page 270](#).
- Circuit boards and soldered parts of internal options are exposed and can be damaged by static electricity. Always discharge static build-up (e.g. by touching a grounded object) before handling electrostatic-sensitive devices (ESDs)
- Do not touch the circuitry on boards or soldered parts. Hold circuit boards by their metallic areas or edges.
- When removing or installing processors, be careful not to touch or bend the spring contacts on the processor sockets.
- Never touch the underside of the processors. Even minor soiling such as grease from the skin can impair the processor's operation or destroy the processors.
- For further information, please refer to chapter ["Important information" on page 39](#).

# 11.1 Basic information

The system board D2939 offers two sockets for Intel Xeon processors.

## 11.1.1 Supported processors

- Intel Xeon E5-2600 processor series CPUs
- Socket type: LGA 2011 package
- Thermal Design Power (TDP) class: up to 130 W

## 11.1.2 Processor locations

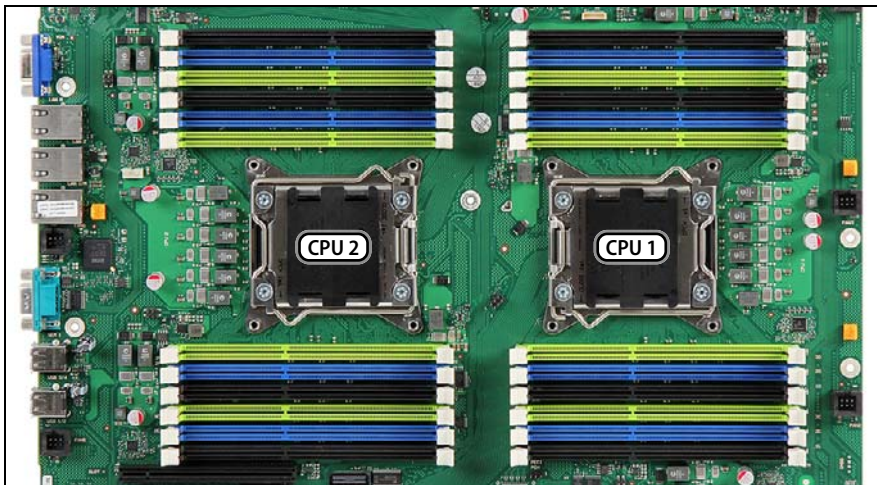


Figure 142: CPU locations on system board D2939

## 11.2 Installing processors



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 15 minutes**  
**Software: 5 minutes**

**Tool:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver



### **CAUTION!**

Processors are extremely sensitive to electrostatic discharge and must be handled with care. After a processor has been removed from its protective sleeve or from its socket, place it upside down on a nonconducting, antistatic surface. Never push a processor over a surface.

### 11.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57.c](#)

### 11.2.2 Installing the processor



This description applies to the following procedures:

- Installing the second CPU in a mono-processor configuration
- Transferring a CPU after replacing the system board (see section ["Swapping processors" on page 450](#))

### 11.2.2.1 Opening the load plate

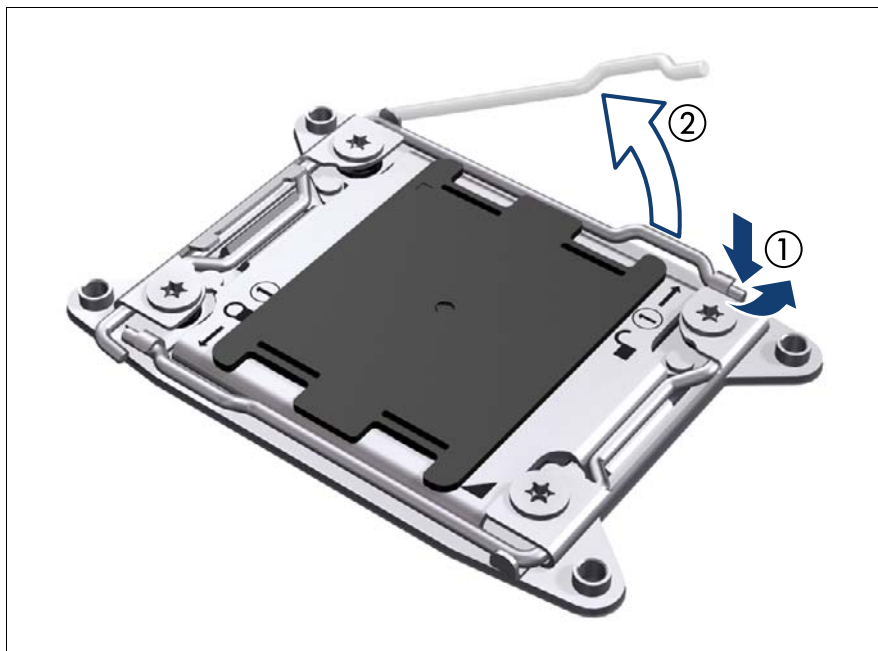


Figure 143: Opening socket release lever 1

- ▶ Unlatch the socket release lever marked *Open 1st* by pushing it down and away from the socket (1).
- ▶ The socket release lever will slightly lift up (2).

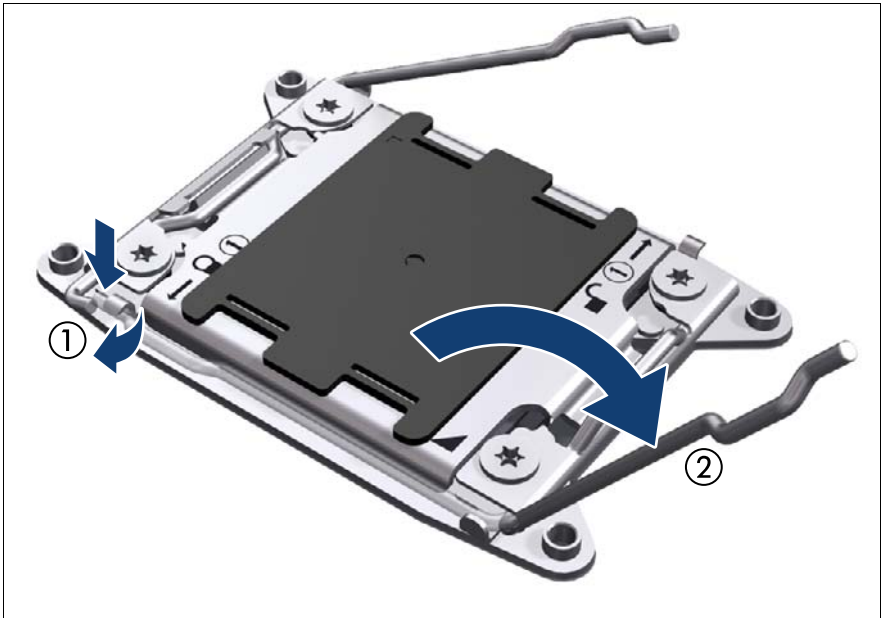


Figure 144: Opening socket release lever 2

- ▶ Unlatch the socket release lever marked *Close Ist* by pushing it down and away from the socket (1).
- ▶ Fully fold back the second socket release lever (2).

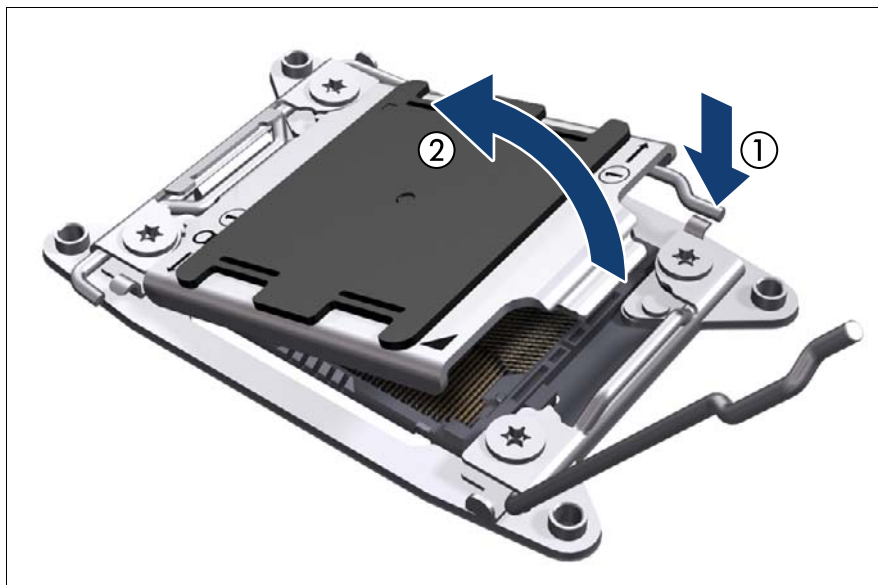


Figure 145: Opening the load plate (A)

- ▶ Push down on the first socket release lever (1) to lift the load plate away from the socket (2).

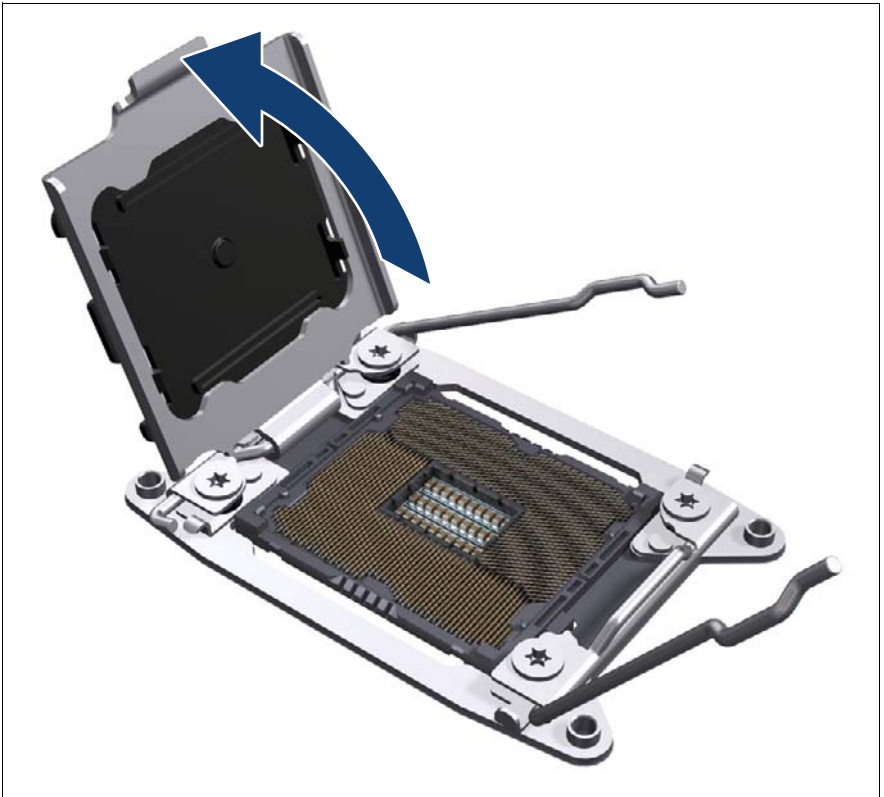


Figure 146: Opening the load plate (B)

- ▶ Fully open the load plate.



**CAUTION!**

Be careful not to touch or bend the spring contacts on the processor socket!

- ▶ Make sure that the load plate is in the fully open position.
- ▶ Use a magnifying glass (recommended) to inspect the socket spring contacts for damages from different angles. Do not use the spare system board if any irregularities are visible. Possible damages:
  - Contact spring is bent backwards upon itself
  - Contact spring tip position is shifted or out of alignment



### CAUTION!

Never not try to fix bent contact springs. Doing so may result in loss of electrical performance and reliability.

#### 11.2.2.2 Installing the new processor

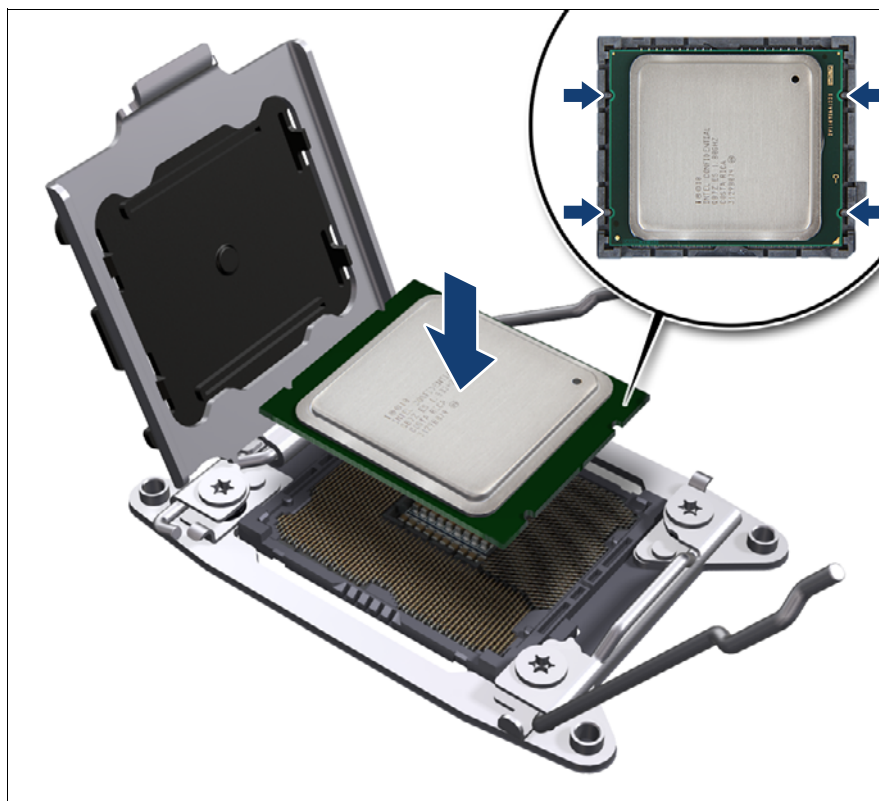


Figure 147: Installing the processor

- ▶ Hold the processor with your thumb and index finger.
- ▶ Make sure that the four notches on the processor align with the posts on the socket (see close-up).
- ▶ Lower the processor straight down without tilting or sliding it in the socket.

**CAUTION!**

- Ensure that the processor is level in the socket.
- Be careful not to touch or bend the pins on the processor socket.
- Never touch the underside of the processor. Even minor soiling such as grease from the skin can impair the processor's operation or destroy the processor.
- Ensure not to scrape or dent the processor edges.

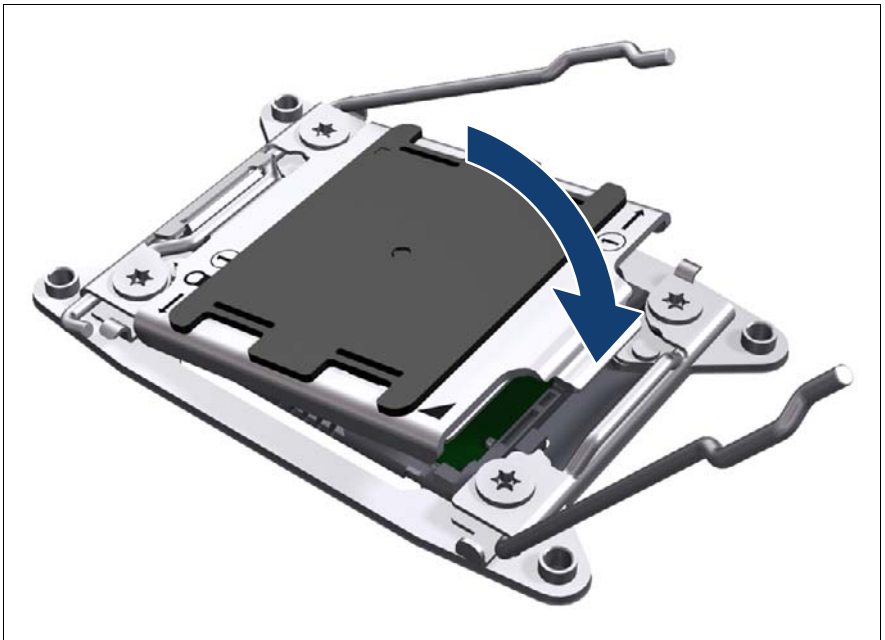
**11.2.2.3 Removing the protective socket cover**

Figure 148: Closing the load plate

- ▶ Carefully lower the load plate over the processor.

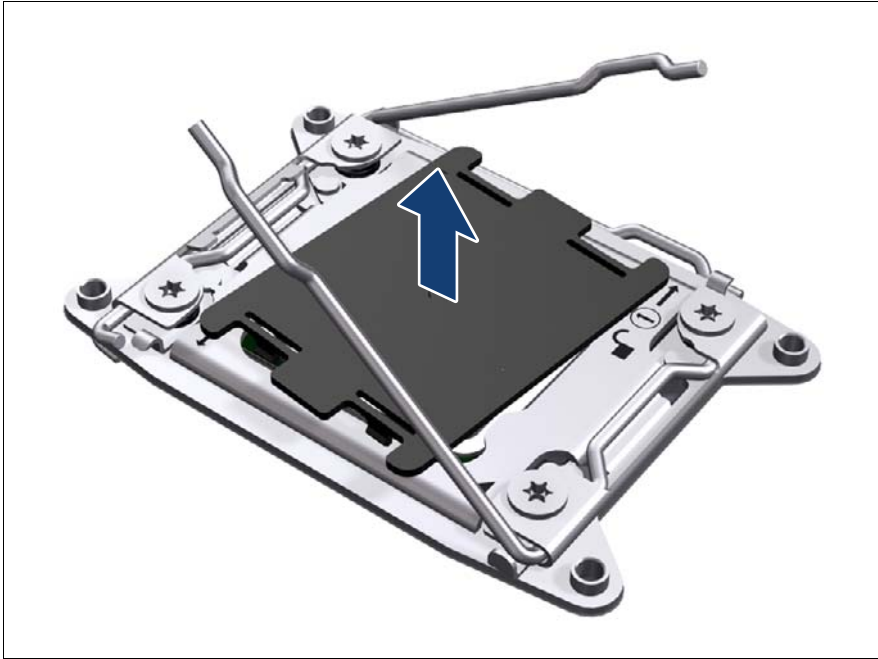


Figure 149: Removing the protective socket cover

- ▶ When closing the load plate, the protective socket cover will automatically detach.
- ▶ Remove the protective cover and save it for future use.



**CAUTION!**

Always replace the protective cover if you remove the processor from the socket!

#### 11.2.2.4 Closing the load plate

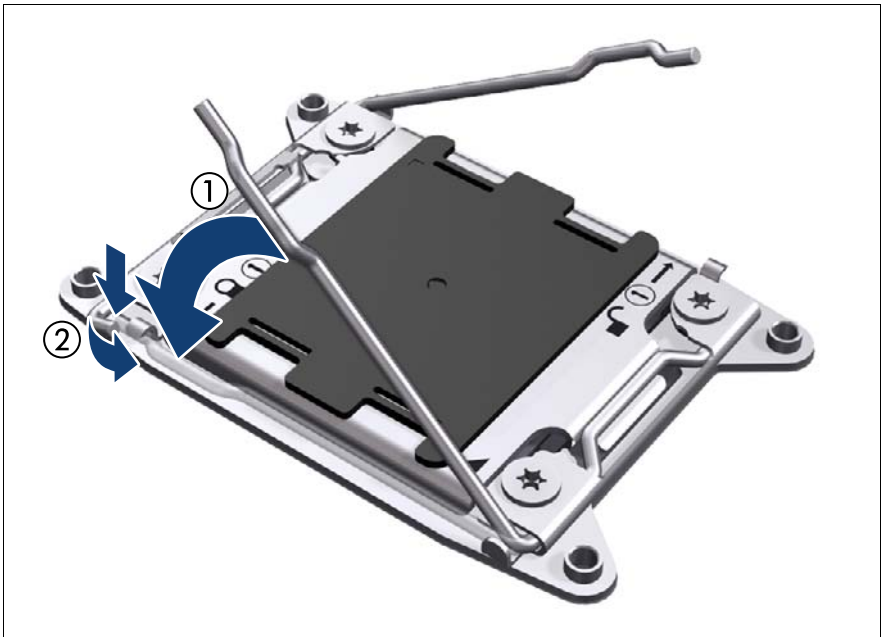


Figure 150: Closing socket release lever 2

- ▶ Fully close and hold shut the load plate.
- ▶ Close the socket release lever marked *Close 1st* (1) and latch it under the load plate retention tab to lock down the load plate (2).

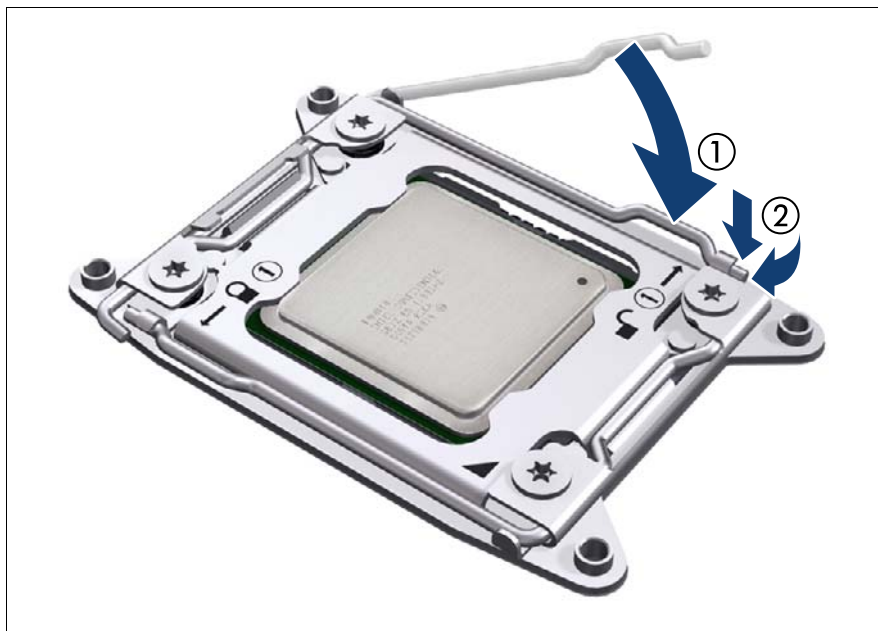


Figure 151: Closing socket release lever 1

- ▶ Close the socket release lever marked *Open 1st* (1) and latch it under the load plate retention tab (2).
- ▶ If applicable, install the second processor accordingly.

### 11.2.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing processor heat sinks" on page 294](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Updating or recovering the system board BIOS and iRMC" on page 81](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 11.3 Removing processors



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 15 minutes**  
**Software: 5 minutes**

**Tool:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 11.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing processor heat sinks" on page 299](#)

### 11.3.2 Removing a processor



This description applies to the following procedures:

- Removing CPU 2 from a dual-processor configuration
- Removing CPUs from a defective system board (see section ["Swapping processors" on page 450](#))
- ▶ Remove the desired processor heat sink as described in section ["Removing processor heat sinks" on page 299](#).

### 11.3.2.1 Opening the load plate

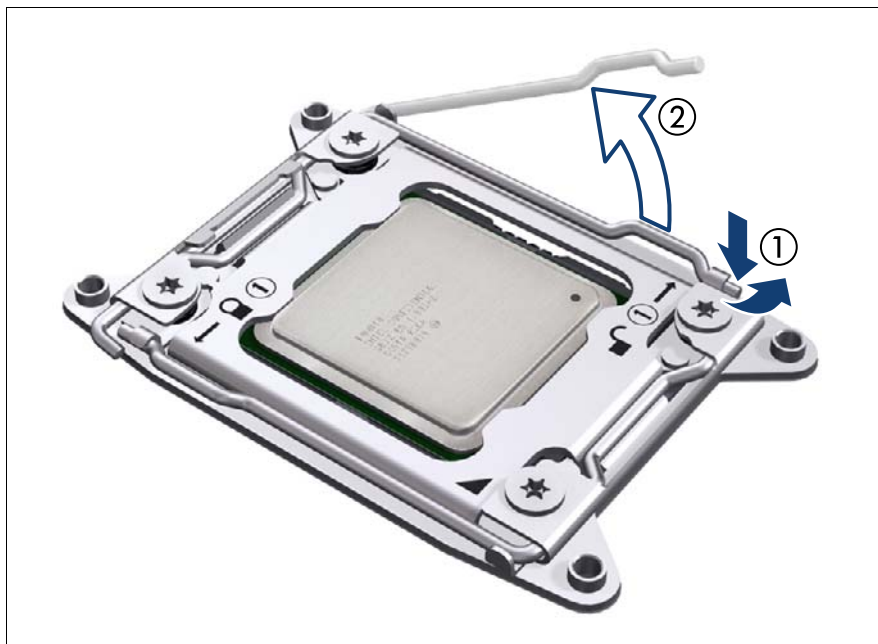


Figure 152: Opening socket release lever 1

- ▶ Unlatch the socket release lever marked *Open Ist* by pushing it down and away from the socket (1).
- ▶ The socket release lever will slightly lift up (2).

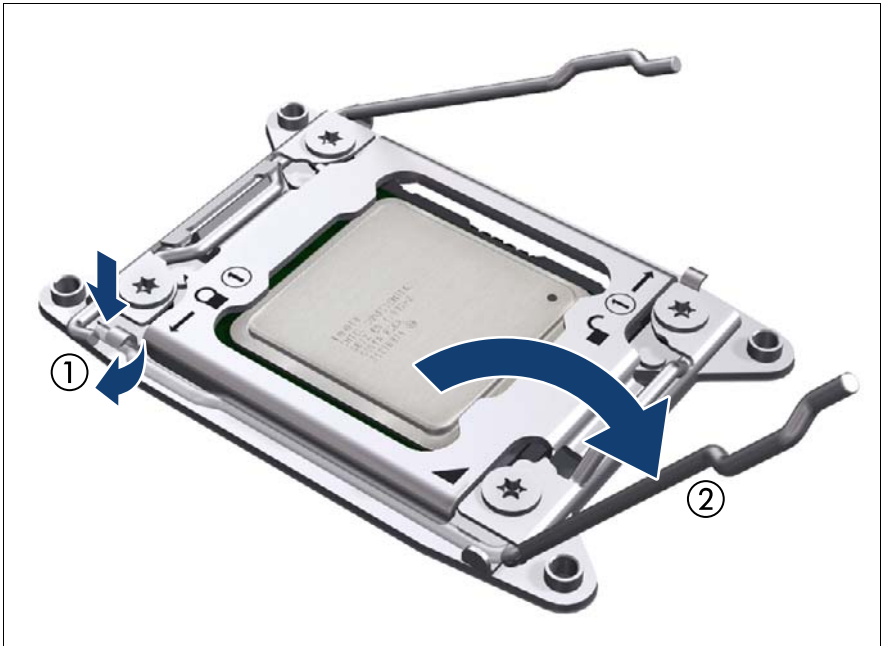


Figure 153: Opening socket release lever 2

- ▶ Unlatch the socket release lever marked *Close 1st* by pushing it down and away from the socket (1).
- ▶ Fully fold back the second socket release lever (2).

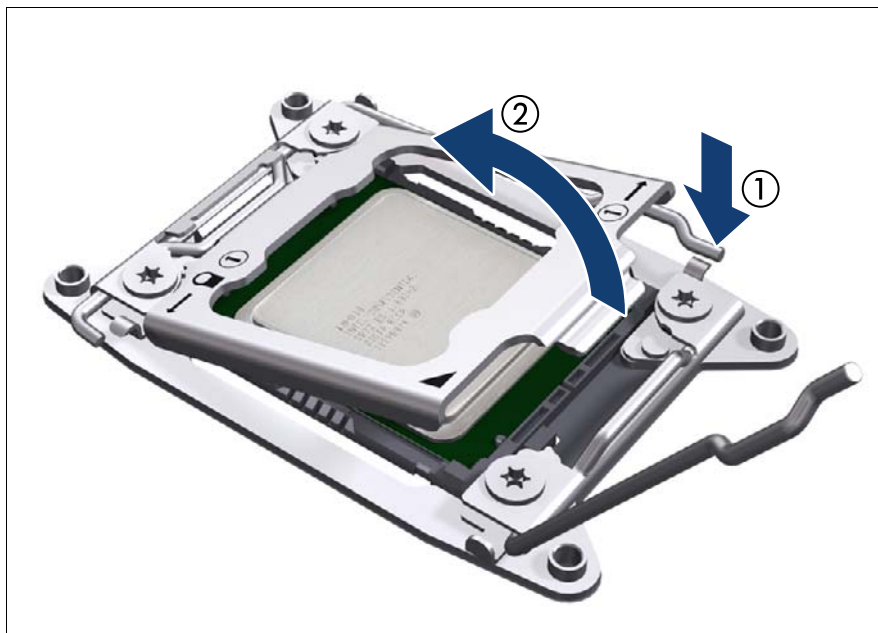


Figure 154: Opening the load plate (A)

- ▶ Push down on the socket release lever marked *Open 1st* (1) to lift the load plate away from the socket (2).



Figure 155: Opening the load plate (B)

- ▶ Fully open the load plate.

### 11.3.2.2 Removing the processor

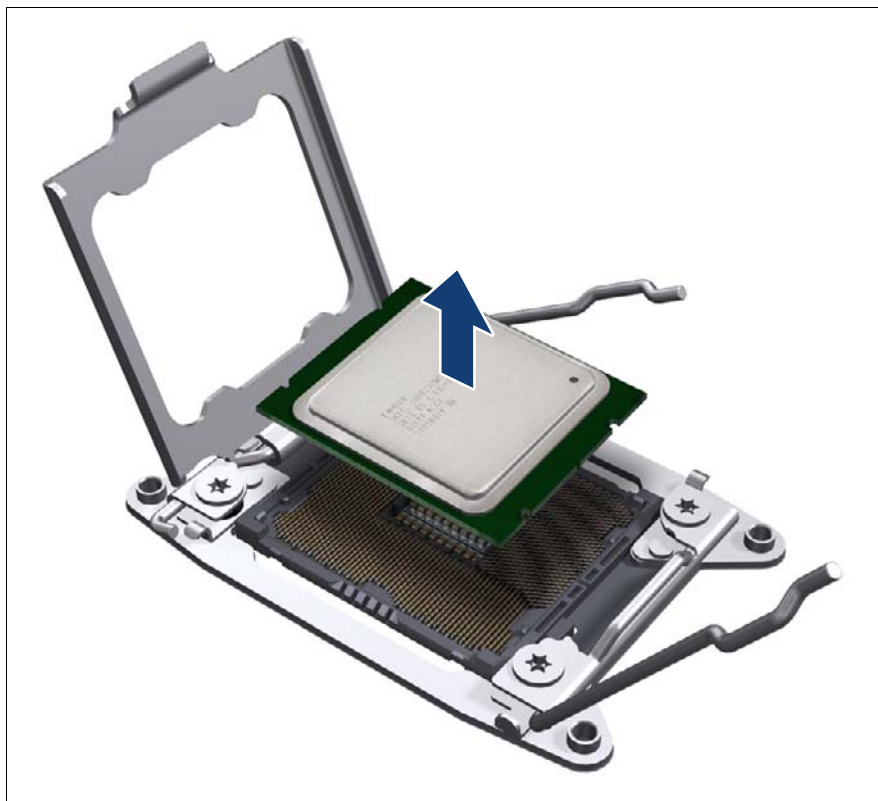


Figure 156: Removing the processor

- ▶ Carefully remove the defective processor from its socket in a vertical motion.



#### **CAUTION!**

Be careful not to touch or bend the spring contacts on the processor socket.

- ▶ Thoroughly clean residual thermal paste from the processor surface using a lint-free cloth.

- ▶ Store the processor in a safe place for later reuse.

**CAUTION!**

Processors are extremely sensitive to electrostatic discharge and must be handled with care. After a processor has been removed from its protective sleeve or from its socket, place it upside down on a nonconducting, antistatic surface. Never push a processor over a surface.

### 11.3.2.3 Closing the load plate

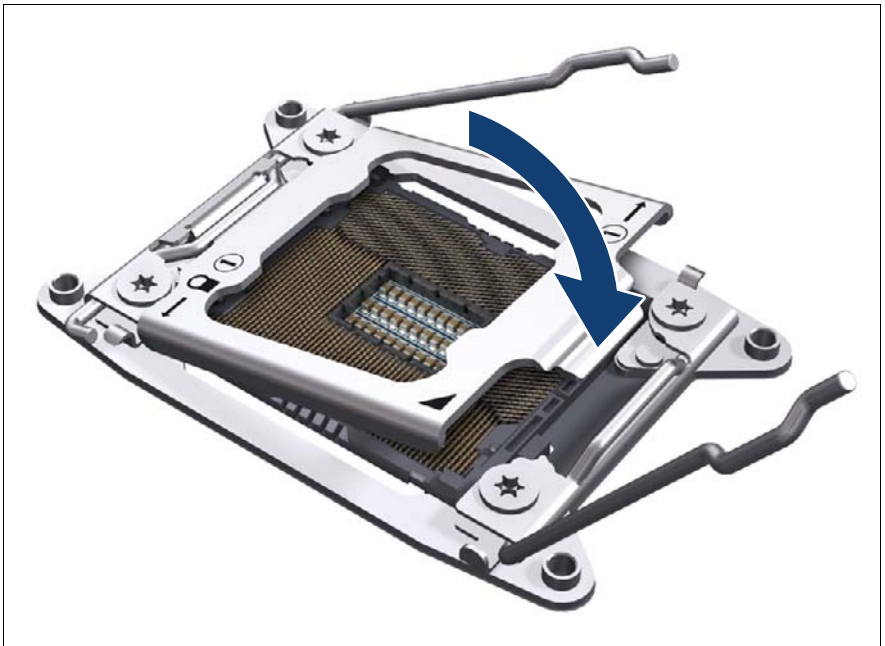


Figure 157: Closing the load plate

- ▶ Carefully close the load plate over the empty processor socket.

**CAUTION!**

Be careful not to touch or bend the spring contacts on the processor socket.

### 11.3.2.4 Installing the protective cover

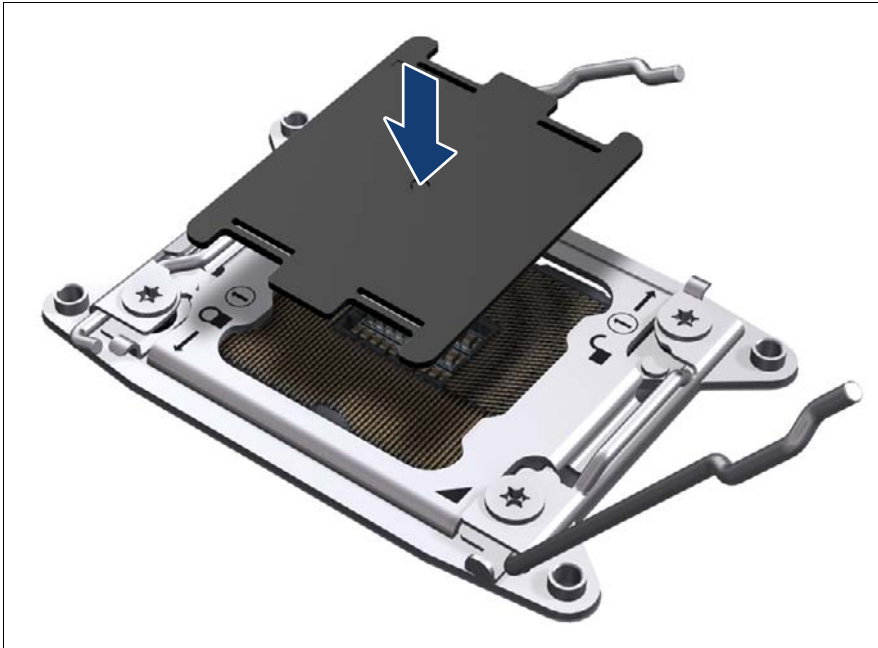


Figure 158: Attaching the protective socket cover (A)

- ▶ Carefully lower the protective socket cover onto the CPU socket in a vertical motion until it snaps in place.



#### **CAUTION!**

Always attach the protective socket cover if you remove the processor from the socket!

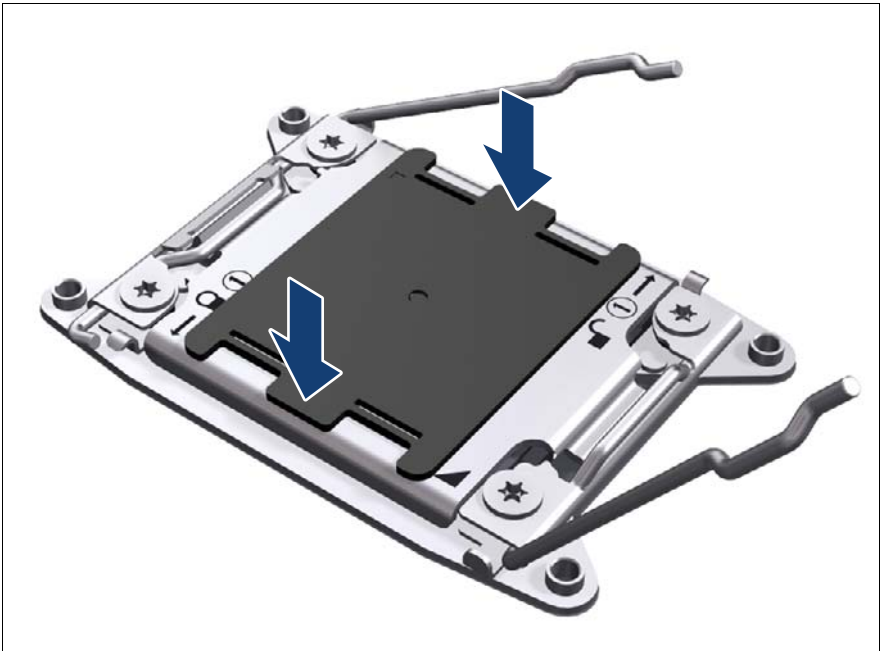


Figure 159: Attaching the protective socket cover (B)

- ▶ Ensure that the protective socket cover is properly installed on the socket as shown above.

### 11.3.2.5 Closing the load plate

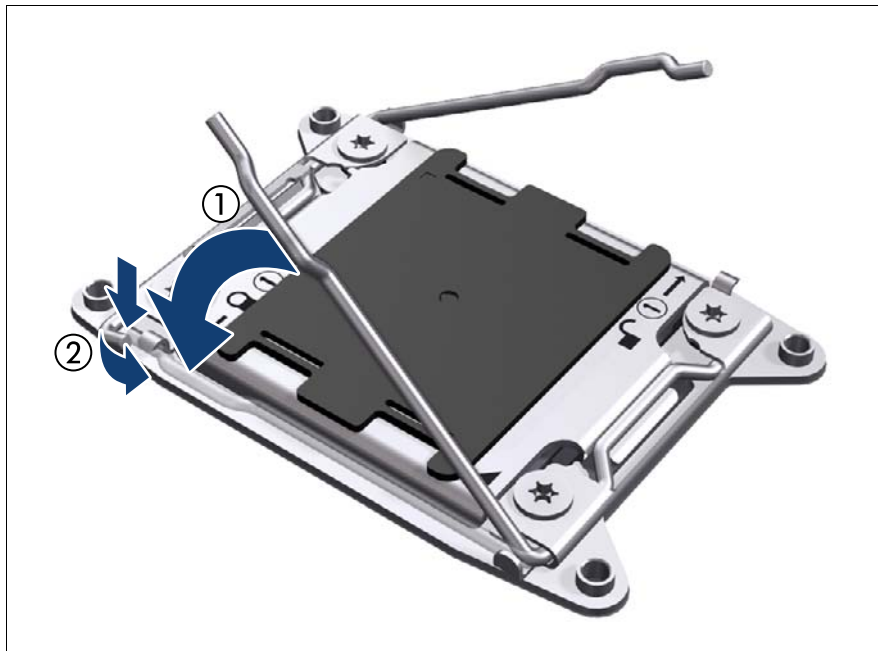


Figure 160: Closing socket release lever 2

- ▶ Fully close and hold shut the load plate.
- ▶ Close the socket release lever marked *Close 1st* (1) and latch it under the load plate retention tab to lock down the load plate (2).

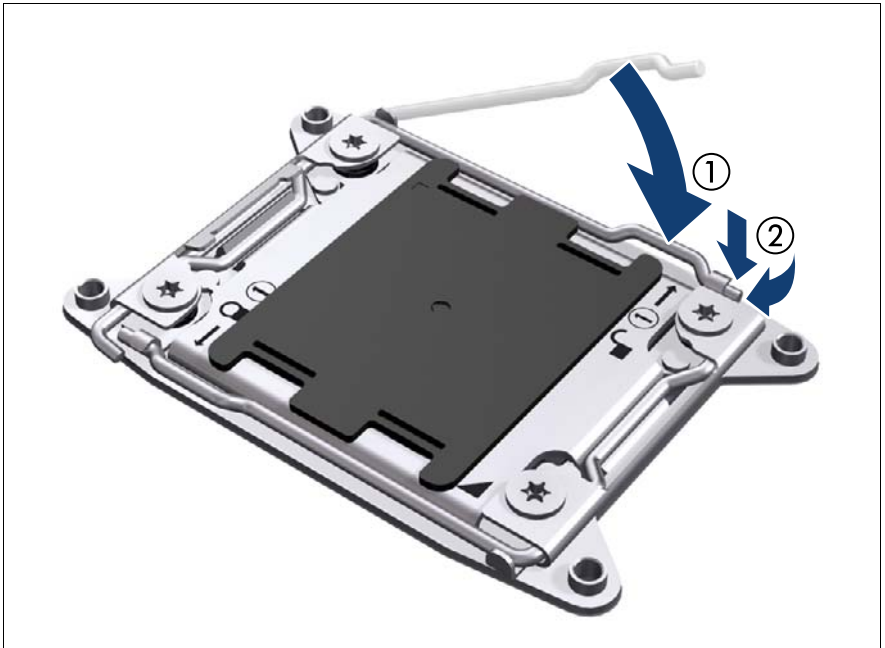


Figure 161: Closing socket release lever 1

- ▶ Close the socket release lever marked *Open 1st* (1) and latch it under the load plate retention tab (2).

### 11.3.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ If applicable, ["Updating or recovering the system board BIOS and iRMC" on page 81](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

# 11.4 Upgrading or replacing processors



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 15 minutes**  
**Software: 5 minutes**

**Tool:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver



### CAUTION!

Processors are extremely sensitive to electrostatic discharge and must be handled with care. After a processor has been removed from its protective sleeve or from its socket, place it upside down on a nonconducting, antistatic surface. Never push a processor over a surface.

## 11.4.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing processor heat sinks" on page 299](#)

## 11.4.2 Upgrading or replacing a processor



This description applies to the following procedures:

- Installing the second processor in a single-processor configuration
- Transferring a processor after replacing the system board (see section ["Replacing the system board" on page 443](#))
- In case of installing a second processor remove the protective cover as described in section ["Opening the load plate" on page 272](#)

- Remove the desired processor as described in section ["Removing the processor" on page 286](#).
- Install the new processor as described in section ["Installing the new processor" on page 276](#).

### 11.4.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing processor heat sinks" on page 294](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)



If Global Error LED is flashing with error message CPU has been changed on display after the system is powered on, please follow the procedure below.

- ▶ Restart your server.
- ▶ As soon as the startup screen appears, press the **[F2]** function key to enter the BIOS.  
If a password is assigned, enter the password and press **[Enter]**.
- ▶ Select the *Save & Exit* menu.
- ▶ Select *Save Changes and Exit* or *Save Changes and Reset*.
- ▶ Verify that the LED stops flashing.
- ▶ If applicable, ["Updating or recovering the system board BIOS and iRMC" on page 81](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 11.5 Handling processor heat sinks



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**  
if thermal paste is involved



**Hardware: 15 minutes**



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**

**Tool:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 11.5.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

### 11.5.2 Installing processor heat sinks



Figure 162: Standard processor heat sink V26898-B977-V1



Figure 163: High performance processor heat sink V26898-B977-V3

Two different processor heat sinks are available for the RX300 S8 servers:

Standard heat sink	V26898-B977-V1	for CPUs with a TDP of up to 130 W
High performance heat sink	V26898-B977-V3	for CPUs with a TDP of 135 W and up

### 11.5.2.1 Preparing the heat sink and processor

#### When installing a new heat sink

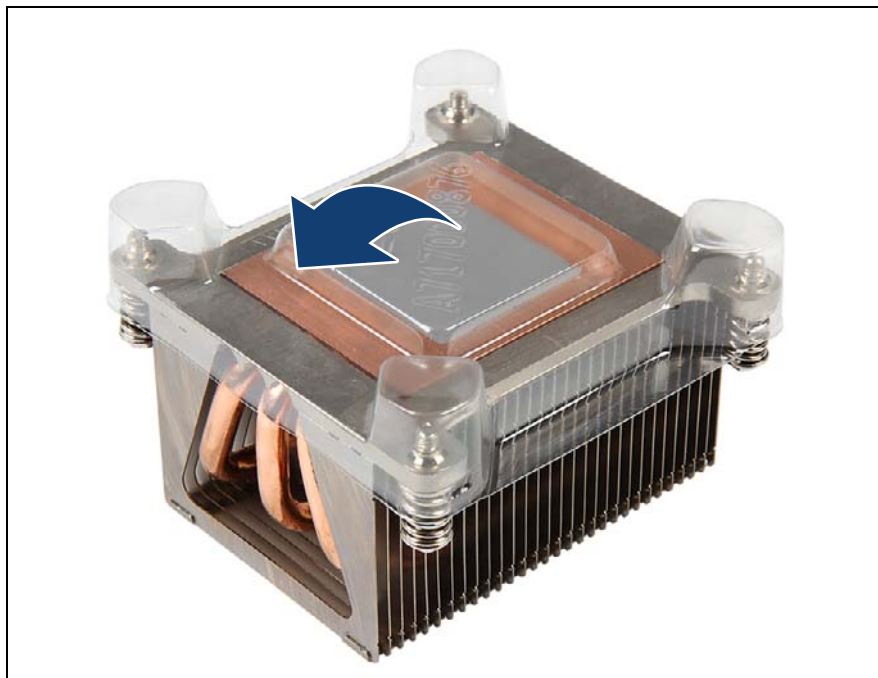


Figure 164: Removing the protective heat sink cover

- ▶ Remove the protective cover from the heat sink.



#### **CAUTION!**

Ensure not to touch the heat-conductive paste on the bottom of the heat sink.

#### When reusing a heat sink

- ▶ Ensure that all residual thermal paste has been thoroughly cleaned off the copper surface of the heat sink.
- ▶ Apply thermal paste to the processor surface as described in section ["Applying thermal paste" on page 302.](#)

### 11.5.2.2 Installing the heat sink

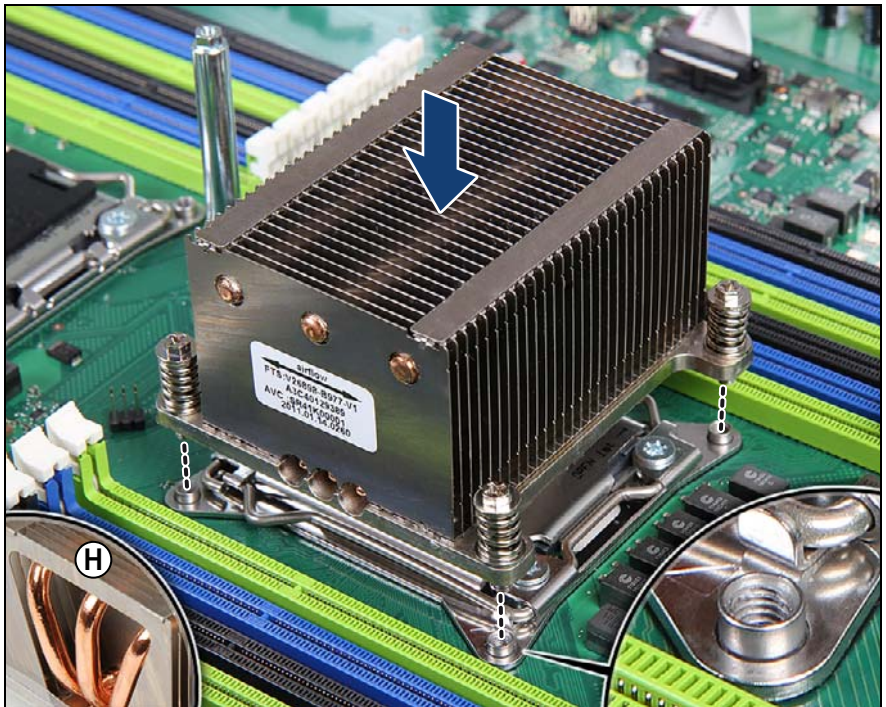


Figure 165: Installing the heat sink (A)

- ▶ Align the heat sink with the uncovered copper heat pipes (H, see above) facing towards the PSU.
- ▶ Carefully seat the heat sink on the four threaded holes as shown (see close-up).



#### CAUTION!

- Ensure that the screws on the heat sink are properly seated on the threaded holes.
- Ensure that the heat sink cooling fins match the direction of the airflow!

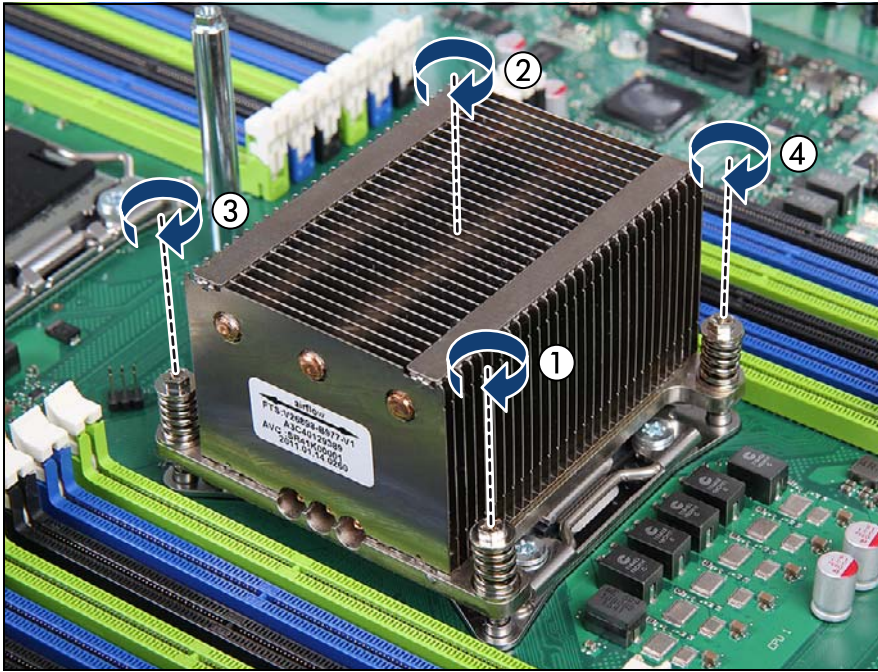


Figure 166: Installing the heat sink (B)

- ▶ Fasten the four captive screws on the heat sink in a crossover pattern (screw torque: 1.0 Nm, not applicable for the Japanese market) (1-4).

### 11.5.3 Removing processor heat sinks

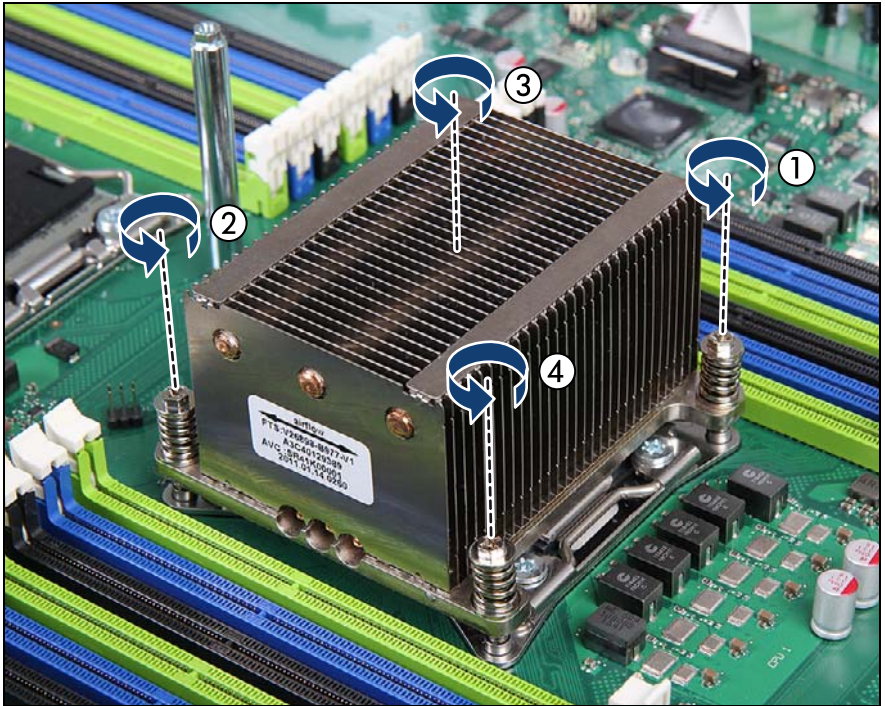


Figure 167: Removing the processor heat sink (A)

- ▶ Loosen the four captive screws on the heat sink in a crossover pattern (1-4).

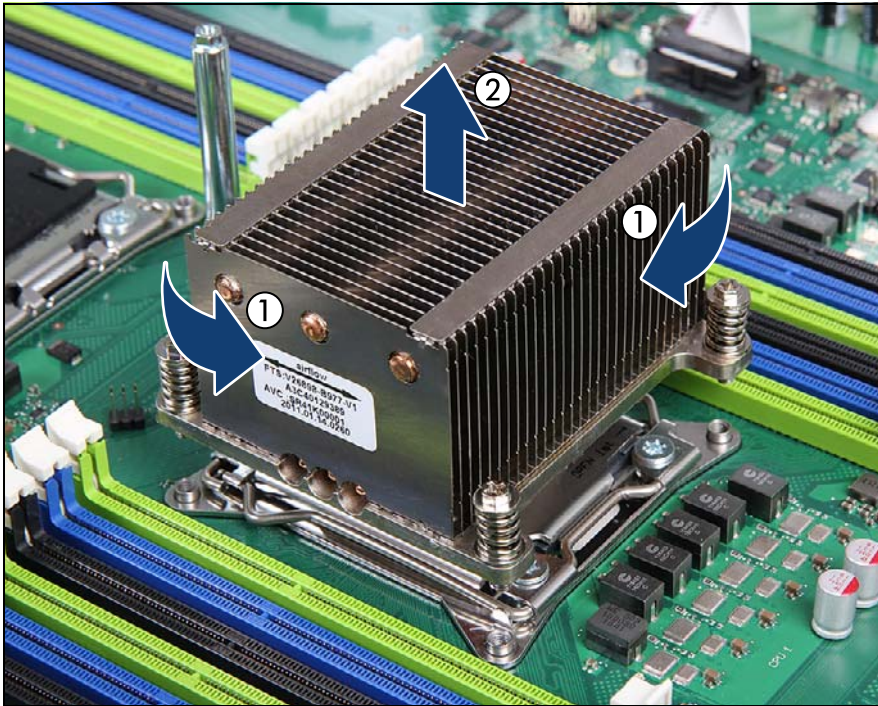


Figure 168: Removing the processor heat sink (B)

- ▶ Carefully turn the heat sink back and forth to detach it from the processor (1).



This may be necessary due to the adhesive quality of the thermal paste located between the heat sink and processor.



**CAUTION!**

Pay special attention not to damage any system board components surrounding the processor socket.

- ▶ Lift the heat sink out of the chassis (2).
- ▶ Thoroughly clean residual thermal paste from the surface of the heat sink and the processor using a lint-free cloth.

## 11.5.4 Replacing processor heat sinks

### 11.5.4.1 Removing the processor heat sink

- ▶ Remove the processor heat sink as described in section ["Removing processor heat sinks" on page 299](#).

### 11.5.4.2 Applying thermal paste

- ▶ Apply thermal paste to the processor surface as described in section ["Applying thermal paste" on page 302](#).



If the processor upgrade or replacement kit contains a new CPU heat sink, a thin layer of thermal compound has already been pre-applied to its lower surface. In this case, please proceed with section ["Installing the heat sink" on page 297](#).

### 11.5.4.3 Installing the processor heat sink

- ▶ Install the processor heat sink as described in sections ["Preparing the heat sink and processor" on page 296](#) and ["Installing the heat sink" on page 297](#).

## 11.5.5 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)

## 11.6 Applying thermal paste



Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)



Hardware: 5 minutes

Tool: tool-less



- For the Japanese market, the service engineer must follow the instruction provided separately.
- If the processor upgrade or replacement kit contains a new CPU heat sink, a thin layer of thermal compound has already been pre-applied to its lower surface. In this case, please proceed with section ["Installing processor heat sinks" on page 294](#).

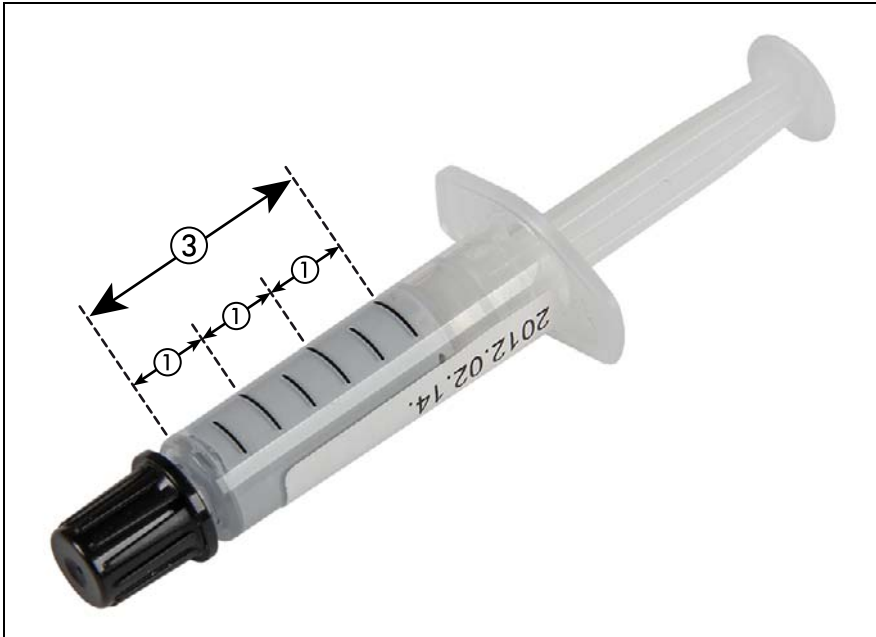


Figure 169: Thermal paste syringe TC-5026

One thermal compound syringe (A3C40142460 / 34035576) contains thermal paste for three processors.

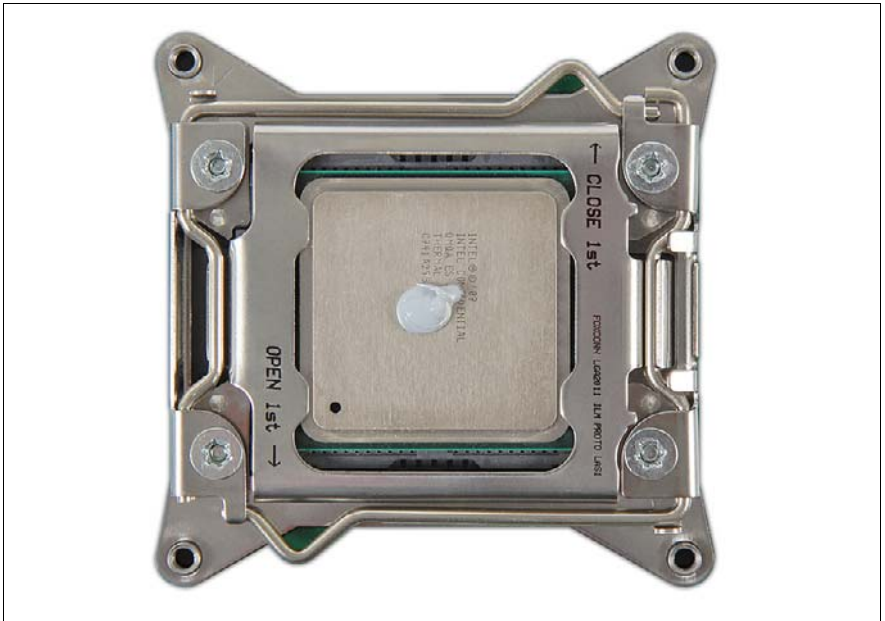


Figure 170: Applying thermal paste

- ▶ Apply a dot of thermal paste to the center of the processor surface as shown.



Two graduation marks on the syringe equal the correct amount of thermal paste for one processor.



**CAUTION!**

Do not mix different types of thermal paste.



---

## 12 Accessible drives

### Safety notes



#### CAUTION!

- Before installing an accessible drive, acquaint yourself with the drive's user documentation.
- When inserting an accessible drive into the server, ensure not to pinch or strain any connected cables.
- When installing an accessible drive, hold it by its sides. Applying force to the top of the casing may cause failures.
- When disposing of, transferring, or returning a backup drive, ensure that all backup media has been removed from the drive.
- Do not touch the circuitry on boards or soldered parts. Hold circuit boards by their metallic areas or edges.
- Circuit boards and soldered parts of internal options are exposed and can be damaged by static electricity. Always discharge static build-up (e.g. by touching a grounded object) before handling electrostatic-sensitive devices (ESDs).
- For further safety information, please refer to chapter ["Important information" on page 39](#).

## 12.1 Basic informations

### Mounting order for accessible drives in the front panel cage

PRIMERGY RX300 S8 server offers one 5.25-inch accessible drive bays for optical disk drives and backup drives:



Figure 171: Accessible drives in front panel cage

No.	Accessible drive	Bay	Max. no.
1	Local Service Display	3.5-inch bay	1
2	Optical disk drive	5.25 inch bay	1

### Mounting order for accessible drives in the HDD bays

PRIMERGY RX300 S8 server offers several possibilities to install tape drives:



Figure 172: Accessible drive in HDD bays for 3.5-inch HDD version



Figure 173: Accessible drive (LTO) in HDD bays for 2.5-in HDD version

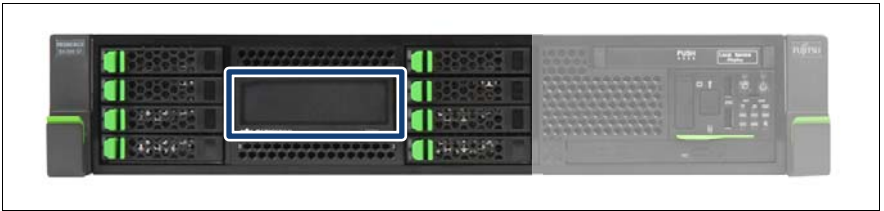


Figure 174: Accessible drive (tape/RDX) in HDD bay for 2.5-in HDD version

## 12.2 Installing a Local Service Display (LSD) module



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less

### 12.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

## 12.2.2 Removing the LSD dummy cover

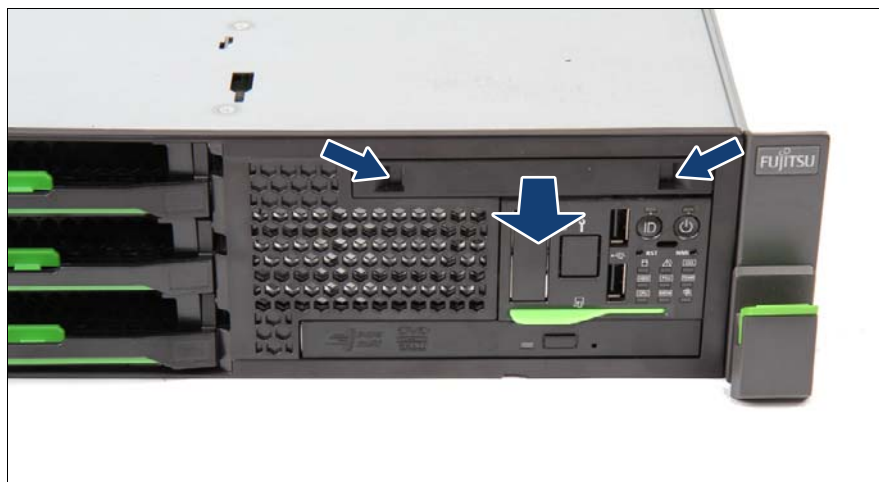


Figure 175: Removing the LSD dummy cover

- ▶ Take the LSD dummy cover by the two recessed grips and pull out the LSD dummy cover.



### **CAUTION!**

Save the LSD dummy cover for future use.

Always replace dummy covers into unused drive bays to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements.

### 12.2.3 Installing a LSD module



Figure 176: Installing the LSD module

- ▶ Insert the LSD module into the bay and push in until it locks in place.

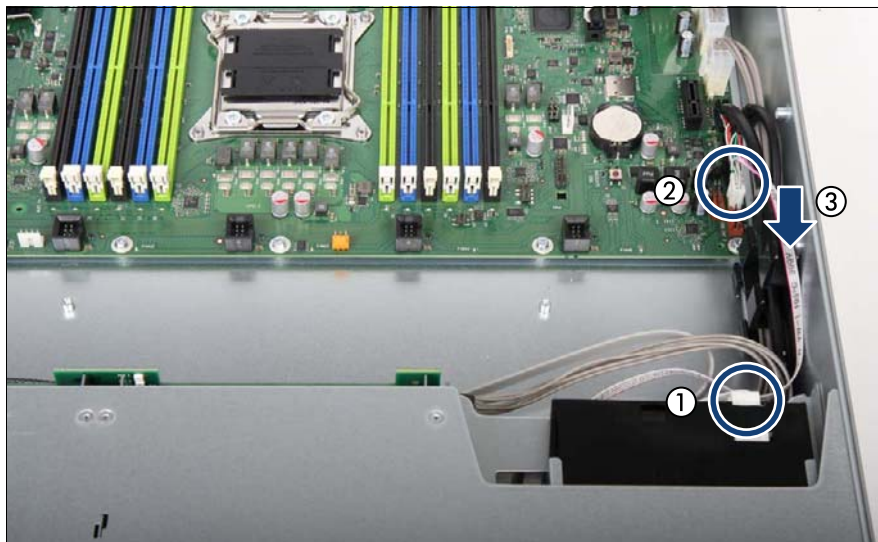


Figure 177: Installing the LSD module

- ▶ Connect the LSD cable to the LSD module (1).
- ▶ Connect the LSD cable to the connector SMB1 of the system board (2).
- ▶ Route the LSD cable through the upper cable guide (3).

### 12.2.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.3 Removing a LSD module



Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)



Hardware: 10 minutes

**Tools:** tool-less

### 12.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 12.3.2 Removing the LSD module

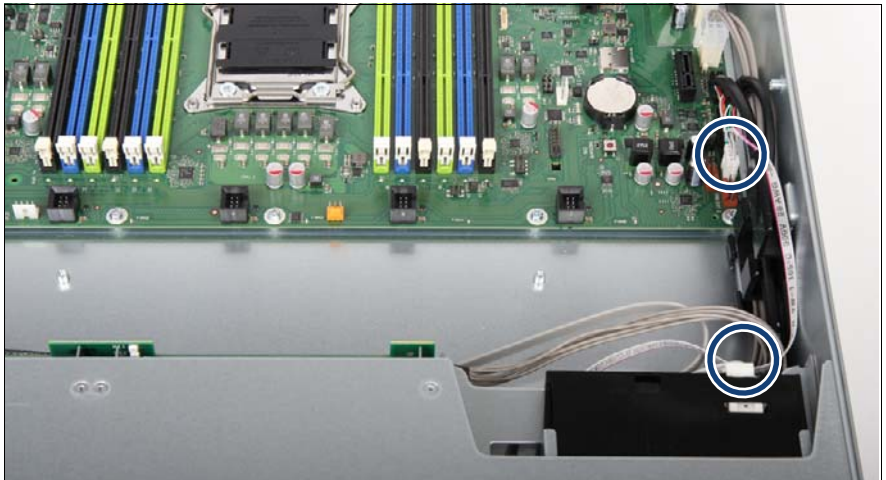


Figure 178: Removing the LSD cable

## Accessible drives

---

- ▶ Remove the LSD cable from the LSD module (1) and the connector on the system board (2).

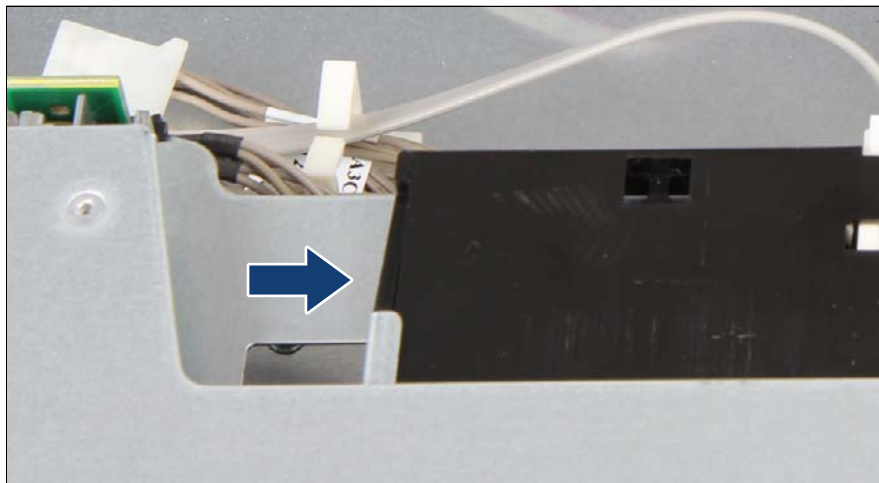


Figure 179: Unlocking the LSD module

- ▶ Press in on the locking latch to disengage the LSD module.



Figure 180: Unlocking the LSD module

- ▶ Pull the LSD module out of the bay.



Figure 181: Insert the LSD dummy cover

- ▶ Insert the LSD dummy cover into the bay.

### 12.3.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.4 Replacing a LSD module



**Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less

### 12.4.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 12.4.2 Removing the defective LSD module

- ▶ ["Removing the LSD module" on page 311](#)

### 12.4.3 Installing the new LSD module

- ▶ ["Installing a LSD module" on page 309](#)

### 12.4.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.5 Installing the optical disk drive (ODD)



**Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH0 / (+) No. 0 screw driver

## 12.5.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ "Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73
- ▶ "Shutting down the server" on page 54
- ▶ "Disconnecting power cords" on page 54
- ▶ "Getting access to the component" on page 57
- ▶ "Removing the fan box" on page 164

## 12.5.2 Removing the ODD dummy module

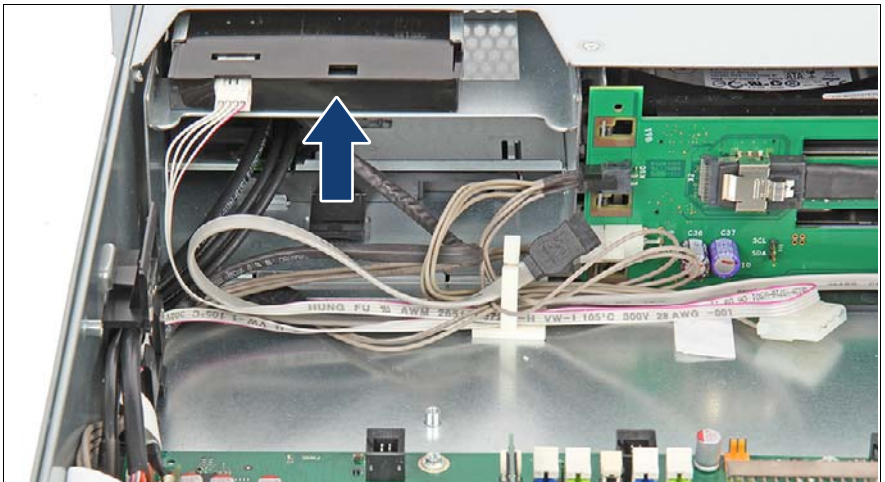


Figure 182: Removing the ODD dummy module

- ▶ Pull the locking latch upward to unlock the ODD dummy module.



### CAUTION!

Save the ODD dummy module for future use.

Always replace dummy modules into unused drive bays to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements.

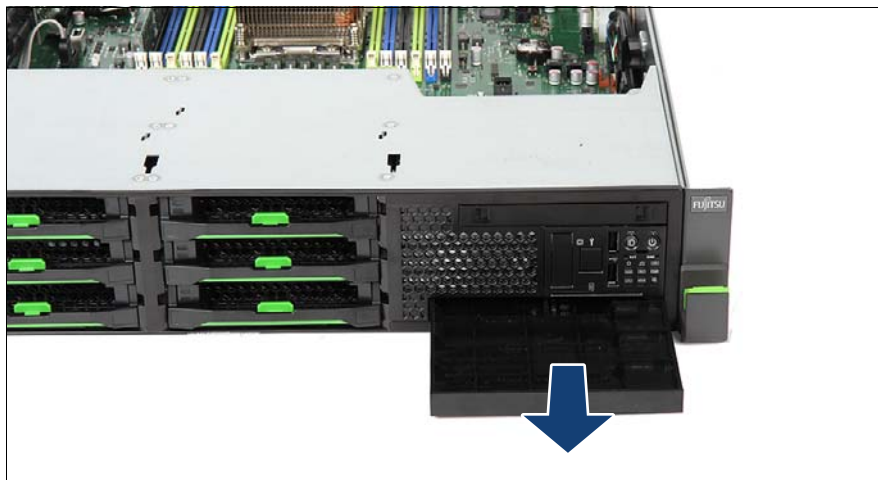


Figure 183: Removing the dummy module

- ▶ Pull the ODD dummy module out.

### 12.5.3 Preparing an ODD



Figure 184: Location for the unused ODD holder

- ▶ Take the ODD holder from its place on the bottom of the front panel module.

**i** For the Japanese market: You can find the ODD holder in the delivered accessory kit.



Figure 185: Installing the ODD holder

- ▶ Mount the ODD holder to the ODD (1) and secure it with two screws (2).

## 12.5.4 Installing an ODD



Figure 186: Installing the ODD

- ▶ Run the SATA and power cables through the ODD bay opening as shown.
- ▶ Connect the SATA cable to the ODD (1).
- ▶ Connect the power cable to the ODD (2)
- ▶ Insert the ODD into the bay and push in until it locks in place (3).

## 12.5.5 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.6 Removing the optical disc drive (ODD)



Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)



Hardware: 10 minutes

**Tools:** Phillips PH0 / (+) No. 0 screw driver

### 12.6.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ Ask the system administrator to eject all remaining backup or optical media from the backup or optical disk drive before removing it from the server.
- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

## 12.6.2 Removing the ODD

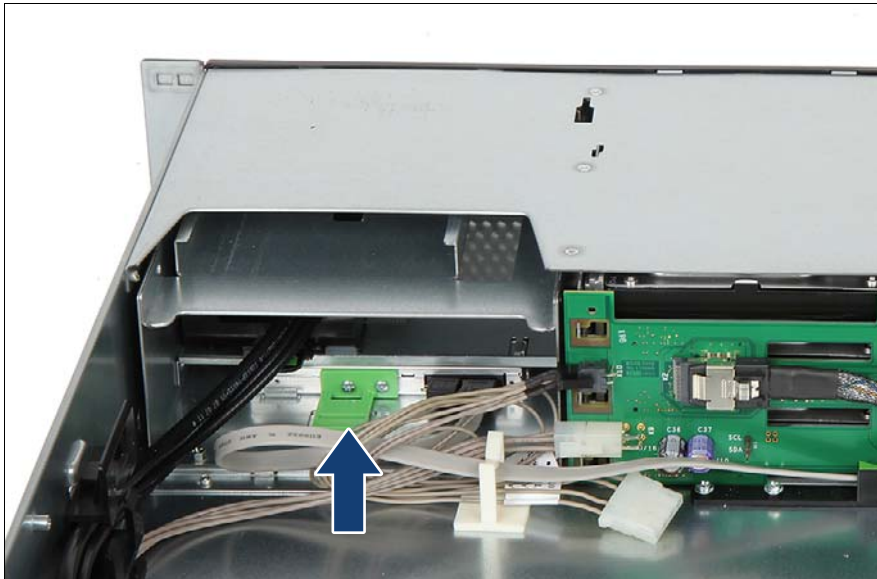


Figure 187: Removing the ODD (A)

- ▶ Pull the locking latch upward to unlock the ODD.



Figure 188: Removing the ODD (B)

- ▶ Pull the ODD out of the bay.



Figure 189: Removing the ODD (C)

## Accessible drives

---

- ▶ Disconnect the SATA cable (1) and the power cable (2).



Figure 190: Removing the ODD holder

- ▶ Remove the two screws (1).
- ▶ Remove the ODD holder on the rear of the ODD (2).
- ▶ Fix the ODD holder in the bottom of the front panel module see [figure 184 on page 316](#).

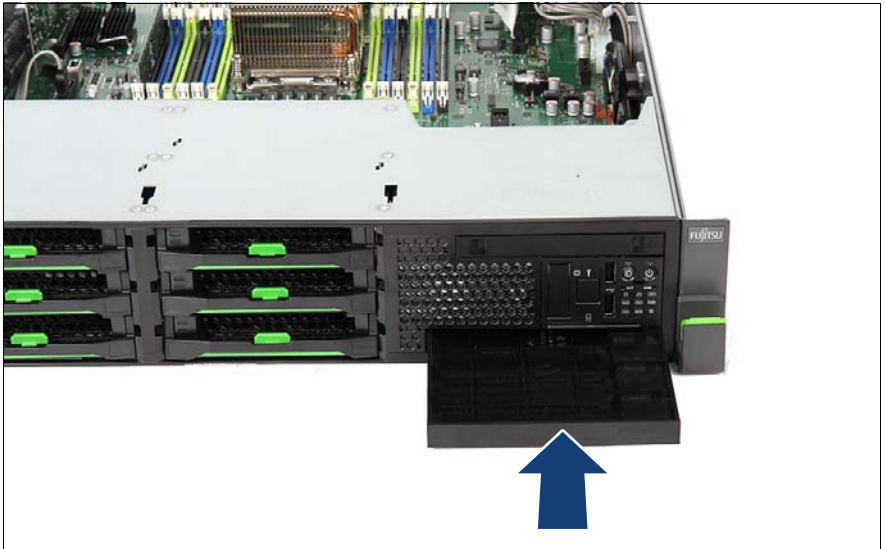


Figure 191: Installing the ODD dummy module

- ▶ Insert the ODD dummy module.

### 12.6.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.7 Replacing an ODD



**Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH0 / (+) No. 0 screw driver

### 12.7.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ Ask the system administrator to eject all remaining backup or optical media from the backup or optical disk drive before removing it from the server.
- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 12.7.2 Removing the defective ODD

- ▶ ["Removing the ODD" on page 320](#)

### 12.7.3 Installing the new ODD

- ▶ ["Preparing an ODD" on page 316](#)
- ▶ ["Installing an ODD" on page 318](#)

### 12.7.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.8 Installing a tape/RDX drive in 3.5-inch version



### Notes on RDX drive USB cabling:

- A USB 2.0 RDX drive may be replaced by a USB 3.0 RDX drive with previous cabling.
- A USB 3.0 RDX drive may be connected with a USB 2.0 cable to an onboard USB 2.0 connector with limited performance.
- For full performance, connect the USB 3.0 RDX drive to a USB 3.0 interface card by USB 3.0 cable.
- The USB 3.0 cable cannot be connected to a USB 2.0 RDX drive.



- Connect the tape/RDX drive to the onboard connector of the systemboard with cable C17.
- Connect the RDX drive to the USB 3.0 interface card with cable C21.



### Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)



Hardware: 10 minutes

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 12.8.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 12.8.2 Installing a tape/RDX drive in the cage



- A drive cage is installed

## Accessible drives

---

- ▶ Remove the drive cage see section ["Removing the drive cage" on page 332](#).
- ▶ Remove the tape drive dummy module.
- 3.5-inch HDDs or 3.5-inch dummy module are installed
- ▶ Remove HDD or dummy module 5 and 6 see section ["Removing 3.5-inch HDD modules" on page 129](#)



Figure 192: Inserting the tape/RDX drive

- ▶ Insert the tape/RDX drive into the cage and push in.



Figure 193: Fastening the tape/RDX drive in the drive cage

- ▶ Fasten the tape/RDX drive with 4 screws in the drive cage

### 12.8.3 Installing the tape/RDX drive

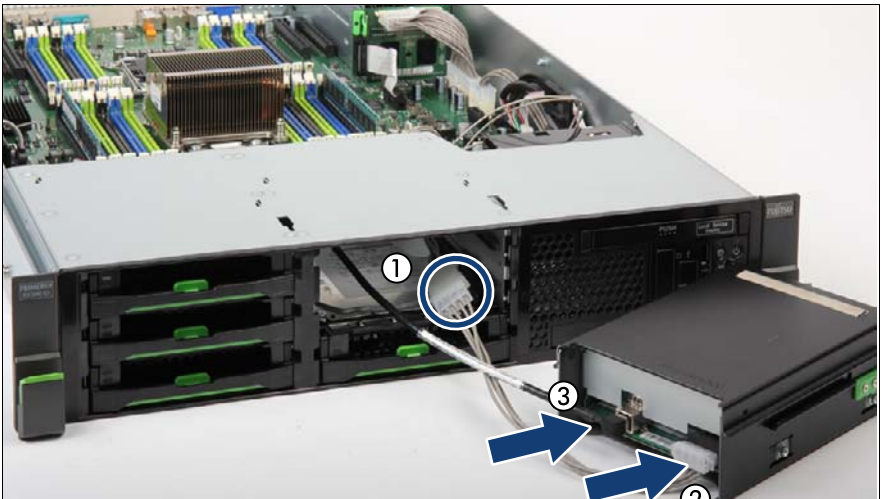


Figure 194: Connecting the cables to the tape/RDX drive

- ▶ Route the power cable through the bay.
- ▶ Connect the power adapter cable C16 to the power cable C5 (1).
- ▶ Connect the power adapter cable C16 to the tape/RDX drive (2).
- ▶ Connect the USB cable C17 to the tape/RDX drive or USB cable C21 to the RDX drive (3).



Figure 195: Installing the drive cage with the tape/RDX drive

## 12.8.4 Connecting the tape/RDX drive

### 12.8.4.1 Connecting the tape/RDX drive to the systemboard



Figure 196: Installing the tape/RDX drive

- ▶ Connect the USB cable C17 to the connector USB INT1 on the system board.
- ▶ Route the cables as shown.

### 12.8.4.2 Connecting the RDX drive to the USB 3.0 interface card

- ▶ Install the USB 3.0 interface card, see section "[Installing a slot bracket to the USB 3.0 interface card D3305](#)" on page 182 and section "[Installing an expansion card](#)" on page 185.

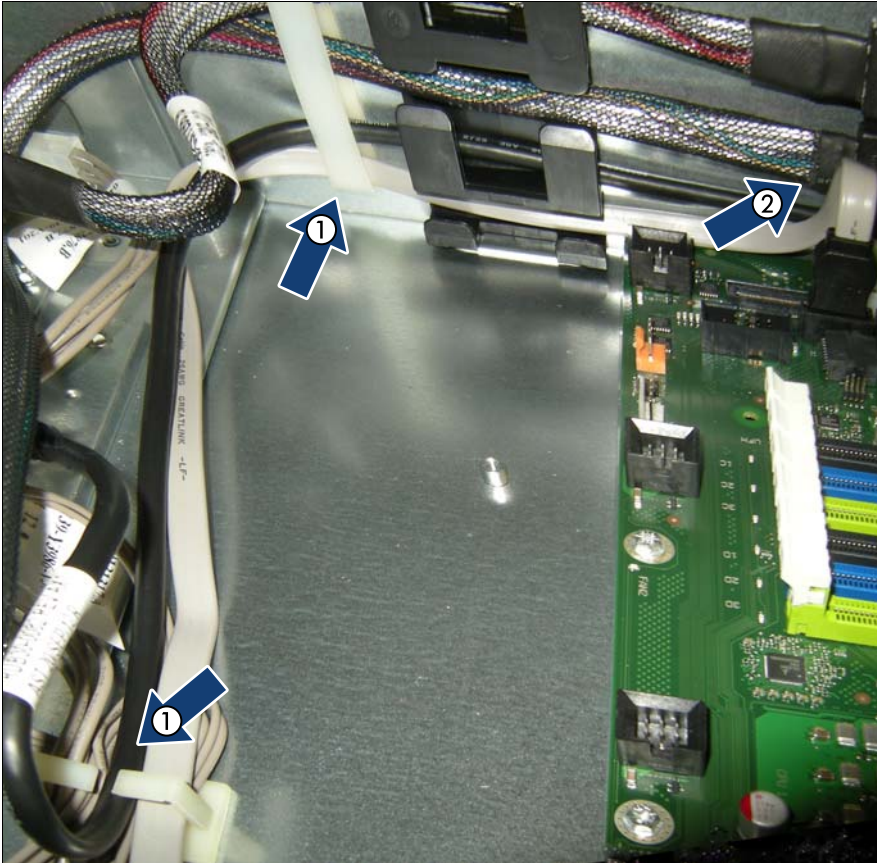


Figure 197: Connecting the USB cable to the USB 3.0 interface card

- ▶ Route the cable C21 as shown in the two cable clamps (1) and behind the SAS RAID controller (2).

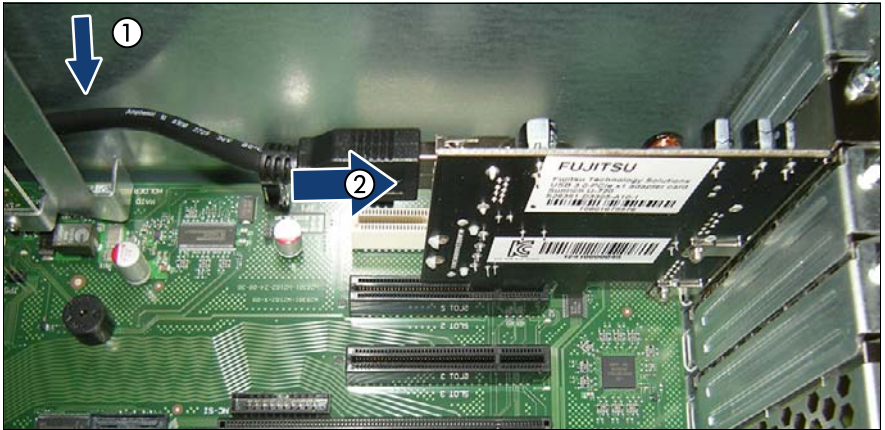


Figure 198: Connecting the USB cable to the USB 3.0 interface card

- ▶ Route the cable as shown (1).
- ▶ Connect the USB cable to the USB 3.0 interface card (2).

## 12.8.5 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 86](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.9 Removing a tape/RDX drive in 3.5-inch version



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 12.9.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ "Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73
- ▶ "Locating the defective server" on page 51
- ▶ "Removing backup and optical disk media" on page 76
- ▶ "Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 77
- ▶ "Shutting down the server" on page 54
- ▶ "Disconnecting power cords" on page 54
- ▶ "Getting access to the component" on page 57
- ▶ "Removing the fan box" on page 164

### 12.9.2 Removing the drive cage



Figure 199: Unlocking the drive cage

- ▶ Press the two release latches together and pull the drive cage out of the bay.

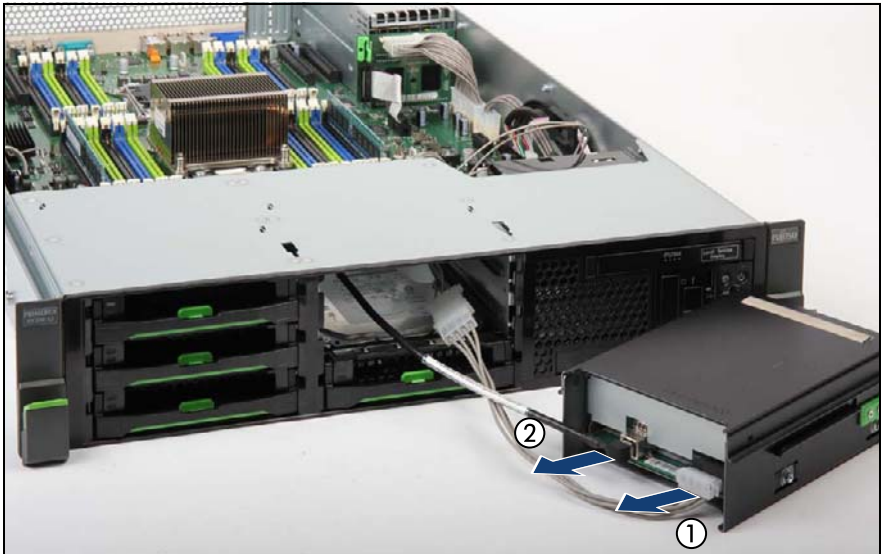


Figure 200: Removing the cables from the tape/RDX drive

- ▶ Disconnect the power adapter cable from the tape/RDX drive (1).
- ▶ Disconnect the USB cable from the tape/RDX drive (2).

### 12.9.3 Removing a tape/RDX drive out of the cage



Figure 201: Removing the 4 screws

- ▶ Remove the 4 screws from the drive cage



Figure 202: Removing the tape/RDX drive in the drive cage

- ▶ Pull the tape/RDX drive out of the bay.
- ▶ Install two 3.5-inch dummy modules as described in section ["Installing a 3.5-inch dummy module" on page 131](#)
- ▶ If applicable, remove the USB 3.0 interface card as describe in section ["Removing an expansion card" on page 190](#)

### 12.9.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 86](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.10 Replacing the tape/RDX drive in 3.5-inch version



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 12.10.1 Preliminary steps

Perform the following procedures:

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Removing backup and optical disk media" on page 76](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 77](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 12.10.2 Removing the defective tape/RDX drive

- ▶ ["Removing the drive cage" on page 332](#)
- ▶ ["Removing a tape/RDX drive out of the cage" on page 333](#)

### 12.10.3 Installing the new tape/RDX drive

- ▶ ["Installing a tape/RDX drive in the cage" on page 325](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the tape/RDX drive" on page 327](#)

### 12.10.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 86](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.11 Installing a tape/RDX drive in 2.5-inch version



### Notes on RDX drive USB cabling:

- A USB 2.0 RDX drive may be replaced by a USB 3.0 RDX drive with previous cabling.
- A USB 3.0 RDX drive may be connected with a USB 2.0 cable to an onboard USB 2.0 connector with limited performance.
- For full performance, connect the USB 3.0 RDX drive to a USB 3.0 interface card by USB 3.0 cable.
- The USB 3.0 cable cannot be connected to a USB 2.0 RDX drive.



- Connect the tape/RDX drive to the onboard connector of the systemboard with cable C17.
- Connect the RDX drive to the USB 3.0 interface card with cable C21.



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 12.11.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the front cover" on page 455](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 12.11.2 Installing a tape/RDX drive in the cage

- ▶ Removing the 2.5-inch-HDD cage out of bay 2 for further information see ["Removing HDD cages and front panel cage" on page 457](#)



Figure 203: Inserting the tape/RDX drive in the drive cage

- ▶ Insert the tape/RDX drive into the bay and push in.

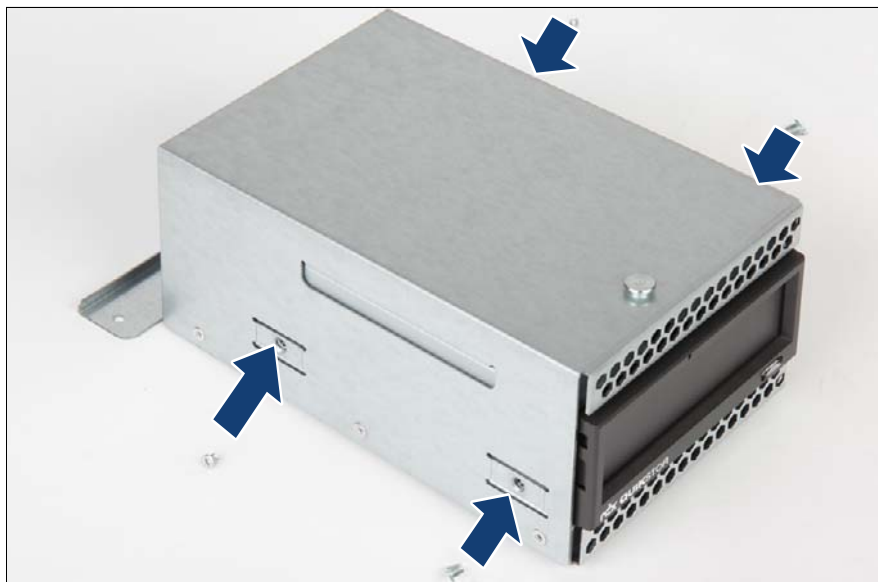


Figure 204: Fastening the tape/RDX drive in the drive cage

- Fasten the tape/RDX drive with 4 screws in the drive cage.

### 12.11.3 Installing the tape/RDX drive

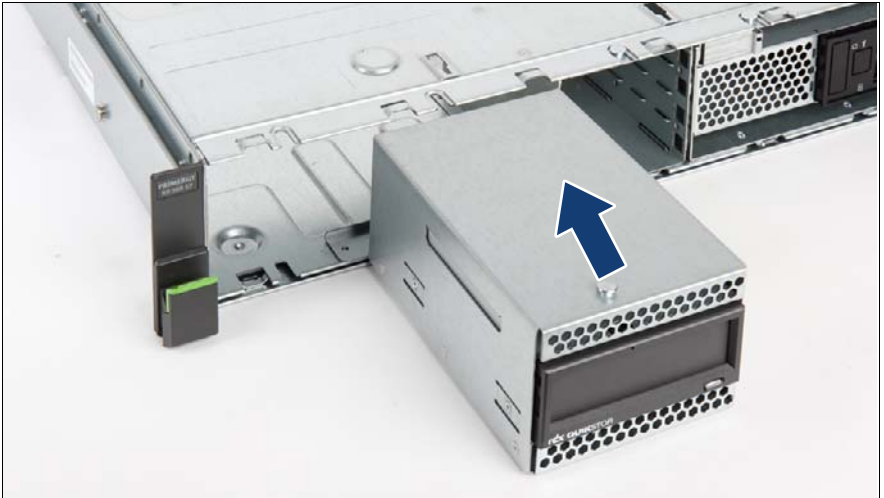


Figure 205: Installing the tape/RDX drive

- ▶ Insert the tape/RDX with the drive cage in the bay.

### 12.11.4 Connecting the tape/RDX drive

#### 12.11.4.1 Connecting the tape/RDX drive to the system board

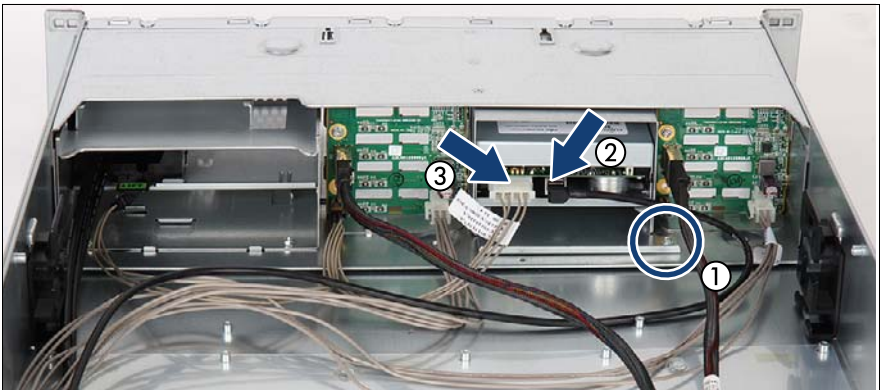


Figure 206: Connecting the cables to the tape/RDX drive

## Accessible drives

---

- ▶ Fasten the drive cage with the screw (1).
- ▶ Connecting the power cable C5 to the tape/RDX drive (3).
- ▶ Connecting the USB cable C17 to the tape/RDX drive (2).

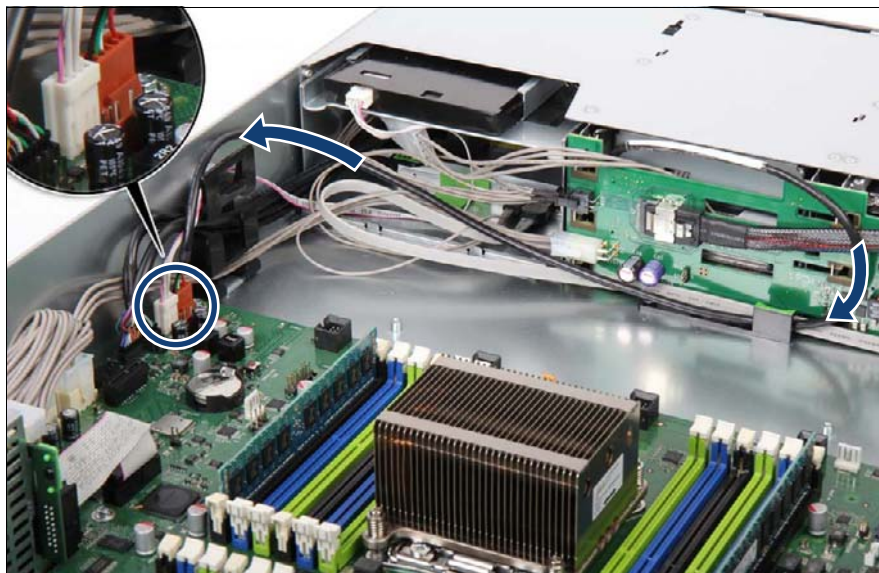


Figure 207: Removing the tape/RDX drive

- ▶ Connect the USB cable C17 to the connector USB INT1 on the system board.
- ▶ Route the cables as shown.

### 12.11.4.2 Connecting the RDX drive to the USB 3.0 interface card

- ▶ Install the USB 3.0 interface card, see section ["Installing a slot bracket to the USB 3.0 interface card D3305"](#) on page 182 and section ["Installing an expansion card"](#) on page 185.

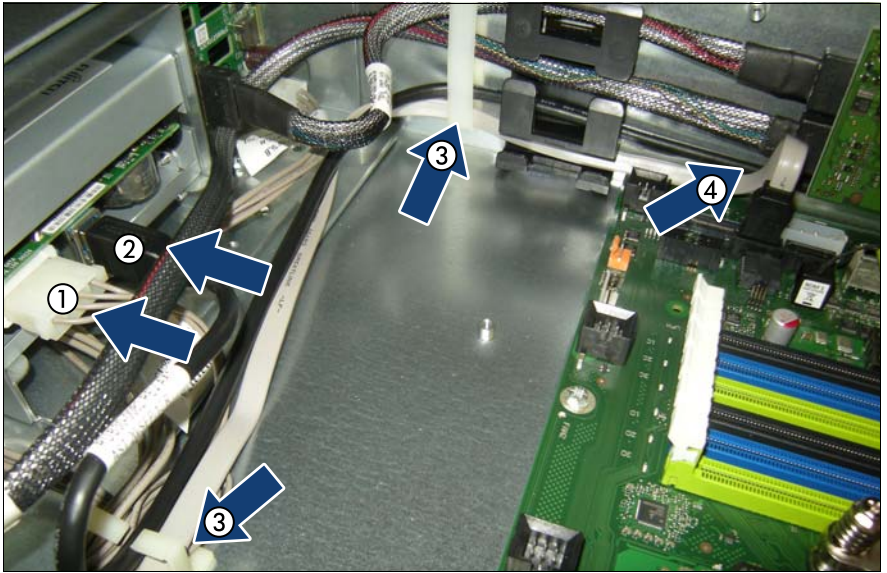


Figure 208: Connecting the USB cable to the USB 3.0 interface card

- ▶ Fasten the drive cage with the screw.
- ▶ Connecting the power cable C5 to the RDX drive (1).
- ▶ Connecting the USB cable C21 to the RDX drive (2).
- ▶ Route the cable C21 as shown in the two cable clamps (3) and behind the SAS RAID controller (4).

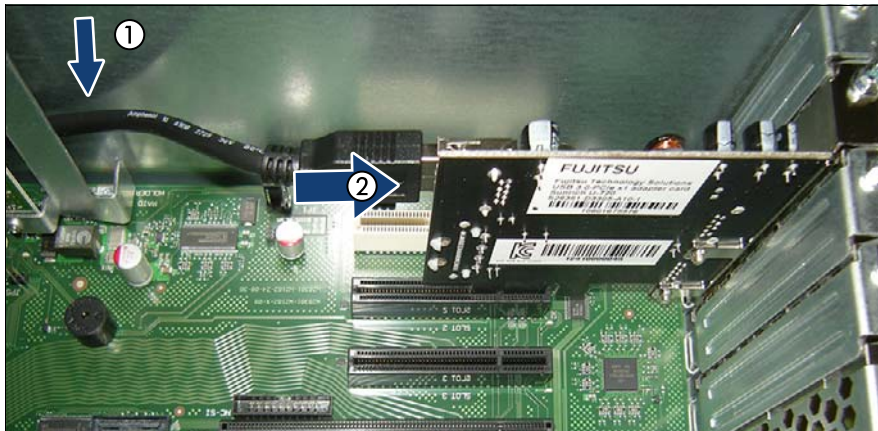


Figure 209: Connecting the USB cable to the USB 3.0 interface card

- ▶ Route the cables as shown (1).
- ▶ Connect the USB cable to the USB 3.0 interface card (2).

### 12.11.5 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the front cover" on page 459](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 86](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.12 Removing a tape/RDX drive in 2.5-inch version



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 12.12.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Removing backup and optical disk media" on page 76](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 77](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the front cover" on page 455](#)

## 12.12.2 Removing the drive cage

- ▶ Removing the 2.5-inch-HDD cage out of bay 1.

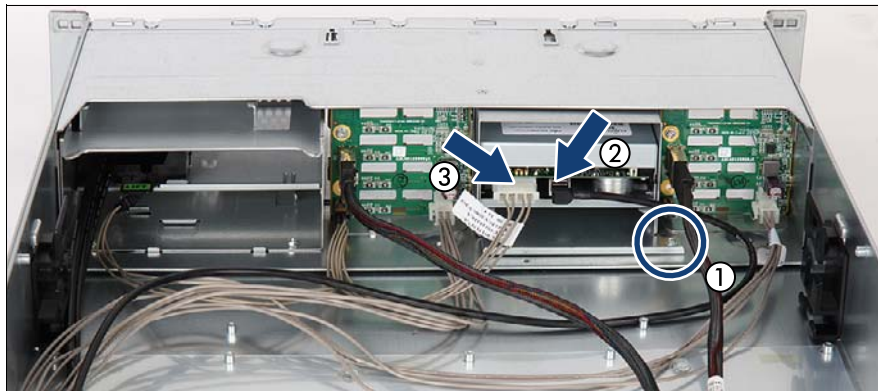


Figure 210: Removing the cables from the tape/RDX drive

- ▶ Removing the screw that fasten the drive cage(1).
- ▶ Disconnecting the USB cable (2).
- ▶ Disconnecting the power cable (3).

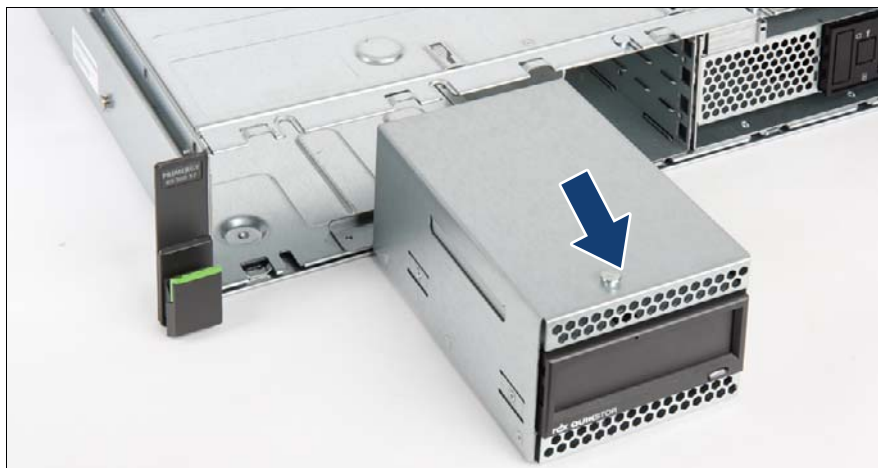


Figure 211: Unlocking the drive cage

- ▶ Remove the drive cage.

### 12.12.3 Removing a tape/RDX drive out of the cage



Figure 212: Removing the 4 screws

- ▶ Remove the 4 screws from the drive cage



Figure 213: Installing tape drive dummy cover

- ▶ Insert the tape drive dummy cover into the drive cage.



Figure 214: Installing tape drive dummy module

- ▶ Fasten the tape drive dummy module with 2 screws.
- ▶ Insert the drive cage into bay 2, for further information see ["Installing HDD cage and front panel cage" on page 458](#)
- ▶ If applicable, remove the USB 3.0 interface card as describe in section ["Removing an expansion card" on page 190](#)

### 12.12.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the front cover" on page 459](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 86](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.13 Replacing the tape/RDX drive in 2.5-inch version



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 12.13.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Removing backup and optical disk media" on page 76](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 77](#)

- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the front cover" on page 455](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### **12.13.2 Removing the defective tape/RDX drive**

- ▶ ["Removing the drive cage" on page 344](#)
- ▶ ["Removing a tape/RDX drive out of the cage" on page 345](#)

### **12.13.3 Installing the new tape/RDX drive**

- ▶ ["Installing a tape/RDX drive in the cage" on page 337](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the tape/RDX drive" on page 339](#)

### **12.13.4 Concluding steps**

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the front cover" on page 459](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 86](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.14 Installing an LTO drive in 2.5-inch version



Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)



Hardware: 10 minutes

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 12.14.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the front cover" on page 455](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 12.14.2 Removing the drive cage

- ▶ Remove the screws on the rear side of the drive cage see also ["Removing the drive cage" on page 359](#).

## Accessible drives



Figure 215: Removing the drive cage

- ▶ Push the LTO drive out of the bay.

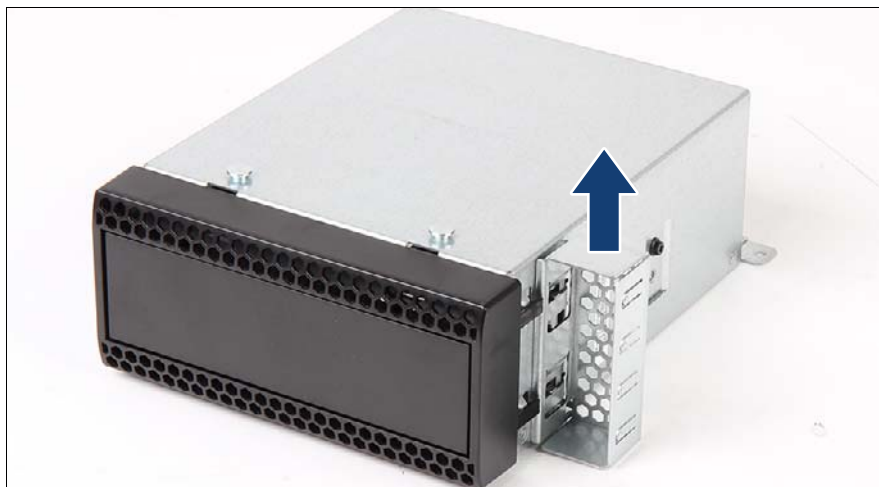


Figure 216: Removing the cover plate

- ▶ Remove the cover plate.

### 12.14.3 Removing the tape drive dummy module



Figure 217: Removing the tape drive dummy module

- ▶ Remove the four screws.
- ▶ Pull out the tape drive dummy module.

## 12.14.4 Installing an LTO drive in the cage



Figure 218: Inserting the LTOdrive

- ▶ Insert the LTO drive into the bay and push in.

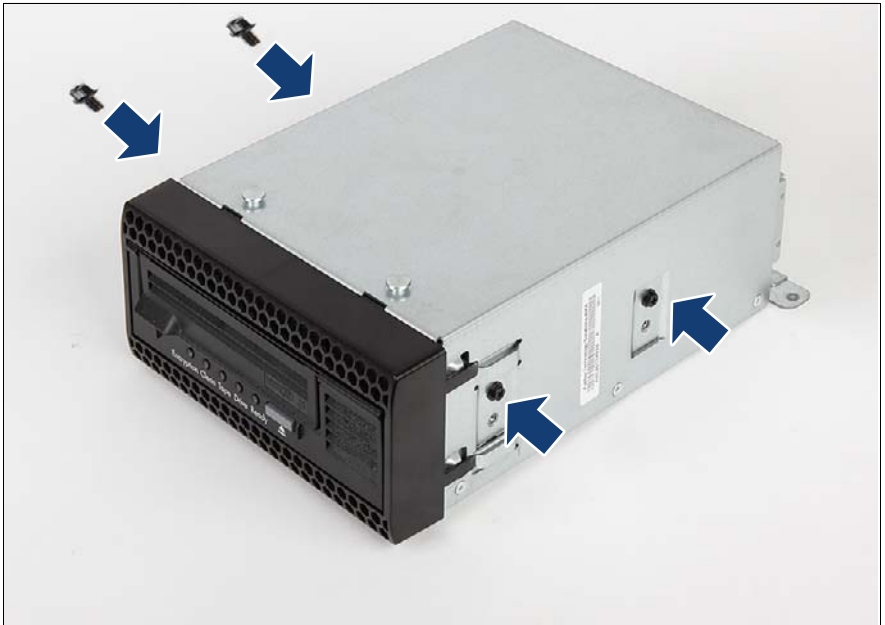


Figure 219: Fastening the LTO drive in the drive cage

- ▶ Fasten the LTO drive with 4 screws in the drive cage using the upper screw holes.

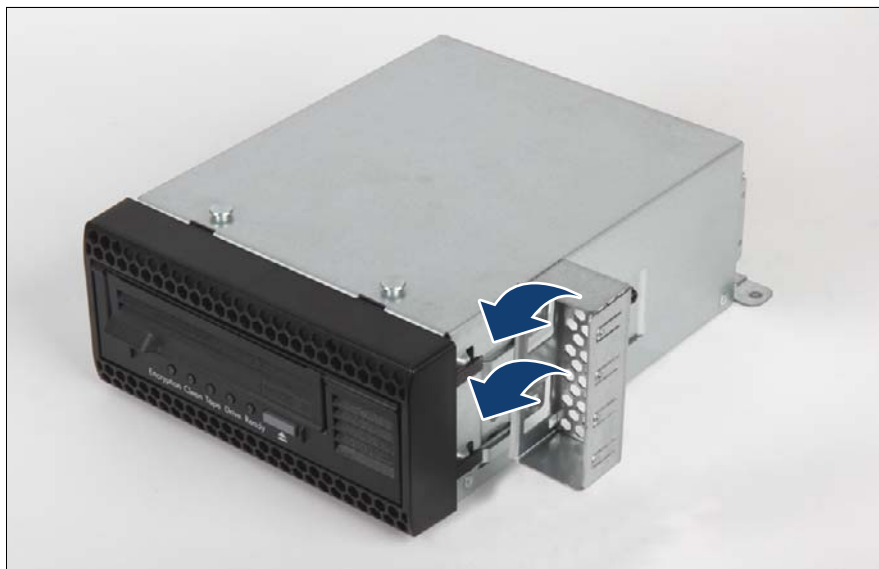


Figure 220: Connecting the cover plate

- ▶ Connect the cover plate to the LTO drive.

## 12.14.5 Installing the LTO cage

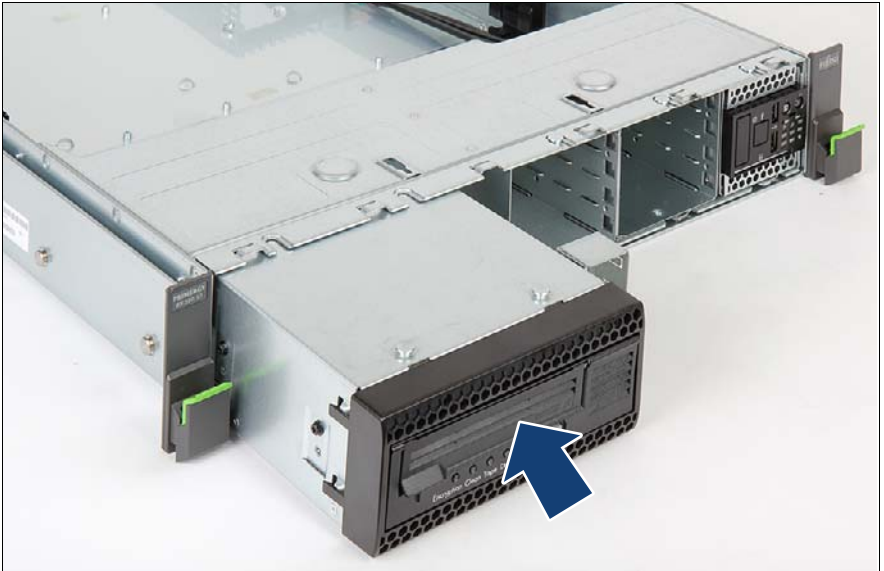


Figure 221: Inserting the LTO cage

- ▶ Push the LTO cage into the bay.

### LTO4/5/6 drive

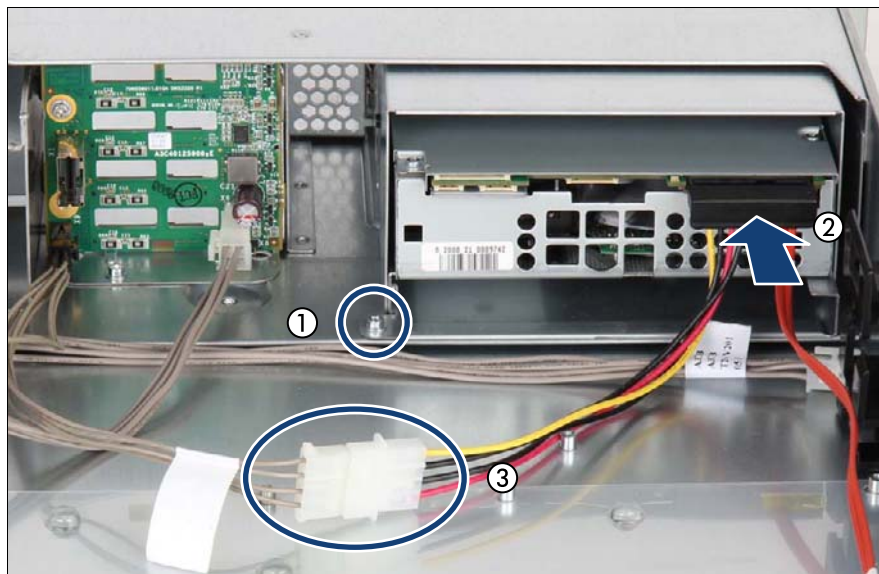


Figure 222: Connecting the cables to the LTO4/5/6

- ▶ Fasten the drive cage with the screw (1).
- ▶ Connect the cable to the LTO drive (2).
- ▶ Connect the cable to the power cable (3).

## LTO3 drive

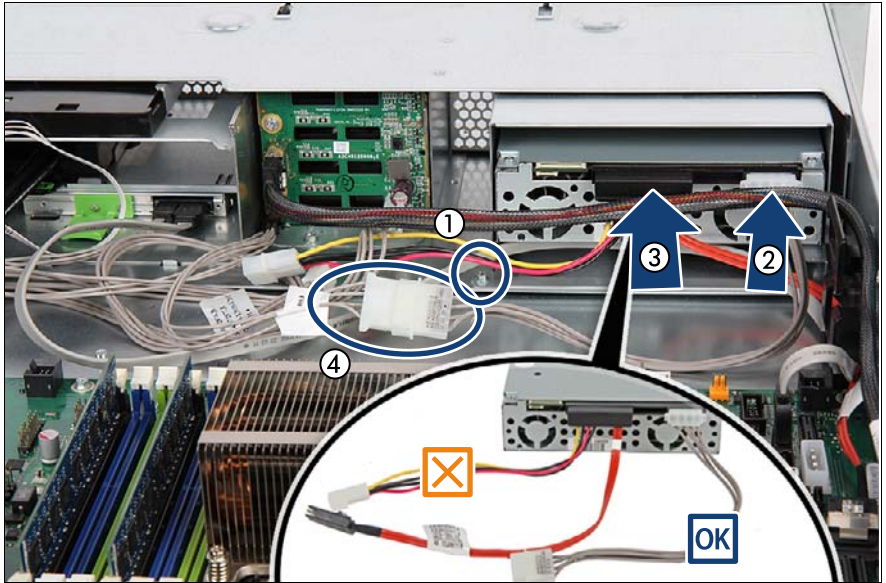


Figure 223: Connecting the cables to the LTO3

- ▶ Fasten the drive cage with the screw (1).
- ▶ Connect the power cable to the LTO drive (2).
- ▶ Connect the cable to the LTO drive (3).

**CAUTION!**

Do not use the power supply cable (short end) of cable (C18) that is connected to connector (A). Use the cable (2) (C16) for the connection to the power supply.

- ▶ Connect the cable to the power cable (4).

**12.14.6 Concluding steps**

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the front cover" on page 459](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)

- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 86](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.15 Removing an LTO drive in 2.5-inch version



**Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 12.15.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Removing backup and optical disk media" on page 76](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 77](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the front cover" on page 455](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

## 12.15.2 Removing the drive cage

### LTO4/5/6 drive

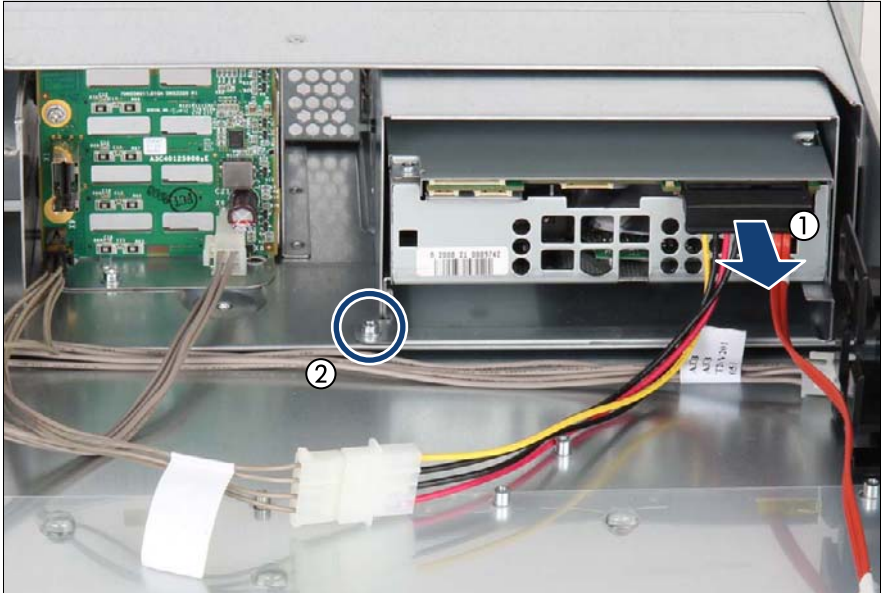


Figure 224: Unlocking the drive cage

- ▶ Remove the cable from the LTO drive (1).
- ▶ Remove the screw that fixed the drive cage in the bay (2).

### LTO3 drive

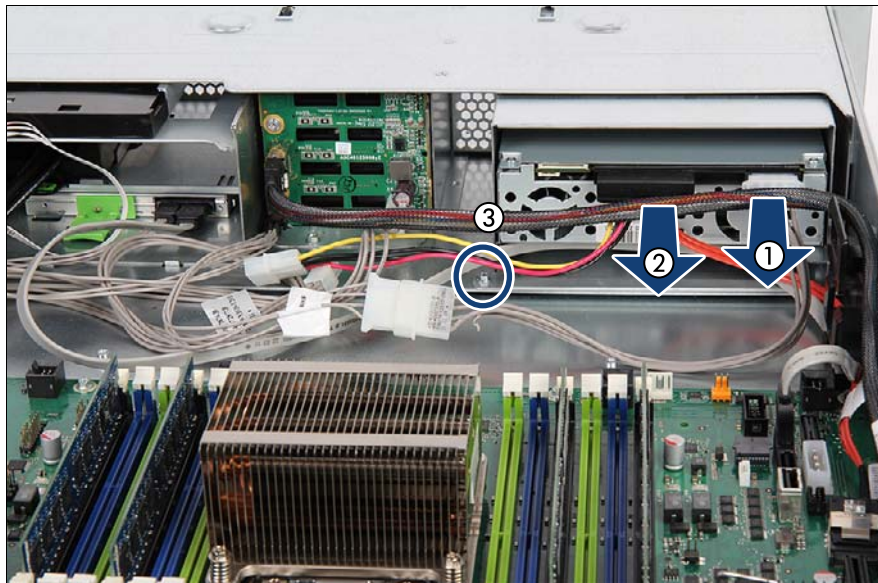


Figure 225: Unlocking the drive cage

- ▶ Remove the power cable from the LTO drive (1).
- ▶ Remove the cable from the LTO drive (2).
- ▶ Remove the screw that fixed the drive cage in the bay (3).

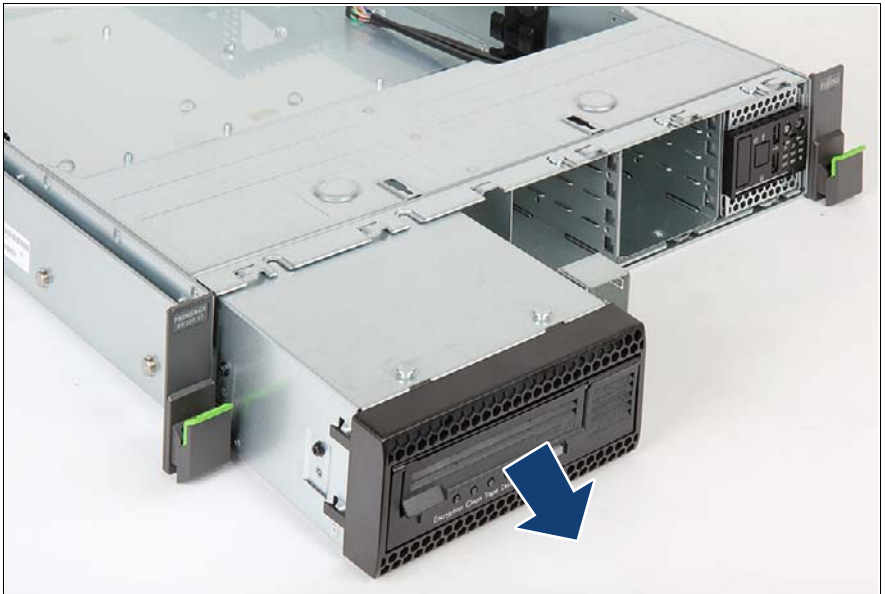


Figure 226: Removing the drive cage

- ▶ Pull the drive cage out of the bay.

### 12.15.3 Removing an LTO drive out of the cage

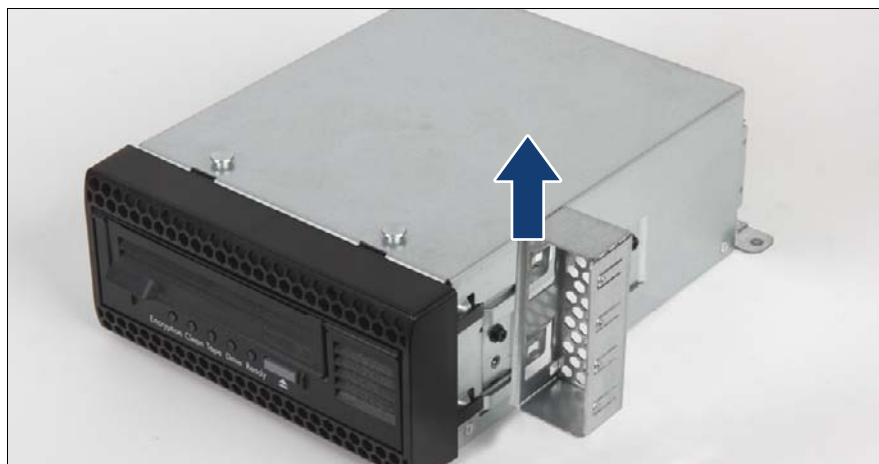


Figure 227: Removing the cover plate

- ▶ Remove the cover plate from the drive cage.

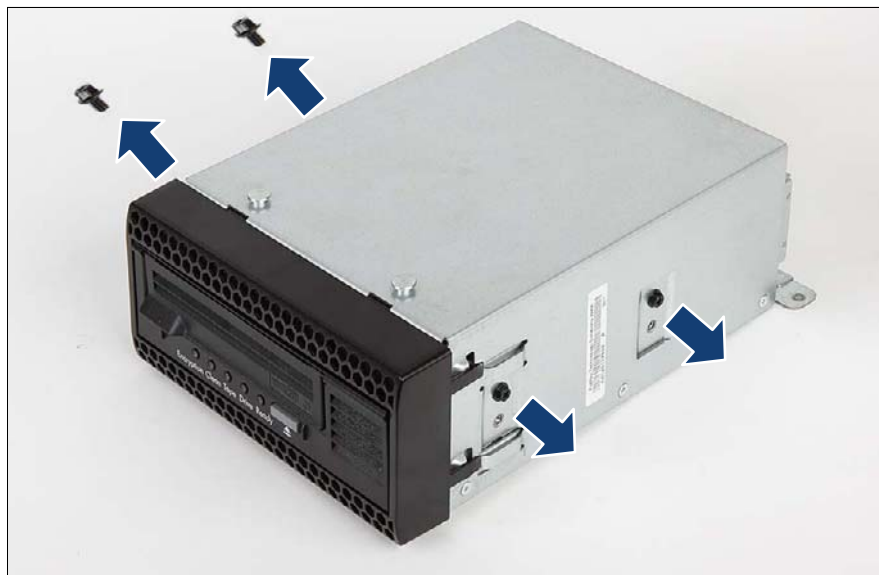


Figure 228: Removing the screws

- ▶ Remove the four screws.



Figure 229: Removing the LTO drive

- ▶ Pull the LTO drive out.

### 12.15.4 Installing the tape drive dummy module



Figure 230: Installing the tape drive dummy module (A)

- ▶ Push the tape drive dummy module into the drive cage.

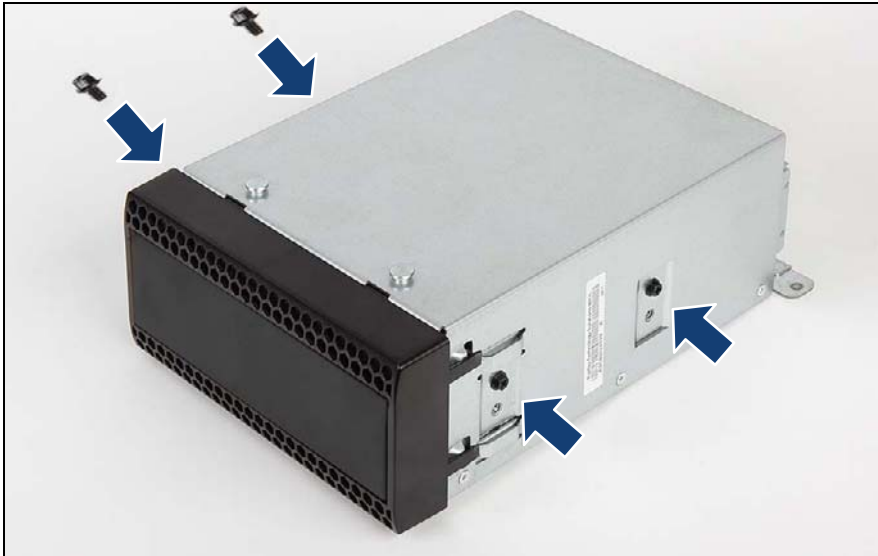


Figure 231: Installing the tape drive dummy module (B)

- ▶ Fasten the tape drive dummy module in the drive cage with 4 screws.

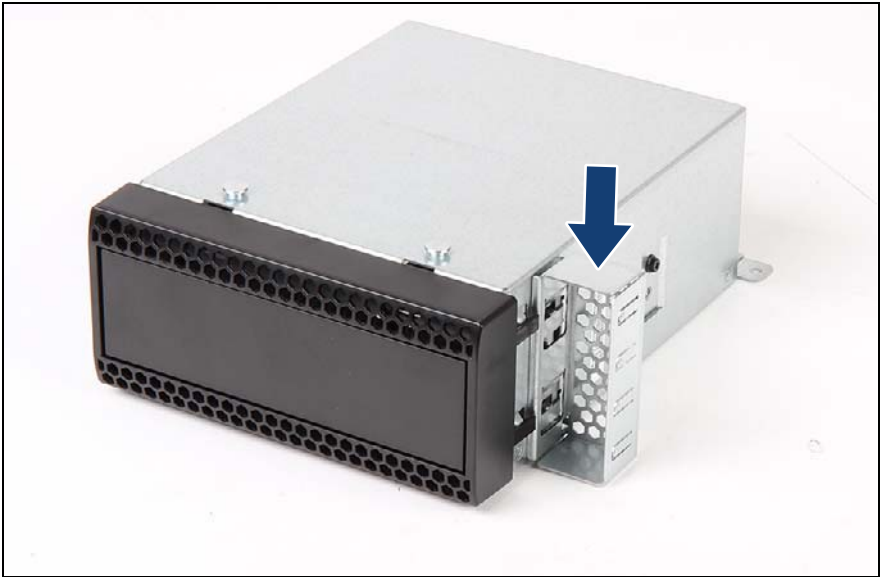


Figure 232: Installing the cover plate

- ▶ Fasten the cover plate.



Figure 233: Installing the drive cage with the tape drive dummy module

- ▶ Push the drive cage in.
- ▶ Fasten the drive cage with two screws see also ["Installing the LTO cage" on page 355](#).

### 12.15.5 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the front cover" on page 459](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 86](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 12.16 Replacing the LTO drive in 2.5-inch version



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

### 12.16.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Removing backup and optical disk media" on page 76](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 77](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the front cover" on page 455](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 12.16.2 Removing the defective LTO drive

- ▶ ["Removing the drive cage" on page 359](#)
- ▶ ["Removing an LTO drive out of the cage" on page 362](#)

### 12.16.3 Installing the new LTO drive

- ▶ ["Installing an LTO drive in the cage" on page 352](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the LTO cage" on page 355](#)

## 12.16.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the front cover" on page 459](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying and configuring the backup software solution" on page 86](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

---

# 13 Front panel and external connectors

## Safety notes



### CAUTION!

- When inserting the front panel module into the server, ensure not to pinch or strain any connected cables.
- Circuit boards and soldered parts of internal options are exposed and can be damaged by static electricity. Always discharge static build-up (e.g. by touching a grounded object) before handling electrostatic-sensitive devices (ESDs)
- Do not touch the circuitry on boards or soldered parts. Hold circuit boards by their metallic areas or edges.
- For further information, please refer to chapter "[Important information](#)" on page 39.

## 13.1 Front panel module

### 13.1.1 Replacing the front panel module



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**  
**Software: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

#### Note on system information backup / restore



The front panel module contains the Chassis ID EPROM that contains system information like server name and model, housing type, serial number and manufacturing data.

To avoid the loss of non-default settings when replacing the system board, a backup copy of important system configuration data is automatically stored from the system board NVRAM to the Chassis ID EPROM. After replacing the system board the backup data is restored from the Chassis ID board to the new system board.



### **CAUTION!**

For that reason the front panel module and system board must not be replaced simultaneously! In this case, restoring the system configuration data on the system board would fail.

#### **13.1.1.1 Preliminary steps**

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 13.1.1.2 Removing the front panel module

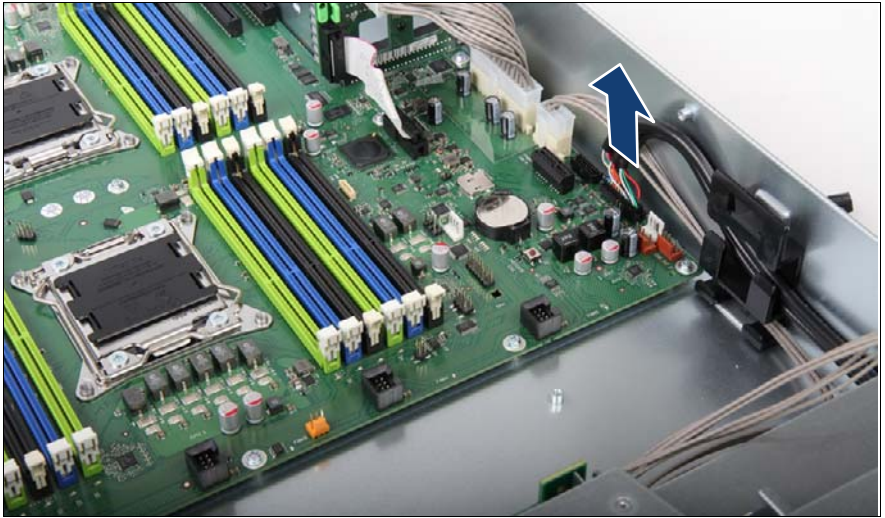


Figure 234: Disconnecting the front panel cable

- ▶ Disconnect the front panel cable from the system board.
- ▶ If applicable, disconnect the front VGA cable from the system board see section "[Removing the front VGA cable](#)" on page 381.

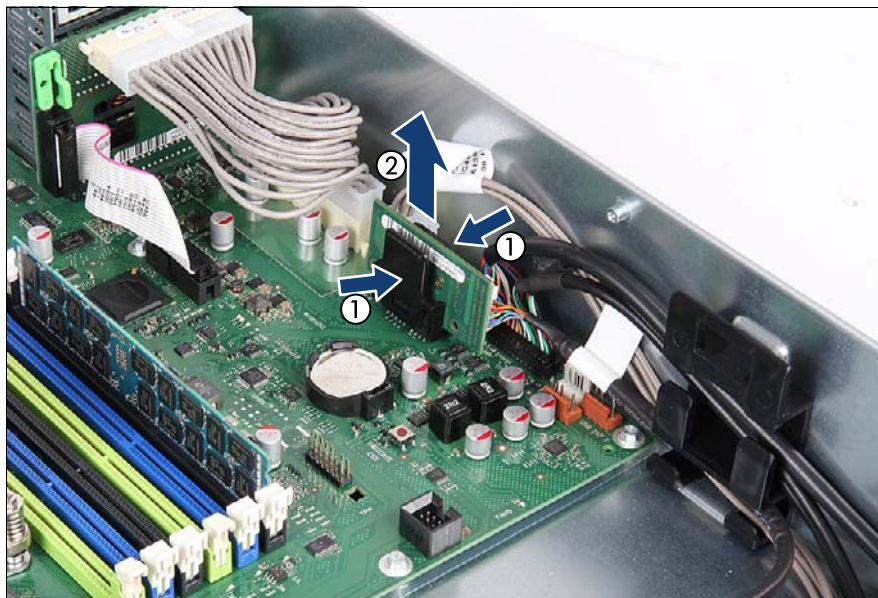


Figure 235: Disconnecting front panel cables

- ▶ If applicable, disconnect the front LAN board from the system board:  
Press in on the locking latch on the front LAN board holder (1) and pull the front LAN board holder with the front LAN board out of its socket (2).

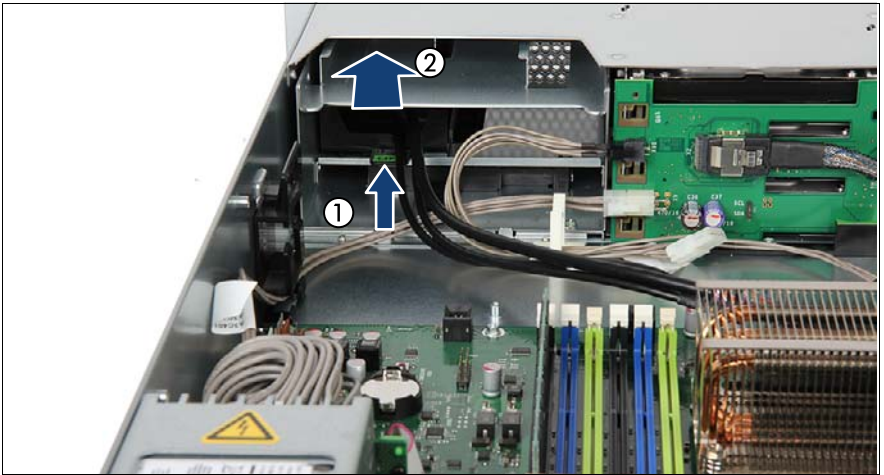


Figure 236: Removing the front panel module

- ▶ Push the locking latches upward (1) to disengage the locking mechanism.
- ▶ Carefully pull the front panel module out of its bay (2).



### **CAUTION!**

Ensure that none of the cables are strained or damaged!

- ▶ If the front VGA connector has been installed in the defective front panel module, remove the cable as described in section "[Removing the front VGA connector](#)" on page 382.
- ▶ If the front LAN connector has been installed in the defective front panel module, remove the cable as described in section "[Removing the front LAN connector](#)" on page 382.

### **13.1.1.3 Installing the front panel module**

- ▶ If the front VGA connection is to be installed in the new front panel module, install the front VGA cable as described in section "[Installing the front VGA connector](#)" on page 377.
- ▶ If the front LAN connection is to be installed in the new front panel module, install the front LAN cable as described in section "[Installing the front LAN connector](#)" on page 384.

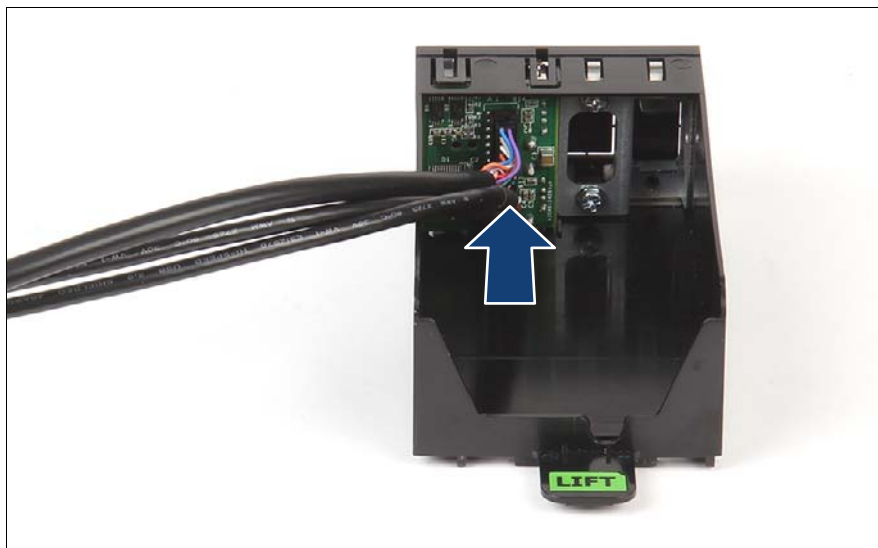


Figure 237: Connecting the front panel cable to the front panel module

- ▶ Connect the front panel cable to the new front panel module as shown.



Figure 238: Connecting the front panel cable

- ▶ Insert the front panel module into the front panel cage and carefully push in until it locks in place.

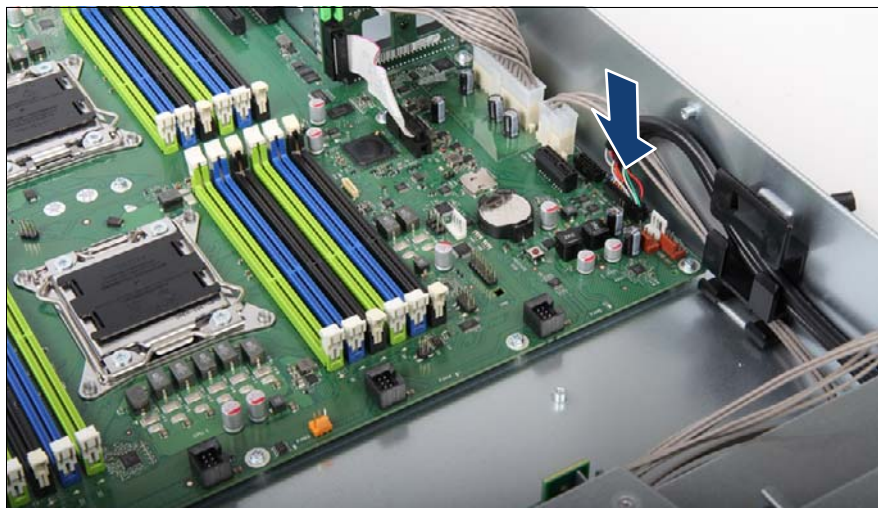


Figure 239: Connecting front panel cables

- ▶ Connect the front panel cable to the system board.
- ▶ If applicable, connect the front VGA cable to the front VGA connector of the system board as described in section ["Installing the front VGA connector" on page 377](#).
- ▶ If applicable, connect the front LAN cable to the system board as describe in section ["Installing the front LAN connector" on page 384](#).

### 13.1.1.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying system information backup / restore" on page 83](#)
- ▶ Store your server's system information on the Chassis ID EPROM integrated into the front panel board. For further information on how to obtain and use the *ChassisId\_Prom* Tool, refer to section ["Using the Chassis ID Prom Tool" on page 98](#).
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)

- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 13.2 Front VGA connector

### 13.2.1 Installing the front VGA connector



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

<b>Tools:</b> Socket screw driver (5 mm) Wrench key for UNC #4-40 hexagon bolts
--

#### 13.2.1.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

#### 13.2.1.2 Removing the front panel module

- ▶ ["Removing the front panel module" on page 371](#)

### 13.2.1.3 Preparing the front panel module



Figure 240: Breaking out the front VGA cover plate

- ▶ Break out the VGA cover plate on the front panel cover.



Please note that once removed, the VGA cover plate cannot be refitted.

### 13.2.1.4 Installing the front VGA connector



Figure 241: Front VAG cable

- ▶ Remove the two hexagon bolts from the connector.



Figure 242: Mounting the front VGA connector

- ▶ Insert the front VGA connector with the longer connector side to the left.
- ▶ Fasten the front VGA connector in the front panel module with two hexagon bolts.

### 13.2.1.5 Re-installing the front panel module

- ▶ ["Installing the front panel module" on page 373](#)

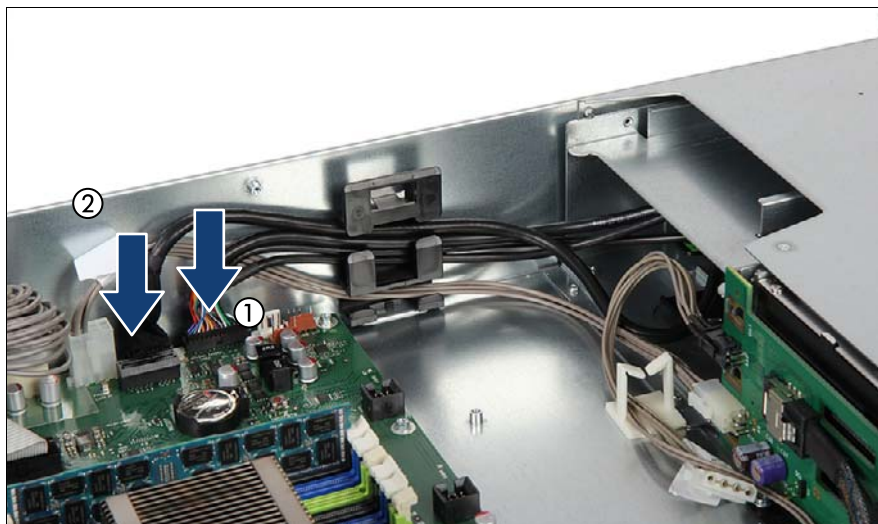


Figure 243: Connecting front panel cables

- ▶ Run the front panel cable through the cable clamps as shown.
- ▶ Connect the front panel cable to the system board (1).
- ▶ Connect the front VGA cable to the system board (2).
- ▶ If applicable, connect the front LAN connector to the system board.

### 13.2.1.6 Concluding steps

Perform the following procedures:

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 13.2.2 Removing the front VGA connector



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Socket screw driver (5 mm)  
Wrench key for UNC #4-40 hexagon bolts

### 13.2.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 13.2.2.2 Removing the front VGA cable

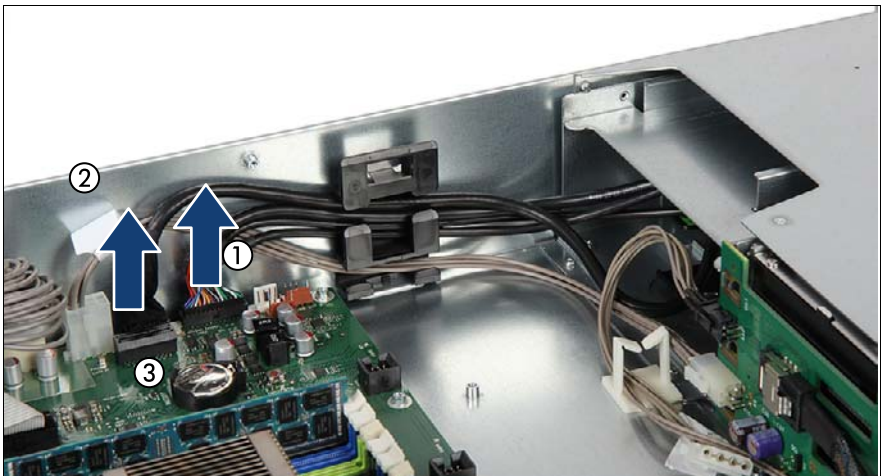


Figure 244: Disconnecting the front VGA cable

- ▶ Remove the front panel cable from the system board (1).

## Front panel and external connectors

---

- ▶ Remove the front VGA cable from the system board (2).
- ▶ ["Removing the front panel module" on page 371](#)

### 13.2.2.3 Removing the front VGA connector



Figure 245: Removing front VGA connector from the front panel module

- ▶ Remove two hexagon bolts.
- ▶ Push the VGA connector out of the front panel module.

### 13.2.2.4 Re-installing the front panel module

- ▶ ["Installing the front panel module" on page 373](#)

### 13.2.2.5 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)

- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

### 13.2.3 Replacing the front VGA connector



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 15 minutes**

<b>Tools:</b> Socket screw driver (5 mm) Wrench key for UNC #4-40 hexagon bolts
--

#### 13.2.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

#### 13.2.3.2 Removing the front panel module

- ▶ ["Removing the front panel module" on page 377](#)

#### 13.2.3.3 Removing the front VGA connector

- ▶ ["Removing the front VGA connector" on page 382.](#)

#### 13.2.3.4 Installing the new front VGA connector

- ▶ Install the new front VGA connector as described in section ["Installing the front VGA connector" on page 378.](#)

### 13.2.3.5 Re-installing the front panel module

- ▶ ["Installing the front panel module" on page 373.](#)

### 13.2.3.6 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 13.3 Front LAN connector

### 13.3.1 Installing the front LAN connector



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

<b>Tools:</b> Slot screw driver Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver
--

#### 13.3.1.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 13.3.1.2 Removing the front panel module

- ▶ "Removing the front panel module" on page 371
- ▶ If applicable remove the front VGA connector see section "Removing the front VGA connector" on page 381.

### 13.3.1.3 Preparing the front panel module



Figure 246: Breaking out the front LAN cover plate

- ▶ Break out the LAN cover plate on the front panel cover.



Please note that once removed, the front LAN cover plate cannot be refitted.

### 13.3.1.4 Installing the front LAN connector



Figure 247: Front LAN cable T26139-Y4025-V1



Figure 248: Removing the screws

- ▶ Remove the two screws.



Figure 249: Removing the mounting bracket

- ▶ Remove the mounting bracket. Turn the mounting bracket so that the ESD contact springs are not damaged.

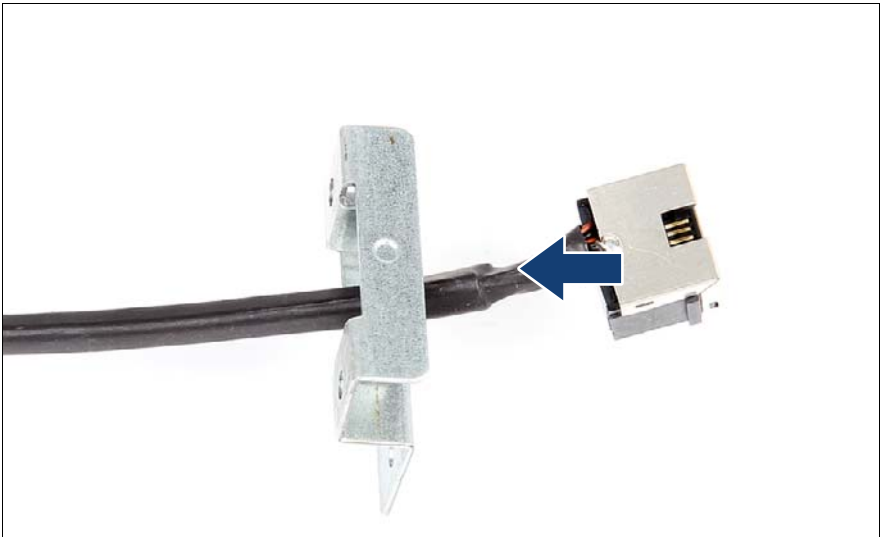


Figure 250: Mounting the front LAN connector

## Front panel and external connectors

---

- ▶ Run the front LAN cable through the mounting bracket.
- ▶ Carefully snap the front LAN cable connector into the mounting bracket.



Figure 251: Mounting the front LAN connector

- ▶ Insert the mounting bracket. Carefully turn the mounting bracket into place.
- ▶ Carefully snap the mounting bracket into the front of the front panel module.



Figure 252: Installing the screws

- ▶ Fasten the mounting bracket with the two screws.
- ▶ If applicable install the front VGA connector see section "[Installing the front VGA connector](#)" on page 377.
- ▶ "[Installing the front panel module](#)" on page 373



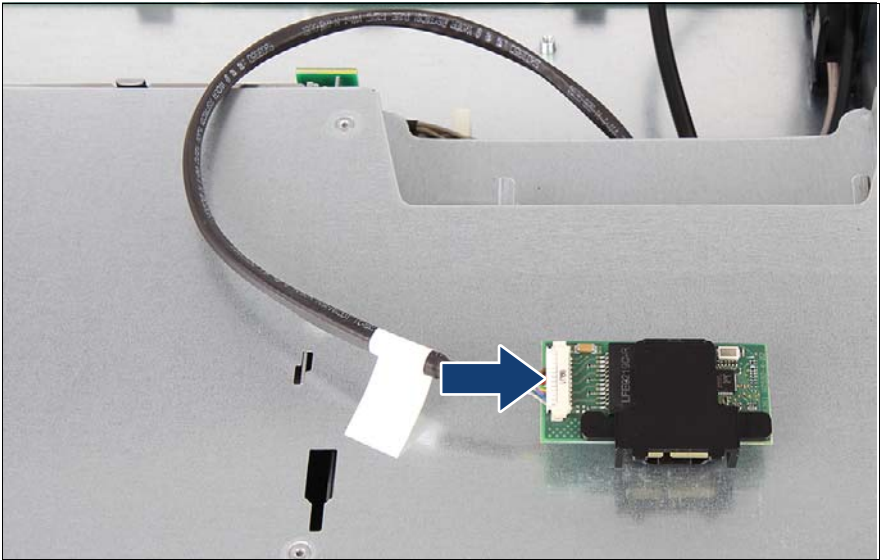


Figure 254: Connecting the front LAN cable to the front LAN board

- ▶ Connect the front LAN cable to the front LAN board.

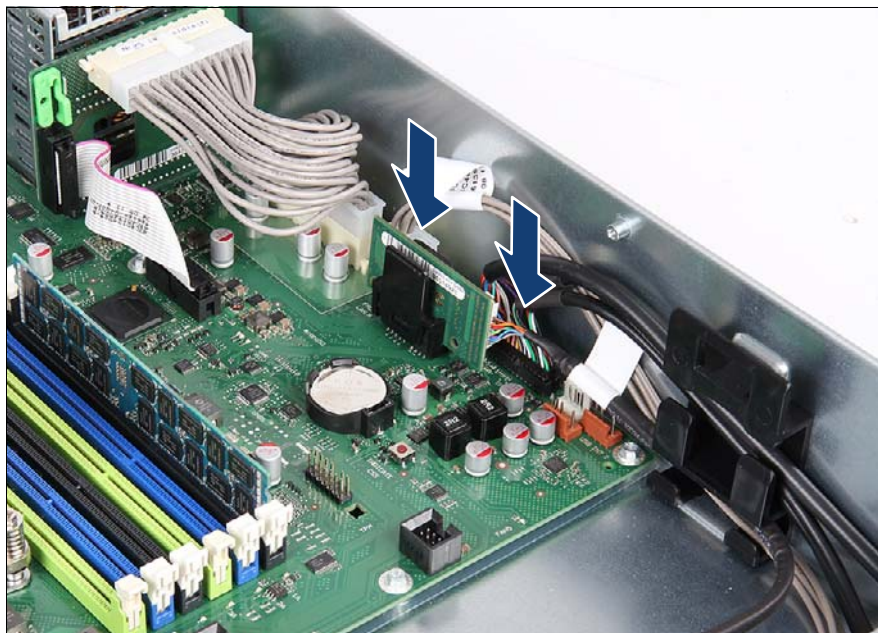


Figure 255: Connecting front panel cables

- ▶ Connect the front panel cable to the system board connector FRONT PANEL.
- ▶ Connect the front LAN board to system board connector FRONT LAN.



Ensure that the front LAN board holder snaps in place.

### 13.3.1.6 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

### 13.3.1.7 Using the front management LAN connector

In order to use the front management LAN connector to access the iRMC S4 management controller, please proceed as follows:

- ▶ Ensure that *Management LAN* has been enabled in the BIOS:
  - ▶ Enter the BIOS.
  - ▶ Select the *Server Mgmt* menu.
  - ▶ Under *iRMC LAN Parameters Configuration*, make sure that the *Management LAN* setting is set to *Enabled*.
  - ▶ Save your changes and exit the BIOS.



The front management LAN connector can be used to access the iRMC S4 with either of the *Management LAN Port* settings enabled, *Management* or *Shared*.

For detailed information on how to access the BIOS and modify settings, refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual.

- ▶ Connect a client computer (e.g. notebook) to the front management LAN connector.



It is not possible to simultaneously access the iRMC S4 from the front and rear management LAN connectors. As soon as a LAN cable is connected to the front management LAN connector, the iRMC S4 cannot be accessed via the rear management LAN connector.

After removing the LAN cable from the front management LAN connector, the iRMC S4 will immediately become accessible via the rear management LAN connector again.

- ▶ Accessing the iRMC S4 using the front management LAN connector is only possible via the preset IP address 192.168.1.1 and cannot be configured otherwise.

Configure your client computer to use any static IP address on subnet 192.168.1.x (except 192.168.1.1) with subnet mask 255.255.255.0.

### 13.3.2 Removing the front LAN connector



Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)



Hardware: 10 minutes

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

#### 13.3.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

#### 13.3.2.2 Removing the front LAN board

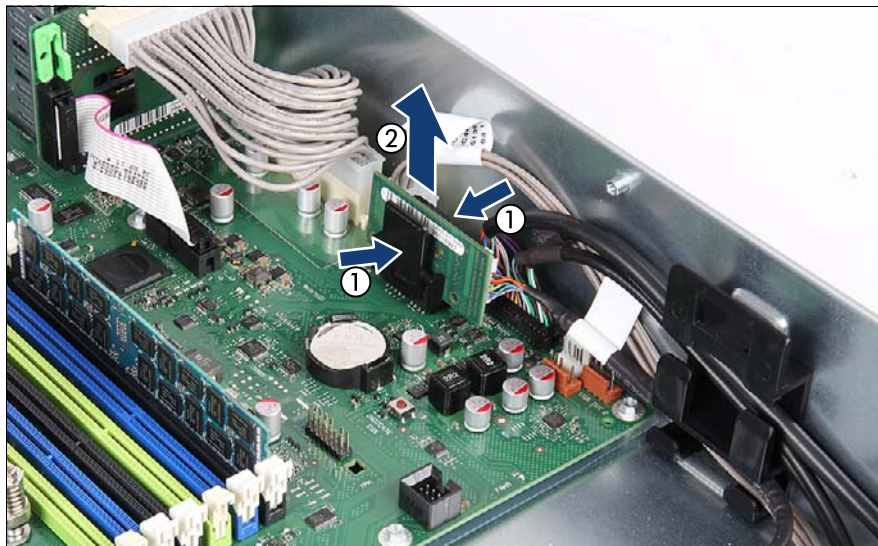


Figure 256: Disconnecting the front LAN board

- ▶ Disconnect the front LAN board from the system board:  
Press in on the locking latch on the front LAN board holder (1) and pull the front LAN board out of its socket (2).
- ▶ Remove the front panel connector see ["Removing the front panel module" on page 377](#).

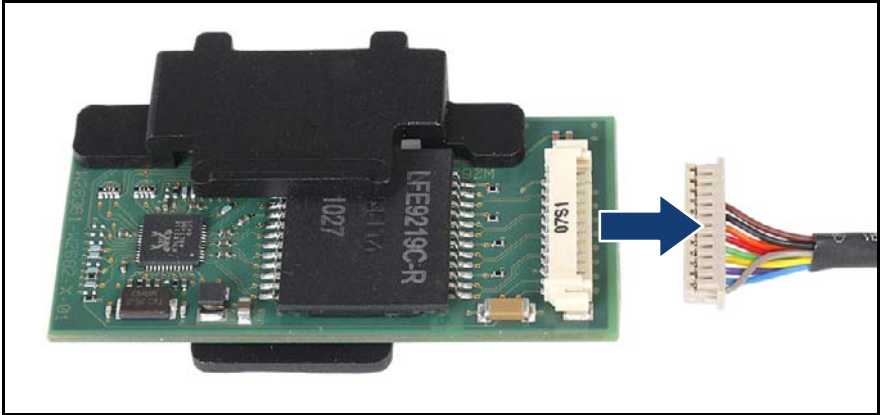


Figure 257: Disconnecting the front LAN cable

- ▶ Disconnect the front LAN cable from the front LAN board.
- ▶ Remove the front LAN board from the chassis.
- ▶ ["Removing the front panel module" on page 371](#)

### 13.3.2.3 Removing the front LAN connector



Figure 258: Removing the screws

- ▶ Remove the two screws.



Figure 259: Mounting the front LAN connector

- ▶ Remove the mounting bracket. Turn the mounting bracket so that the ESD contact springs are not damaged.



Figure 260: Removing the front LAN connector from the front panel module

## Front panel and external connectors

---

- ▶ Remove the front LAN connector carefully. Do not damage the ESD contact springs of the mounting bracket.

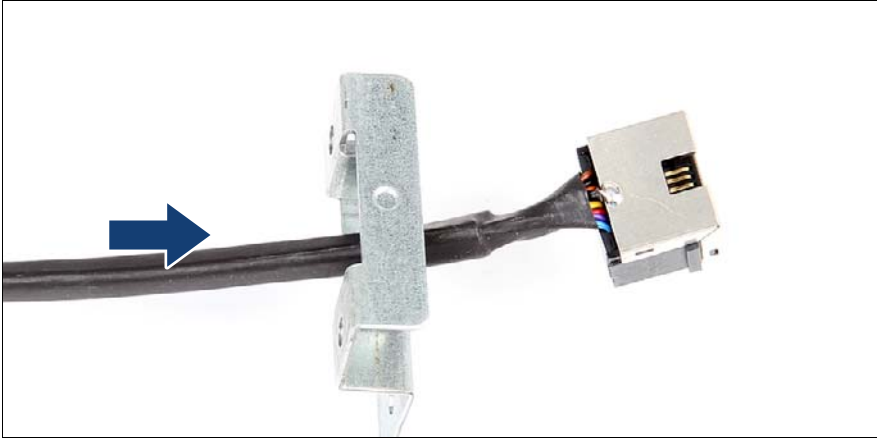


Figure 261: Removing the front LAN cable

- ▶ Remove the front LAN cable from the mounting bracket.



Figure 262: Mounting mounting bracket

- ▶ Carefully insert the mounting bracket. Do not damage the ESD contact springs of the mounting bracket.



Figure 263: Installing the screws

- ▶ Fasten the mounting bracket with the two screws.
- ▶ ["Installing the front panel module" on page 373](#)

### 13.3.2.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

### 13.3.3 Replacing the front LAN connector and board



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 15 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

#### 13.3.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

#### 13.3.3.2 Removing the front panel module

- ▶ Remove the front panel module as described in section ["Removing the front panel module" on page 371](#).

#### 13.3.3.3 Removing the defective front LAN connector

- ▶ ["Removing the front LAN connector" on page 396](#)

#### 13.3.3.4 Installing the new front LAN connector

- ▶ ["Installing the front LAN connector" on page 386](#)

#### 13.3.3.5 Re-installing the front panel module

- ▶ ["Installing the front panel module" on page 373](#)

#### 13.3.3.6 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Looking up changed MAC / WWN addresses" on page 96](#)
- ▶ ["Updating the NIC configuration file in a Linux environment" on page 93](#)
- ▶ If applicable, restore LAN teaming configurations as described in section ["After replacing / upgrading LAN controllers" on page 99](#).
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 13.4 Front cage

### 13.4.1 Replacing the front panel cage



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes**

<b>Tools:</b> Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver
---

#### 13.4.1.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

#### 13.4.1.2 Removing the front panel cage

- ▶ Disconnect all cables from the modules that are installed in the front panel cage.
  - Front panel cable:

## Front panel and external connectors

---

- Front LAN cable:
- Front VGA cable:
- ODD cable:
- LSD cable:

## Multicage

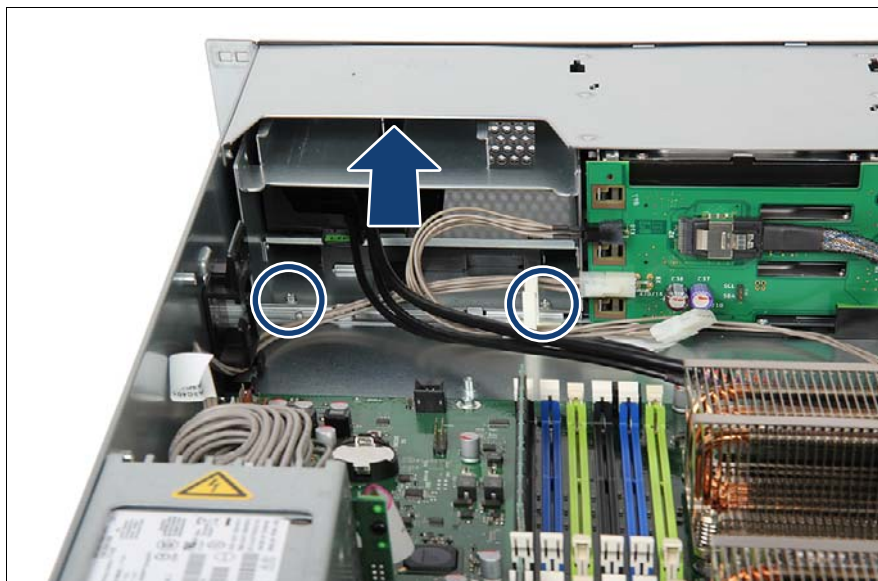


Figure 264: Removing the front panel cage

- ▶ Remove the two screws.
- ▶ Push the front panel cage out of the chassis frontward.
- ▶ Remove the installed modules.
  - ["Removing the front panel module" on page 371](#)
  - ["Removing the ODD" on page 320](#)
  - ["Removing the LSD module" on page 311](#)

### Panelhousing

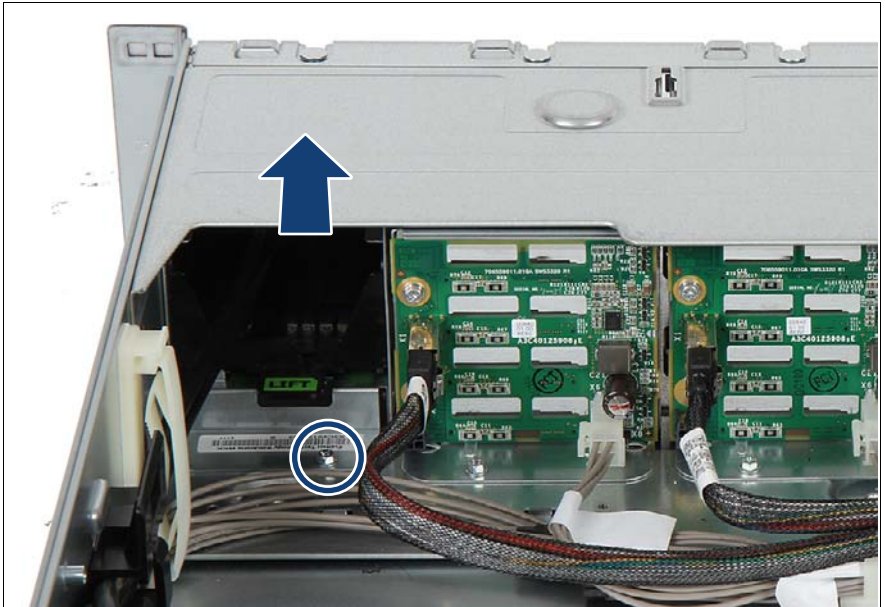


Figure 265: Removing the front panel cage

- ▶ Remove the screw.
- ▶ Push the front panel cage out of the chassis frontward.
- ▶ ["Removing the front panel module" on page 371](#)

#### 13.4.1.3 Re-installing the front panel cage

##### Multicage

- ▶ Install the removed modules.
  - ["Installing the front panel module" on page 373](#)
  - ["Installing an ODD" on page 318](#)
  - ["Installing a LSD module" on page 309](#)

## Front panel and external connectors

---

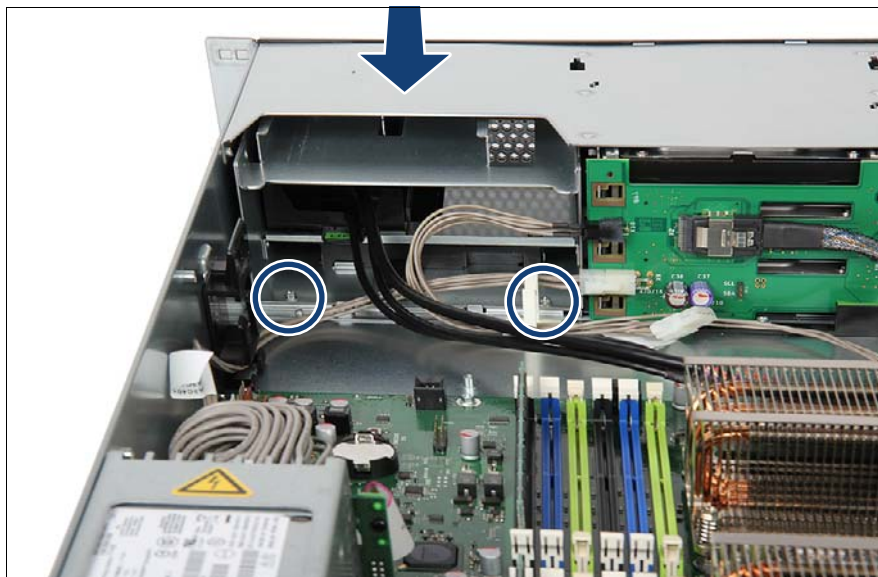


Figure 266: Inserting the front panel cage

- ▶ Insert the front panel cage.
- ▶ Fasten the front panel cage with two screws

### Panelhousing

- ▶ ["Installing the front panel module" on page 373](#)



Figure 267: Inserting the front panel cage

- ▶ Insert the front panel cage.
- ▶ Fasten the front panel cage with the screw.

#### 13.4.1.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ Connect all cables from the modules that are installed in the front panel cage.
  - Front panel cable:
  - Front LAN cable:
  - Front VGA cable:
  - ODD cable:
  - LSD cable:
- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)

## Front panel and external connectors

---

- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

---

# 14 System board and components

## Safety notes



### CAUTION!

- Devices and components inside the server remain hot after shutdown. After shutting down the server, wait for hot components to cool down before installing or removing internal options.
- Circuit boards and soldered parts of internal options are exposed and can be damaged by static electricity. Always discharge static build-up (e.g. by touching a grounded object) before handling electrostatic-sensitive devices (ESDs).
- Do not touch the circuitry on boards or soldered parts. Hold circuit boards by their metallic areas or edges.
- For further information, please refer to chapter "[Important information](#)" on page 39.

## 14.1 Basic information

- CMOS battery

CMOS memory (volatile BIOS memory) and the real-time clock are powered by a lithium coin cell (CMOS battery). This cell lasts up to ten years, depending on ambient temperature and use.

If the CMOS battery is depleted or falls below minimum voltage levels, it need to be replaced immediately.

- UFM (USB Flash Module)

The server can be equipped with a USB Flash Module (UFM).

- TPM (Trusted Platform Module)

The system board is optionally equipped with a Trusted Platform Module (TPM). This module enables programs from third party manufacturers to store key information, for example drive encryption using Windows Bitlocker Drive Encryption.

- SCU (SKU) key

The SCU (SKU) key enables the SAS functionality of the Onboard controller.

# 14.2 Replacing the CMOS battery



Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)



Hardware: 5 minutes

**Tools:** tool-less; recommended: tooth pick

### Safety notes



#### CAUTION!

- The CMOS battery must be replaced with an identical battery or with a battery type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Keep lithium batteries away from children.
- Do not throw batteries into the trash can. Lithium batteries must be disposed of in accordance with local regulations concerning special waste.
- For further safety information, please refer to section "Environmental protection" in the operating manual of your server.
- **Ensure to insert the CMOS battery with the positive pole facing up!**

### 14.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

## 14.2.2 Removing the battery

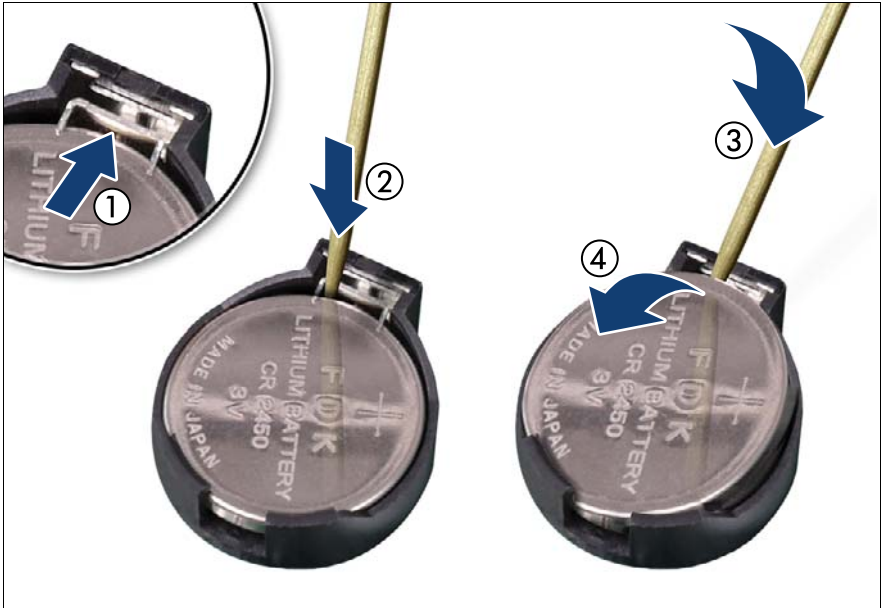


Figure 268: Replacing the CMOS battery

- ▶ Press out on the locking spring to eject the depleted CMOS battery (1).
- ▶ If the CMOS battery cannot be ejected this way, use a toothpick (recommended) or similar tool as a lever: Insert the toothpick between the battery and locking spring as shown (2).



### CAUTION!

Do not use sharp-edged tools like screw drivers as they may damage system board components when slipping.

- ▶ Carefully pry the depleted CMOS battery out of its socket as shown (3).
- ▶ Remove the CMOS battery (4).



Do not throw the CMOS battery into the trash can. Lithium batteries must be disposed of in accordance with local regulations concerning special waste.

### 14.2.3 Installing the CMOS battery

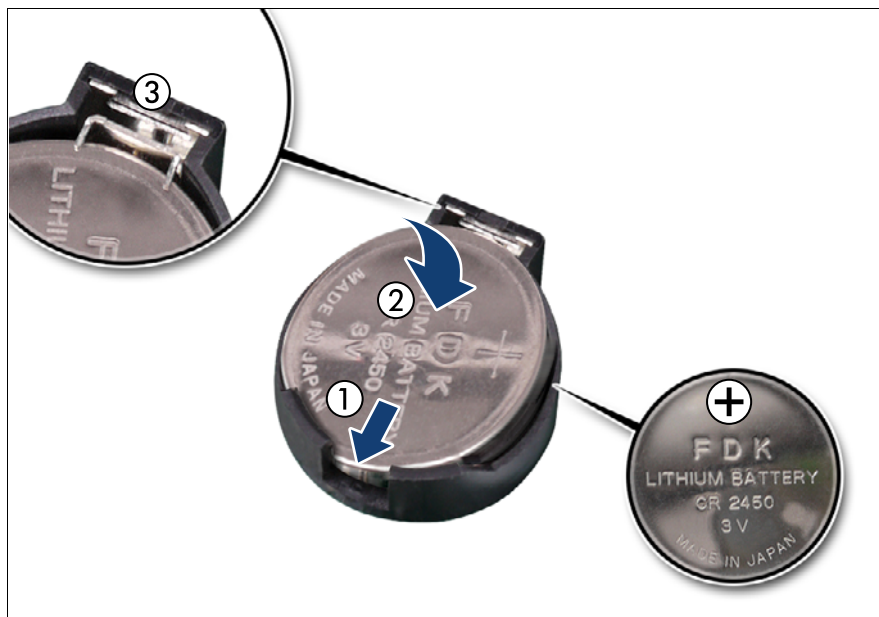


Figure 269: Installing the CMOS battery

- ▶ At a slight angle, fit the new CMOS battery into its socket as shown (1).



**CAUTION!**

Ensure to insert the CMOS battery with the positive pole (label side) facing up as shown (see close-up).

- ▶ Fold down the CMOS battery (2) until it locks in place.
- ▶ Ensure that the locking spring (3) is properly engaged.

### 14.2.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ Dispose of the CMOS battery in accordance with local regulations concerning special waste.
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)

- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying system information backup / restore" on page 83](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying the system time settings" on page 91](#)

## 14.3 USB Flash Module (UFM)

This section provides information on how to install, remove or replace the USB Flash Module (UFM).

### 14.3.1 Installing the UFM



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**  
**Software: 5 minutes**

<b>Tools:</b> tool-less
-------------------------

#### 14.3.1.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

## System board and components

### 14.3.1.2 Installing the UFM

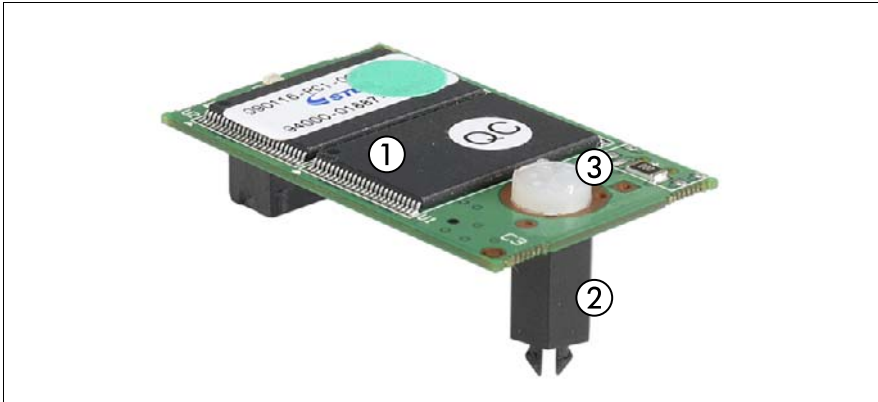


Figure 270: UFM kit

1	USB Flash Module (UFM)	2	UFM spacer
3	UFM nylon screw		

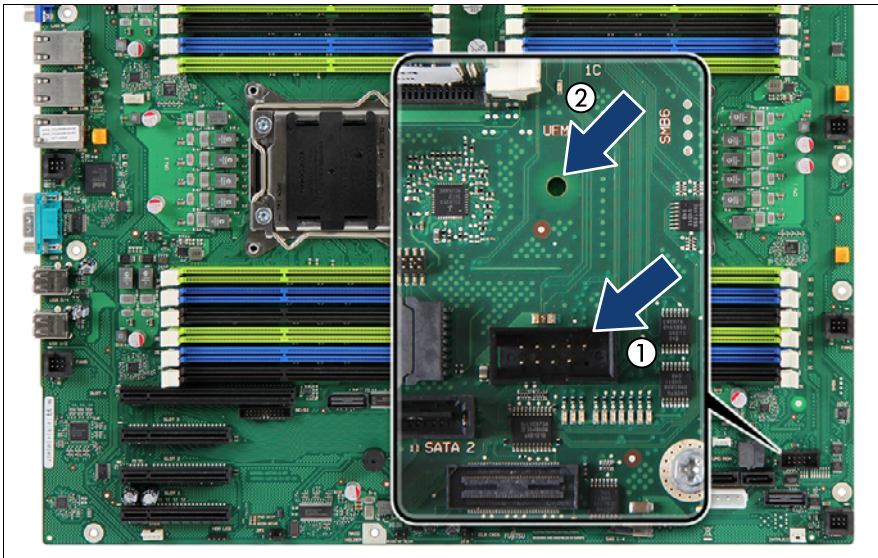


Figure 271: UFM mounting location

1	UFM connector	2	Cut-out for UFM spacer
---	---------------	---	------------------------

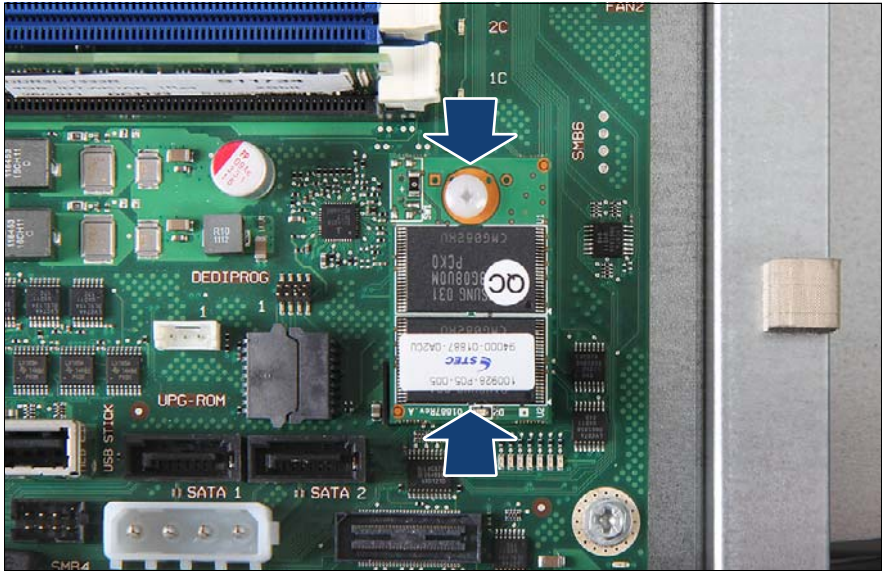


Figure 272: Installing the UFM

- ▶ Connect the UFM to the system board, snapping in the UFM spacer.

### 14.3.1.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

### 14.3.1.4 Software configuration

The UFM delivery set includes the "Recovery Tool CD" to setup the ESXi configuration. Proceed as follows:

- ▶ Switch on the server.

## System board and components

---

- ▶ Right after switching on the server, insert the "Recovery Tool CD" into the DVD drive and close the drive tray.
- ▶ The server should now boot from the "Recovery Tool CD".
- ▶ Follow the on-screen instructions.

### 14.3.2 Removing the UFM



**Field Replaceable Unit  
(FRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH0 / (+) No. 0 screw driver

### 14.3.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ "Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73
- ▶ "Locating the defective server" on page 51
- ▶ "Shutting down the server" on page 54
- ▶ "Disconnecting power cords" on page 54
- ▶ "Getting access to the component" on page 57

### 14.3.2.2 Removing the UFM

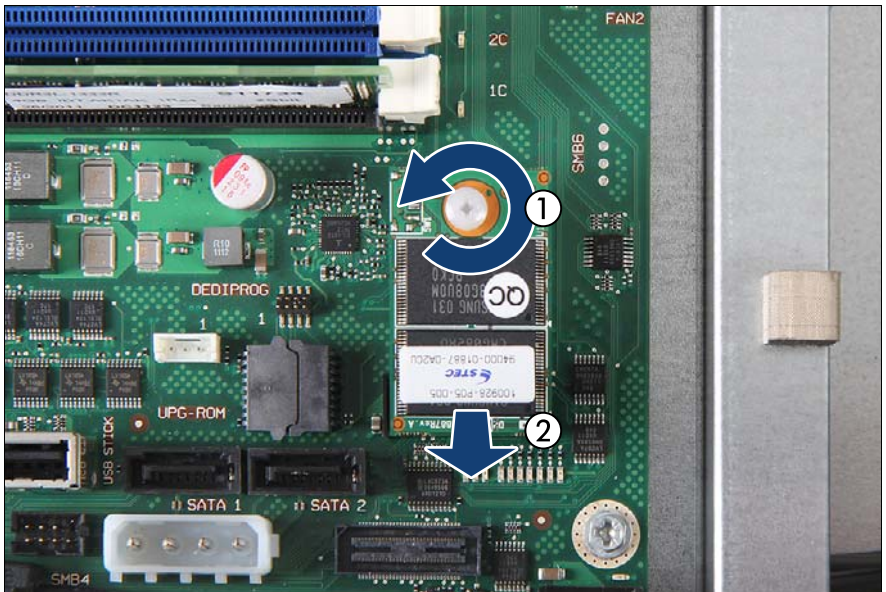


Figure 273: Removing the UFM (A)

- ▶ Remove the nylon screw on the defective UFM (1).
- ▶ Disconnect and remove the defective UFM (2).

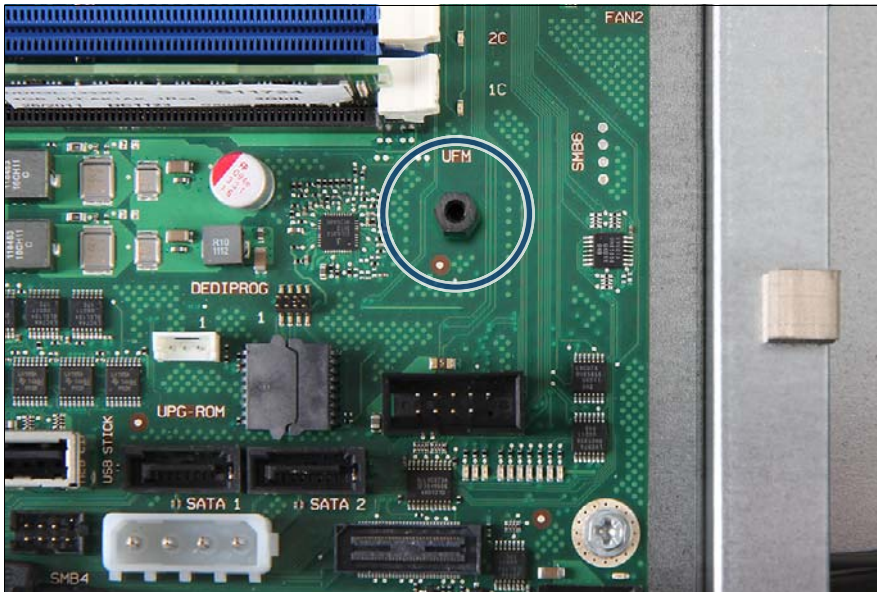


Figure 274: Removing the UFM (B)

- ▶ The UFM spacer remains on the system board.

### 14.3.2.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

### 14.3.3 Replacing the UFM



**Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)**



**Hardware: 10 minutes  
Software: 5 minutes**

**Tools:**

- Phillips PH0 / (+) No. 0 screw driver
- combination pliers and flat nose pliers

#### 14.3.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

#### 14.3.3.2 Removing the UFM

- ▶ ["Removing the UFM" on page 414](#)
- ▶ The UFM spacer remains on the system board.

### 14.3.3.3 Installing the new UFM

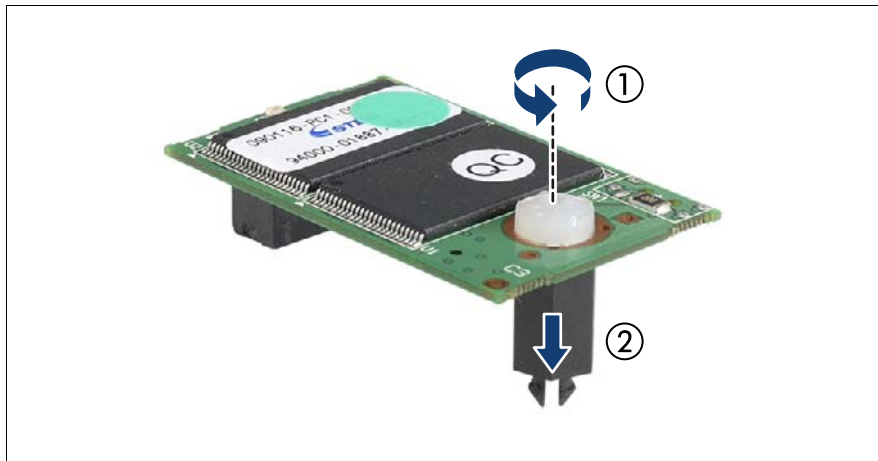


Figure 275: Preparing the new UFM

- ▶ Remove the nylon screw from the new UFM (1).
- ▶ Remove the UFM spacer (2).

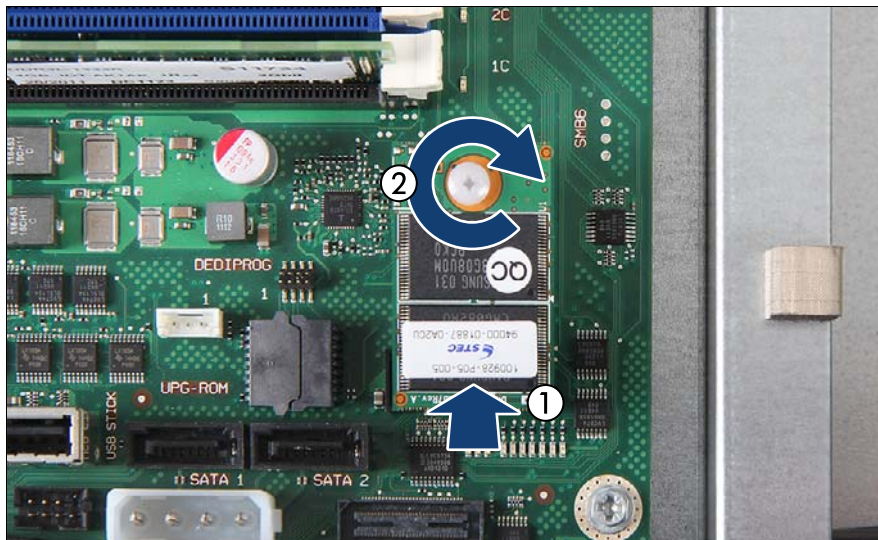


Figure 276: Installing the UFM (B)

- ▶ Fit the new UFM on the UFM connector and the remaining UFM spacer (1).
- ▶ Secure the UFM to the UFM spacer with the nylon screw (2).

### Destroying the defective UFM



#### CAUTION!

The UFM contains customer information (e.g. IP address, license numbers). After replacing the UFM, hand the defective UFM over to the customer. If the customer requests disposal of the defective UFM, proceed as follows:

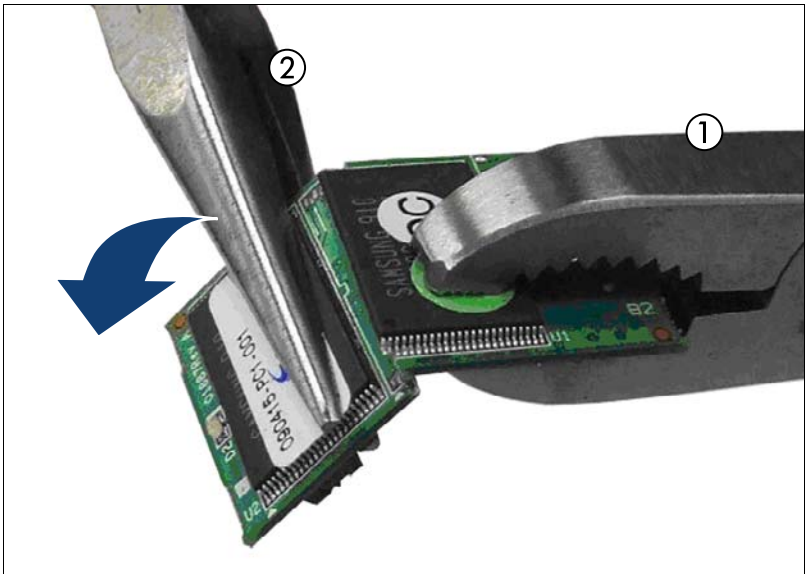


Figure 277: Destroying the defective UFM

- ▶ Use a pair of combination pliers (1) and flat nose pliers (2) to break the UFM in half as shown.

### 14.3.3.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the air duct" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Mounting the housing cover" on page 65](#)
- ▶ ["Sliding the server into the rack" on page 68](#)

If the server has been completely removed from the rack for maintenance purposes, reinstall and secure it in the rack as described in section ["Mounting the server in the rack" on page 65](#).

- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

### 14.3.3.5 Software configuration

The UFM delivery set includes the "Recovery Tool CD" to setup the ESXi configuration. Proceed as follows:

- ▶ Switch on the server.
- ▶ Right after switching on the server, insert the "Recovery Tool CD" into the DVD drive and close the drive tray.
- ▶ The server should now boot from the "Recovery Tool CD".
- ▶ Follow the on-screen instructions.

## 14.4 Trusted Platform Module (TPM)

### 14.4.1 Installing the TPM



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**  
**Software: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

Installing the TPM:

- Bit screw driver
- TPM bit insert <sup>(\*)</sup>

<sup>(\*)</sup> For the Japanese market:

- TPM module fixing tool (S26361-F3552-L909)

#### 14.4.1.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

## System board and components

### 14.4.1.2 Installing the TPM

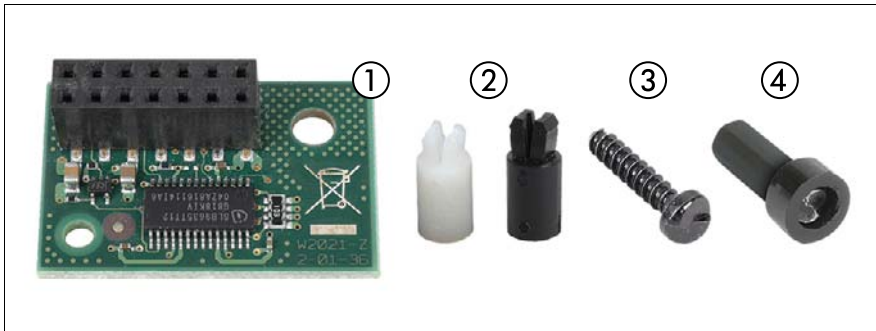



Figure 278: TPM kit

1	TPM (Trusted Platform Module)	3	Special screw for TPM
2	TPM spacer  The black TPM spacer is not used in this server.	4	TPM bit insert for TPM special screw

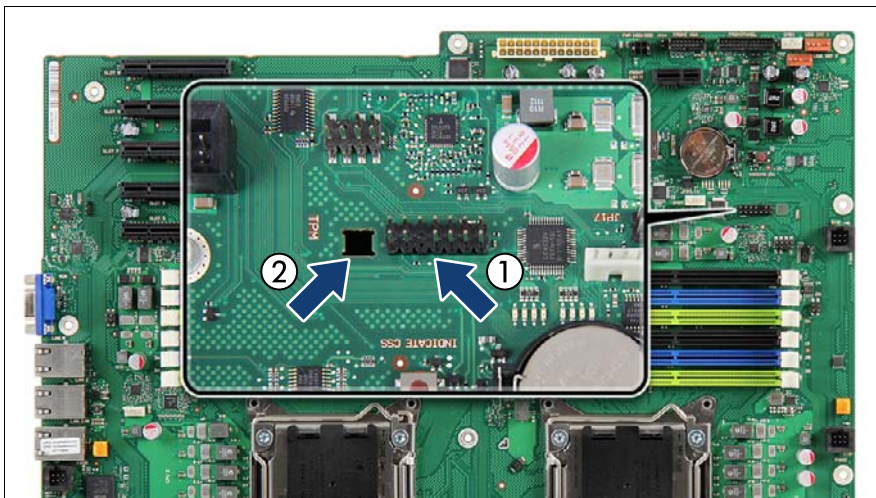


Figure 279: TPM mounting location

1	TPM connector	2	Cut-out for TPM spacer
---	---------------	---	------------------------

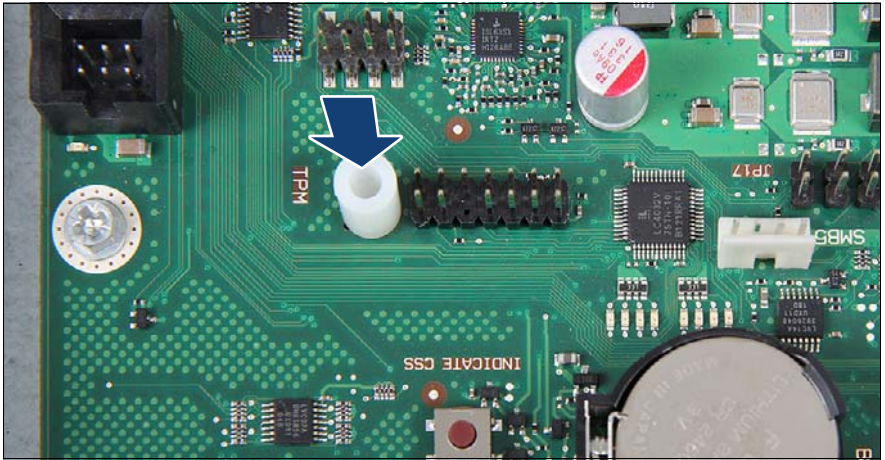


Figure 280: Installing the TPM spacer

- ▶ Snap the TPM spacer into the cut-out in the system board.

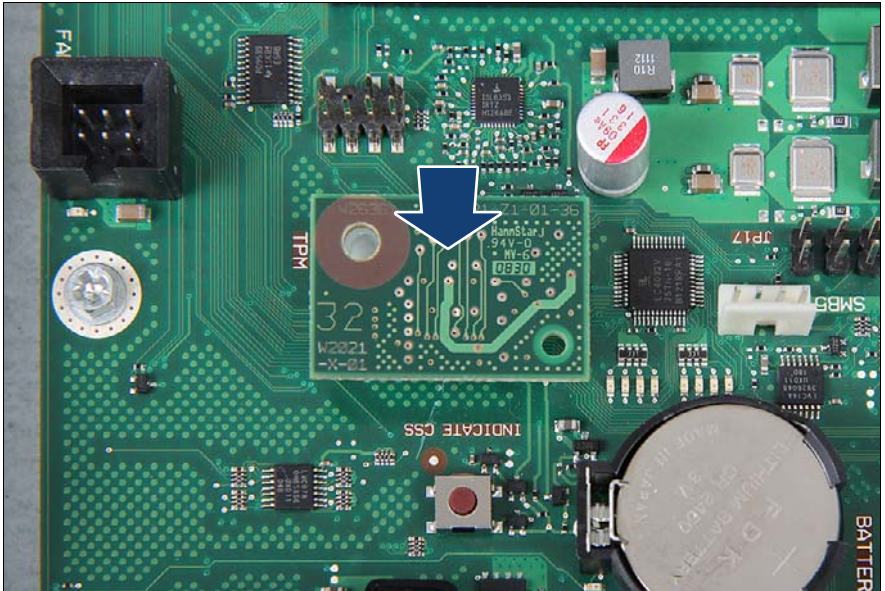


Figure 281: Installing the TPM

- ▶ Connect the new TPM to the system board.

## System board and components



Figure 282: TPM bit insert

- ▶ Attach the TPM bit insert or TPM module fixing tool (Japanese market) to a bit screw driver.

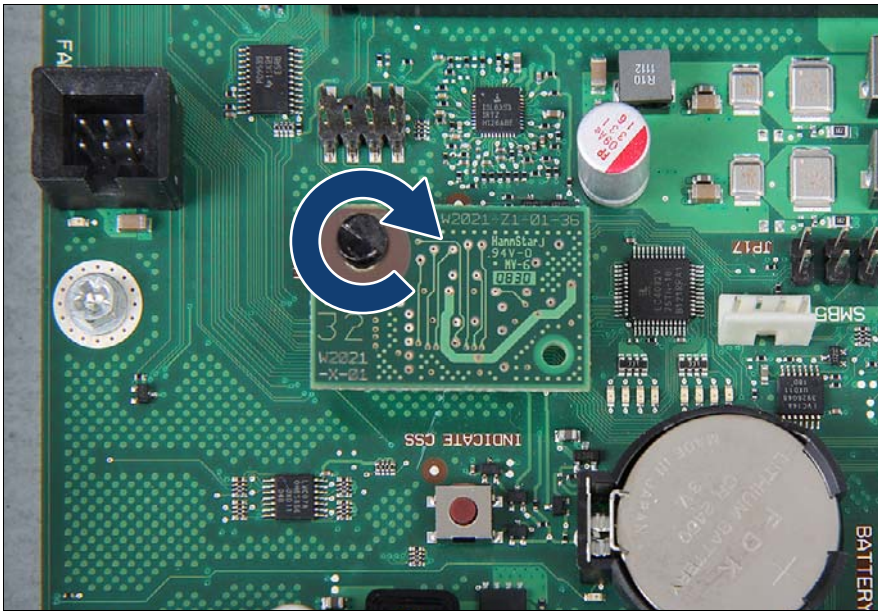


Figure 283: Securing the TPM

- ▶ Secure the TPM with the TPM screw using the TPM bit insert.



Do not fasten the screw too firmly. Stop as soon as the head of the screw lightly touches the TPM.

### 14.4.1.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ Enable TPM in the system board BIOS. Proceed as follows:
  - ▶ Switch on or restart your server.
  - ▶ As soon as the startup screen appears, press the **[F2]** function key to enter the BIOS.
  - ▶ Select the *Advanced* menu.
  - ▶ Select the *Trusted Computing* submenu.
  - ▶ Set the *TPM Support* and *TPM State* settings to *Enabled*.
  - ▶ Under *Pending TPM operation*, select the desired TPM operation mode.
  - ▶ Save your changes and exit the BIOS.



For detailed information on how to access the BIOS and modify settings, refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual available online at

<http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/manual/>.

- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

### 14.4.2 Removing the TPM



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 30 minutes**

**Tools:** Removing the system board:

- Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

Installing the TPM:

- Bit screw driver
- TPM bit insert (\*)

(\*) For the Japanese market:

- TPM module fixing tool (S26361-F3552-L909)



#### **CAUTION!**

Advise your contact persons that they must provide you with TPM backup copies. For security reasons, the TPM must be restored/re-saved by the customer. After installing a new system board, the TPM must be enabled. You may not clear the TPM data.

If the contact persons **DO NOT** have a backup copy available, inform them that replacing the TPM will cause to lose all data.

### 14.4.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ Before removing the TPM, it is necessary to remove BitLocker-protection from the computer and to decrypt the volume.

Ask the system administrator to turn off BitLocker-protection using the BitLocker setup wizard available either from the Control Panel or Windows Explorer:

- ▶ Open BitLocker Drive Encryption by clicking the *Start* button, clicking *Control Panel*, clicking *Security*, and then clicking *Bitlocker Drive Encryption*.



Administrator permission required. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.

- ▶ To turn off BitLocker and decrypt the volume, click *Turn Off BitLocker*, and then click *Decrypt the volume*.



Decrypting the volume may be time-consuming. By decrypting the volume, all of the information stored on that computer is decrypted.

For further information on how to disable BitLocker drive encryption, please refer to the Microsoft Knowledge Base.

Fujitsu service partners will find additional information (also available in Japanese) on the Fujitsu Extranet web pages.

- ▶ Disable TPM in the system board BIOS. Proceed as follows:
  - ▶ Switch on or restart your server.
  - ▶ As soon as the startup screen appears, press the **F2** function key to enter the BIOS.
  - ▶ Select the *Advanced* menu.
  - ▶ Select the *Trusted Computing* submenu.
  - ▶ Set the *TPM Support* and *TPM State* settings to *Disabled*.

## System board and components

---

- ▶ Save your changes and exit the BIOS.



For detailed information on how to access the BIOS and modify settings, refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual available online at

*(<http://jp.fujitsu.com/platform/server/primergy/manual/>).*

- ▶ "Locating the defective server" on page 51
- ▶ "Shutting down the server" on page 54
- ▶ "Disconnecting power cords" on page 54
- ▶ "Getting access to the component" on page 57
- ▶ "Removing the fan box" on page 164

### 14.4.2.2 Removing the TPM

- ▶ "Removing the defective system board" on page 446.
- ▶ Lay the system board on a soft, antistatic surface with its component side facing down.

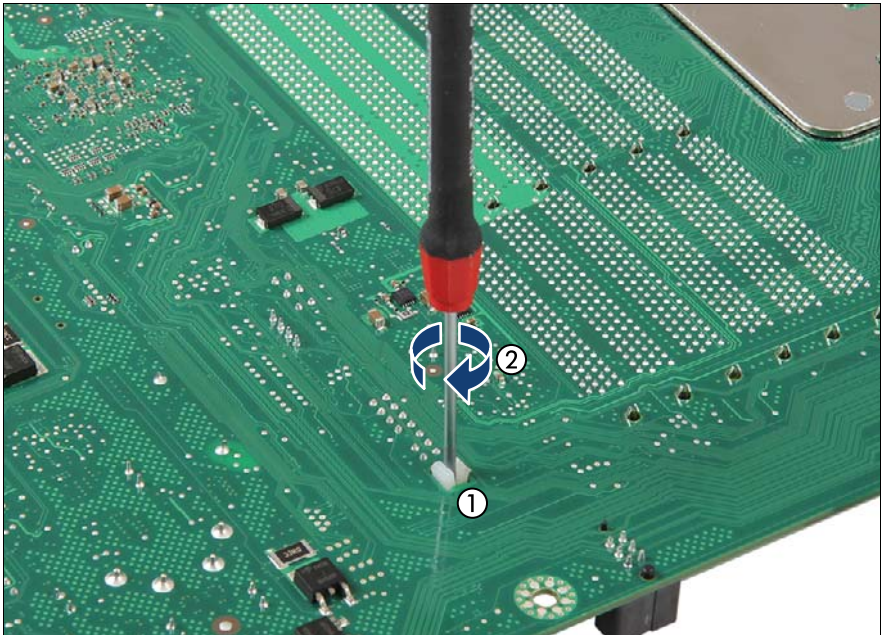


Figure 284: Removing the TPM screw

- ▶ Locate the slotted lower end of the TPM screw (1).
- ▶ Carefully loosen the TPM screw using a thin slotted screw driver (e.g. watchmaker's screw driver) or the dedicated TPM screw driver (Japanese market) (2).



#### **CAUTION!**

Ensure to turn the screw **clockwise** in order to remove it!

Slowly and carefully increase the pressure on the screw until it begins to turn. The effort when loosening the screw should be as low as possible.

## System board and components

---

Otherwise the thin metal bar may break, rendering it impossible to loosen the screw.

- ▶ Remove the TPM screw.
- ▶ Remove the defective TPM on the upper side of the system board.

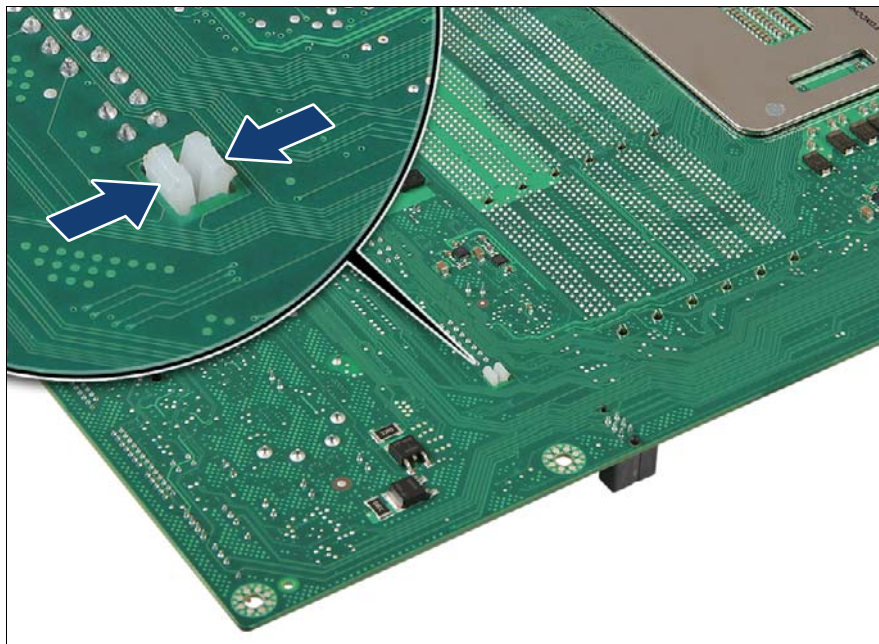


Figure 285: Removing the TPM spacer

- ▶ Using a small pair of combination pliers, press together the hooks on the TPM spacer (see close-up) and remove it from the system board.

**i** If the TPM is to be replaced, the TPM spacer may remain on the system board.

### 14.4.2.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)

## 14.4.3 Replacing the TPM



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 40 minutes**

**Tools:** Removing the system board:

- Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver

Replacing the TPM:

- Bit screw driver
- TPM bit insert (\*)
- thin slotted screw driver (2 x 0.4 mm) (\*)

(\*) For the Japanese market:

- Dedicated TPM screw driver (CWZ8291A)
- TPM module fixing tool (S26361-F3552-L909)



### **CAUTION!**

Advise your contact persons that they must provide you with TPM backup copies. For security reasons, the TPM must be restored/re-saved by the customer. After installing a new system board, the TPM must be enabled. You may not clear the TPM data.

If the contact persons **DO NOT** have a backup copy available, inform them that replacing the TPM will cause to lose all data.

### 14.4.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)

## System board and components

---

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 14.4.3.2 Removing the TPM

- ▶ ["Removing the TPM" on page 426](#)
- ▶ Leave the TPM spacer on the system board when removing the defective TPM.

### 14.4.3.3 Re-installing the TPM

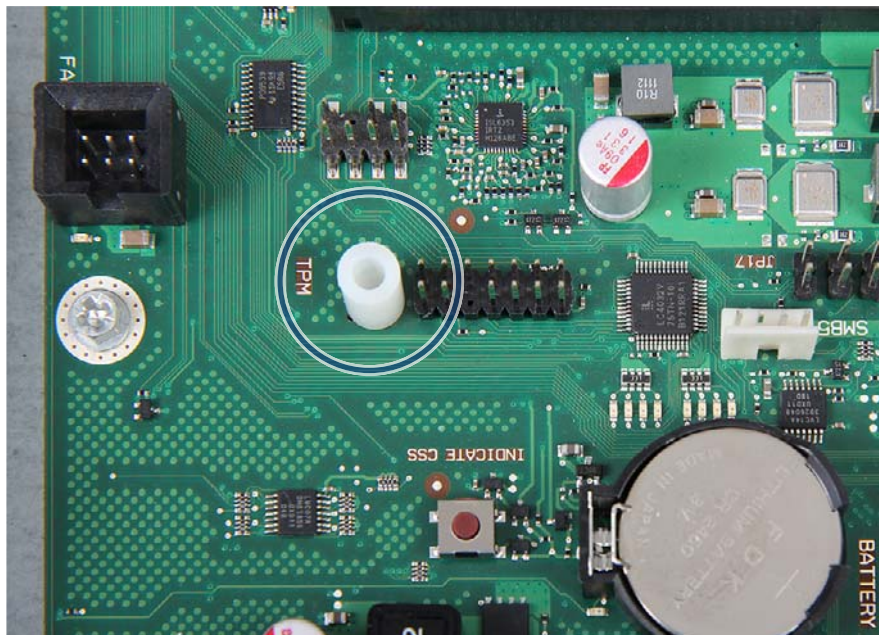



Figure 286: TPM spacer

- ▶ The TPM spacer is already present on the system board.
- ▶ ["Installing the TPM" on page 421](#)

#### 14.4.3.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 14.5 Onboard SAS enabling key

 The onboard SAS enabling key needs to be installed in order to enable SAS connector SAS 1-4 on the system board.

### 14.5.1 Installing the onboard SAS enabling key



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less

#### 14.5.1.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

### 14.5.1.2 Installing the onboard SAS enabling key

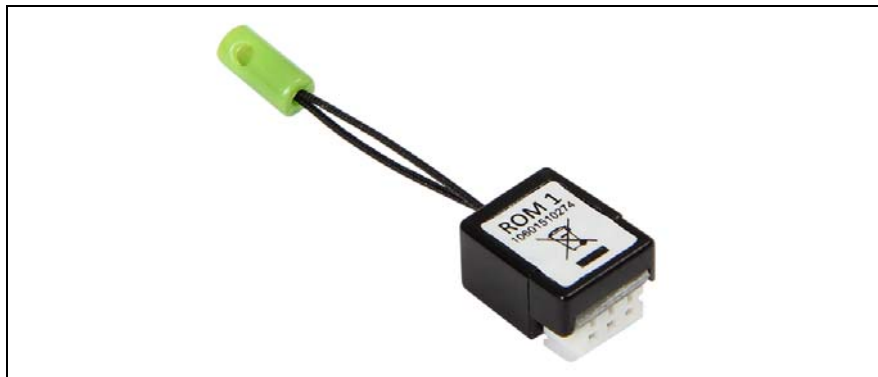


Figure 287: onboard SAS enabling key

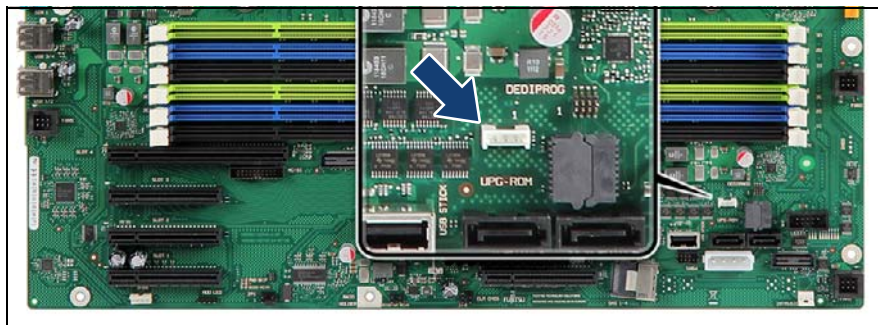


Figure 288: onboard SAS enabling key mounting location

- ▶ Locate the onboard SAS enabling key mounting location on the system board.

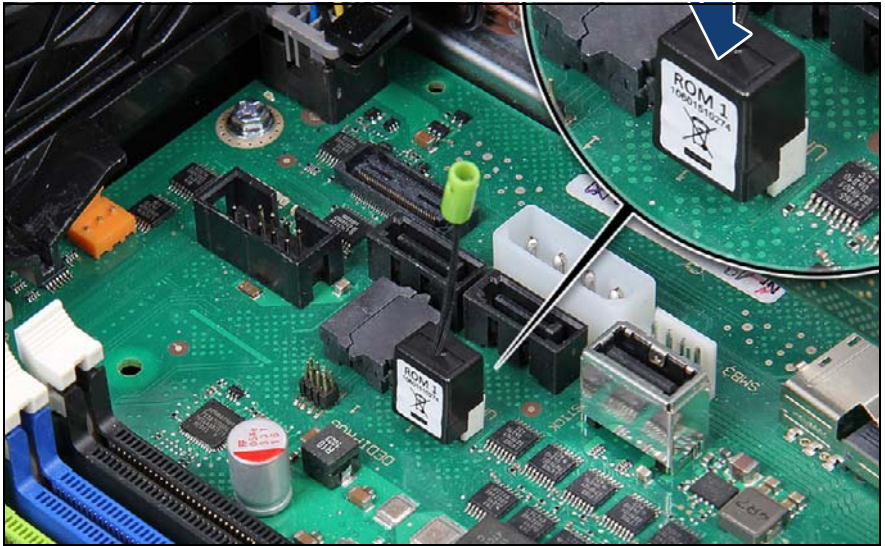


Figure 289: Onboard SAS enabling key mounting location

- ▶ Connect the onboard SAS enabling key to system board connector "SKU key".

### 14.5.1.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95.](#)

## 14.5.2 Removing the onboard SAS enabling key



**Field Replaceable Unit  
(FRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

<b>Tools:</b> tool-less
-------------------------

### 14.5.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

### 14.5.2.2 Removing onboard SAS enabling key



Figure 290: onboard SAS enabling key mounting location

- ▶ Firmly pull up on the release lash until the onboard SAS enabling key pops out of its connector.

### 14.5.2.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling"](#) on page 63
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source"](#) on page 69
- ▶ ["Switching on the server"](#) on page 71
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality"](#) on page 95.

### 14.5.3 Replacing the onboard SAS enabling key



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 5 minutes**

<b>Tools:</b> tool-less
-------------------------

#### 14.5.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51.](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

#### 14.5.3.2 Replacing the onboard SAS enabling key

- ▶ ["Removing onboard SAS enabling key" on page 437](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the onboard SAS enabling key" on page 434](#)

#### 14.5.3.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63.](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

## 14.6 iRMC microSD card

**i** The iRMC microSD card is necessary for using the embedded Lifecycle Management (eLCM) functionality of the iRMC. It requires a valid eLCM license key, which is always purchased together with the iRMC microSD card and activated through the iRMC web frontend.

For further information, please refer to the “ServerView embedded Lifecycle Management (eLCM)” user guide.

### 14.6.1 Installing the iRMC microSD card



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Average task duration: 5 minutes**

**Tools:** tool-less

#### 14.6.1.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

#### 14.6.1.2 Installing the iRMC microSD card



Figure 291: iRMC microSD card

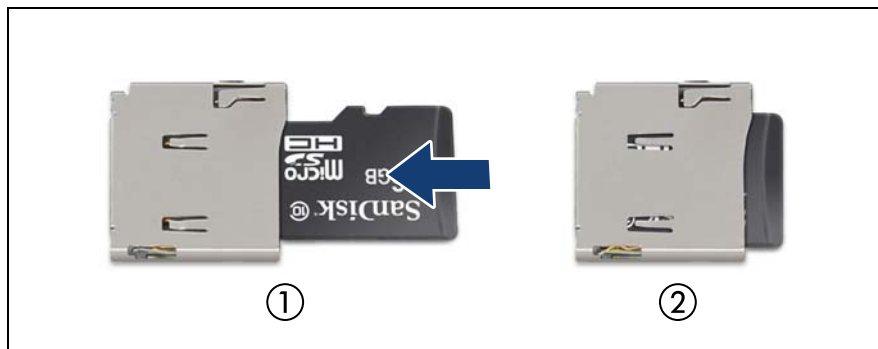


Figure 292: Installing the iRMC microSD card

- ▶ With the label facing up, insert the iRMC microSD card into the microSD card slot (1) as far as it will go (2).



The onboard position of the microSD card slot can be found in section ["Connectors and indicators on the system board"](#) on page 509.

### 14.6.1.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling"](#) on page 63.
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source"](#) on page 69
- ▶ ["Switching on the server"](#) on page 71

## 14.6.2 Removing the iRMC microSD card



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Average task duration:  
5 minutes**

**Tools:** Side-cutting pliers

### 14.6.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server"](#) on page 51.
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server"](#) on page 54
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords"](#) on page 54

- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

### 14.6.2.2 Removing the iRMC microSD card

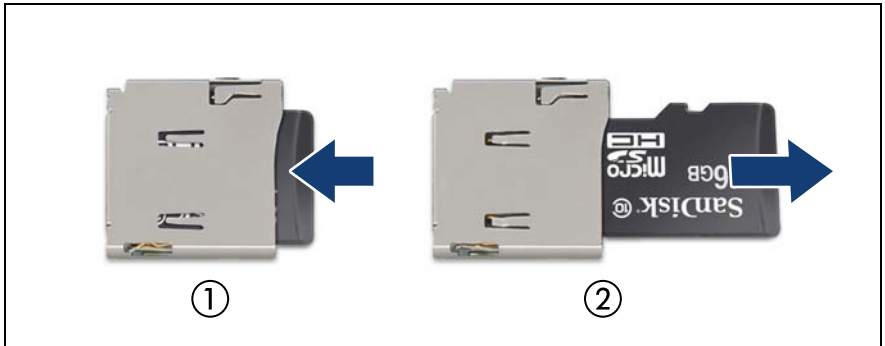


Figure 293: Installing the iRMC microSD card

- ▶ To eject the iRMC microSD card, gently push it in and then let go (1).
- ▶ Pull the iRMC microSD card straight out of its slot (2).

### Destroying the defective iRMC microSD card



#### CAUTION!

The iRMC microSD card contains customer information. After replacing the iRMC microSD card, hand the defective card over to the customer. If the customer requests disposal of the defective iRMC microSD card, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Using a pair of side-cutting pliers, cut the iRMC microSD card in half.

### 14.6.2.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63.](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)

### 14.6.3 Replacing the iRMC microSD card



**Upgrade and Repair Unit  
(URU)**



**Average task duration:  
5 minutes**

**Tools:** Side-cutting pliers

#### 14.6.3.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51.](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)

#### 14.6.3.2 Replacing the iRMC microSD card

- ▶ Remove the defective iRMC microSD card as described in section ["Removing the iRMC microSD card" on page 440.](#)
- ▶ Install the new iRMC microSD card as described in section ["Installing the iRMC microSD card" on page 439.](#)

#### 14.6.3.3 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63.](#)
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)

## 14.7 Replacing the system board



**Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)**



**Hardware: 50 minutes**  
**Software: 10 minutes**

**Tools:** Replacing the system board:

- Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver
- Magnifying glass for inspecting processor socket springs (recommended)

Replacing the TPM:

- Bit screw driver
- TPM bit insert <sup>(\*)</sup>
- thin slotted screw driver (2 x 0.4 mm) <sup>(\*)</sup>

<sup>(\*)</sup> For the Japanese market:

- Dedicated TPM screw driver (CWZ8291A)
- TPM module fixing tool (S26361-F3552-L909)

If a UFM is installed:

- Phillips PH1 / (+) No. 1 screw driver

### Note on TPM



The system board can be equipped with an optional TPM (Trusted Platform Module). This module enables third party programs to store key information (e. g. drive encryption using Windows Bitlocker Drive Encryption).

If the customer is using TPM functionality, the TPM has to be removed from the defective system board and connected to the new system board. For a detailed description, please refer to [section "Replacing the TPM" on page 431](#).

The TPM is activated in the system BIOS.



### CAUTION!

- Before replacing the system board, ask the customer whether TPM functionality is used.

## System board and components

---

- If the customer is using TPM functionality, remove the TPM from the old system board and install it on the new system board.

Advise your contact persons that they must provide you with TPM backup copies. For security reasons, the TPM must be restored / re-saved by the customer. After installing a new system board the TPM must be enabled. You may not clear the TPM data.

If the contact persons **DO NOT** have a backup copy available, inform them that replacing the TPM will cause to lose all data.

### Note on system information backup / restore



The front panel module contains the Chassis ID EPROM that contains system information like server name and model, housing type, serial number and manufacturing data.

To avoid the loss of non-default settings when replacing the system board, a backup copy of important system configuration data is automatically stored from the system board NVRAM to the Chassis ID EPROM. After replacing the system board the backup data is restored from the Chassis ID board to the new system board.



#### **CAUTION!**

For that reason the front panel module and system board must not be replaced simultaneously! In this case, restoring the system configuration data on the system board would fail.

### Note on network settings recovery






When replacing network controllers or the system board, network configuration settings in the operating system will be lost and replaced by default values. This applies to all static IP address and LAN teaming configurations.

Ensure to note down your current network settings before replacing a controller or the system board.

## 14.7.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Note on network settings recovery" on page 444](#)
- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73](#)
- ▶ ["Disabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 74](#)
- ▶ ["Locating the defective server" on page 51](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ Disconnect all external cables.
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the power backplane" on page 117](#)

### 14.7.2 Removing the defective system board

- ▶ Remove all cables from the system board.
- ▶ Remove the following components from the system board as shown in the related sections:
  - Heat sink: see [section "Removing processor heat sinks" on page 299](#)
    -  Leave the processor on the defective board for now.
  - Memory modules: see section ["Removing memory modules" on page 264](#)
    -  Ensure to take note of the memory modules' mounting positions for reassembly.
  - Expansion cards: see section ["Removing expansion cards" on page 187](#)
    -  Ensure to take note of the controllers' mounting positions and cable connections for reassembly.
  - UFM: see section ["Removing the UFM" on page 414](#)
  - onboard SAS enabling key: see section ["Removing the onboard SAS enabling key" on page 436](#)
  - iRMC microSD card: see section ["Removing the iRMC microSD card" on page 440](#)
  - SAS RAID controller: see section ["Removing the SAS RAID controller" on page 196](#)

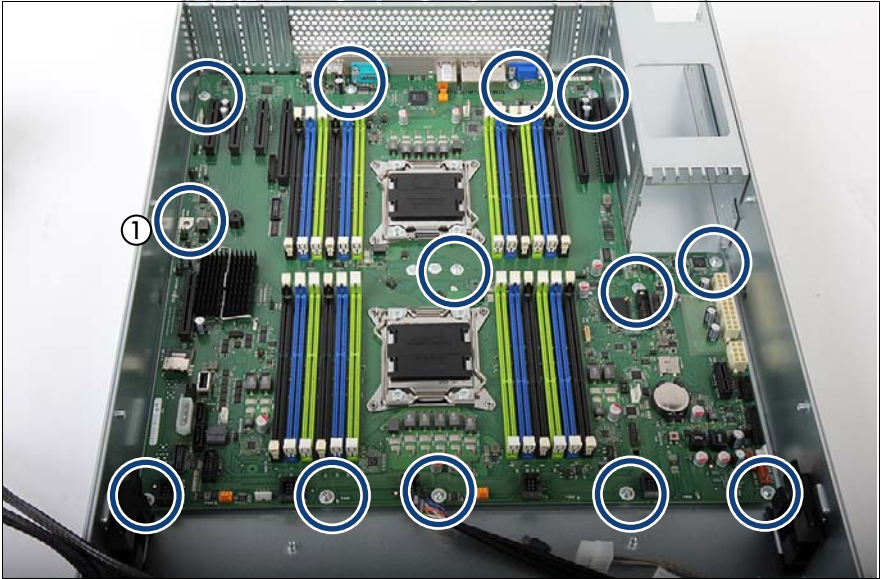


Figure 294: Detaching the system board

- ▶ Remove 13 screws from the system board (see circles).



If there was an SAS RAID controller installed the screw (1) is already removed.

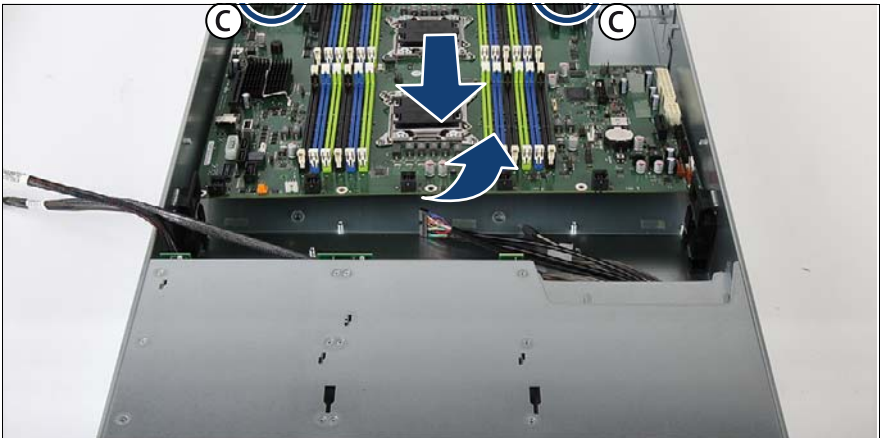


Figure 295: Removing the system board

## System board and components

---

- ▶ Slightly lift up the system board by the memory module ejectors and a PCI slot (1) in order to detach it from the centering bolts (C).
- ▶ Carefully shift the system board towards the server front until the plug shells disengage from the cut-outs in the connector panel.
- ▶ Hold the defective system board by the memory module ejectors and a PCI slot and at a slight angle lift it out of the chassis.
- ▶ ["Removing the TPM" on page 429](#)
- ▶ Remove the UFM spacer from the systemboard

### 14.7.3 Installing the system board

#### 14.7.3.1 Mounting the system board

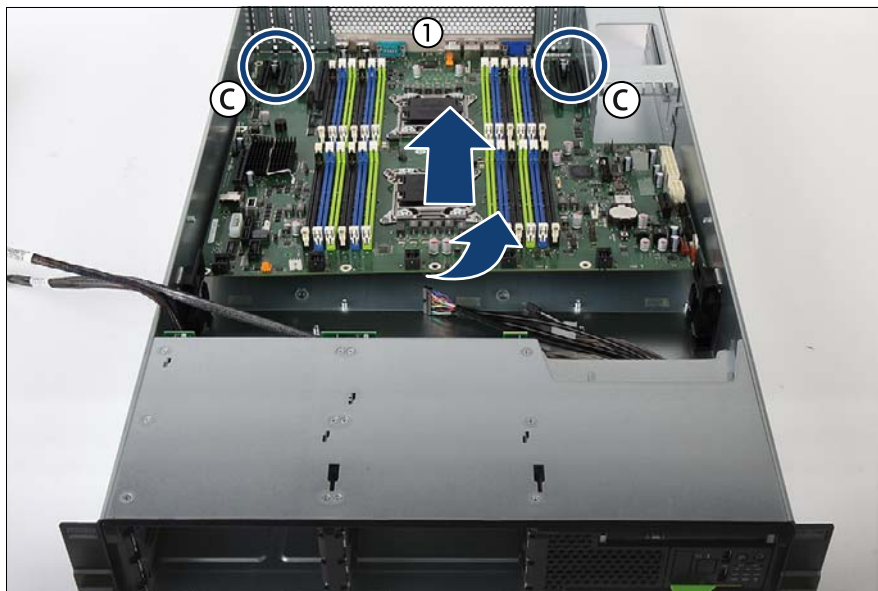


Figure 296: Installing the system board

- ▶ Hold the new system board by the memory module ejectors and a PCI slot.



#### **CAUTION!**

- Do not lift or handle the system board by any of its heat sinks!

- Ensure not to damage the EMI springs to comply with applicable EMC regulations and satisfy cooling requirements and fire protection measures.
- ▶ At a slight angle, lower the system board into the chassis.
- ▶ Carefully shift the system board towards the server rear until the plug shells engage with the cut-outs in the connector panel (1).
- ▶ Lower the system board onto the centering bolts (C). Ensure that the system board is properly seated on both centering bolts.

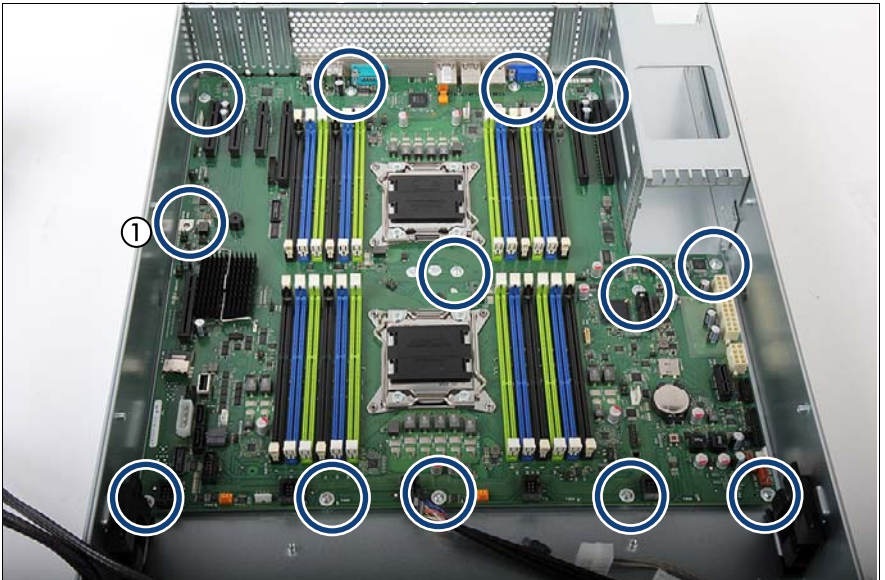


Figure 297: Securing the system board

- ▶ Secure the system board with 13 screws (M3 x 6 mm, C26192-Y10-C68) (see circles).
  - i** If you want to install a SAS RAID controller, do not insert the screw mark with (1).
  - i** Screw torque: 0.6 Nm (not applicable for the Japanese market)  
Tighten the screws in a cross diagonal pattern.
- ▶ Verify the settings on the new system board (see figure ["Onboard settings" on page 523](#)).

### 14.7.3.2 Swapping processors

#### Preparing the processor socket load plates on the new system board

- ▶ ["Removing the protective socket cover" on page 277](#)

#### Removing processors from the defective system board

- ▶ Carefully remove the processors from their sockets on the defective system board as described in ["Removing the processor" on page 286](#).



Remove and reinstall one processor at a time. Do not remove the second processor from the defective system board until the first processor has been installed on the new system board.

#### Installing processors on the new system board

- ▶ ["Installing the new processor" on page 276](#).



#### Installing protective socket covers on the defective system board



Since the defective system board is sent back for repair, protect the delicate processor socket springs with a socket cover.

- ▶ ["Installing the protective cover" on page 288](#)

## 14.7.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ Reconnect all cables to the system board. For a complete cabling overview, please refer to section ["List of used cables" on page 481](#).
- ▶ Reinstall all remaining system board components as shown in the related sections:
  - SAS RAID controller: see section ["Installing the SAS RAID controller" on page 192](#)
  - onboard SAS enabling key: see section ["Installing the onboard SAS enabling key" on page 433](#)
  - Heat sinks: see section ["Installing processor heat sinks" on page 294](#)
  - Memory modules: see section ["Installing a memory module" on page 261](#)
    -  Install all memory modules into their original slots.
  - Expansion cards: see section ["Installing expansion cards" on page 184](#)
    -  Install all expansion cards into their original slots.
  - iRMC microSD card (if available): see section ["Installing the iRMC microSD card" on page 439](#)
  - UFM: install the UFM spacer to the system board and install the UFM see section ["Installing the UFM" on page 411](#)
  - TPM (if applicable): see section ["Installing the TPM" on page 421](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the power backplane" on page 119](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ If applicable, activate TPM functionality in the system BIOS under *Security > TPM (Security Chip) Setting > Security Chip*. For more information, refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility Reference Manual.
- ▶ Reconnect all external cables.
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Updating or recovering the system board BIOS and iRMC" on page 81](#)

## System board and components

---

- ▶ ["Verifying system information backup / restore" on page 83](#)
- ▶ ["Verifying the system time settings" on page 91](#)
- ▶ Inform the customer about changed WWN and MAC addresses. For further information, refer to section ["Looking up changed MAC / WWN addresses" on page 96](#).
- ▶ After replacing the system board in a server running Linux OS, ["Updating the NIC configuration file in a Linux environment" on page 93](#)
- ▶ ["Enabling SVOM boot watchdog functionality" on page 89](#)
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)
- ▶ Reconfigure your network settings in the operation system according to the original configuration of the replaced controller (expansion card or onboard).



Configuration of network settings should be performed by the customer.

For further information, please refer to section ["Note on network settings recovery" on page 444](#).

- ▶ If applicable, ["After replacing the system board" on page 99](#).

---

# 15 Conversion configurations

## Safety notes



### CAUTION!

- For further information, please refer to chapter "[Important information](#)" on page 39.

## 15.1 Basic information

### 15.1.1 Supported conversions

Start Configuration		Final Configuration		Upgrade kit #
1	6x 3.5-inch HDD	n.a .		
2	4x 2.5-inch HDD	4	8x 2.5-inch HDD	S26361-F1373-L424
		7	12x 2.5-inch HDD	S26361-F1373-L427
		3	4x 2.5-inch HDD + LTO	S26361-F1373-L423
		10		S26361-F1371-L572
3	4x 2.5-inch HDD + LTO	6	8x 2.5-inch HDD+LTO	S26361-F1373-L436
4	8x 2.5-inch HDD	7	12x 2.5-inch HDD	S26361-F1373-L247
		8	16x 2.5-inch HDD	S26361-F1373-L248
5	8x 2.5-inch HDD +tape/RDX	n.a.		
6	8x 2.5-inch HDD + LTO	n.a.		

## Conversion configurations

7	12x 2.5-inch HDD	8	16x 2.5-inch HDD	S26361-F1373-L378
8	16x 2.5-inch HDD	n.a.		

### 15.1.2 SAS cabling

Config	Cable	from	to
1	C8	X1 - 6x 3.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC1 -SAS controller
	C9	X2 - 6x 3.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC2 -SAS controller
2	C10	X1 - 4x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	SAS1-4 system board
2 (with controller)	C10	X1 - 4x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC1 -SAS controller
3	C10	X1 - 4x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC1 -SAS controller
4	C9	X1 - 4x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC1 -SAS controller
	C10	X1 - 4x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC2 -SAS controller
5	C8	X1 - 4x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC1 -SAS controller
	C10	X1 - 4x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC2 -SAS controller
6	C10	X1 - 4x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC1 -SAS controller
	C11	X1 - 4x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC2 -SAS controller
7	C9	X1 - 12x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC1 -SAS controller
	C9	X2 - 12x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC2-SAS controller
8	C7	X1 - 4x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	X3 - 12x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl
	C9	X1 - 12x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC1 -SAS controller
	C9	X2 - 12x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	MLC2 -SAS controller
10	C10	X1 - 4x 2.5-inch HDD Bpl	SAS1-4 system board
	C22	X5 -4x 2.5-inch SAS 3.0 HDD Bpl	MLC1 -SAS 3.0 controller
	C23	X5 -4x 2.5-inch SAS 3.0 HDD Bpl	MLC2 -SAS 3.0 controller

## 15.2 Basic Procedures



**Upgrade and Repair Unit (URU)**



**Hardware: 20 minutes**

**Tools:** Phillips PH2 / (+) No. 2 screw driver  
Slotted screw driver

### 15.2.1 Preliminary steps

- ▶ ["Suspending BitLocker functionality" on page 73.](#)
- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ Remove all external cables.
- ▶ ["Getting access to the component" on page 57.](#)
- ▶ ["Removing the fan box" on page 164](#)

### 15.2.2 Removing the front cover



The Removing of the front cover for all versions is to proceed in the same way.

## Conversion configurations

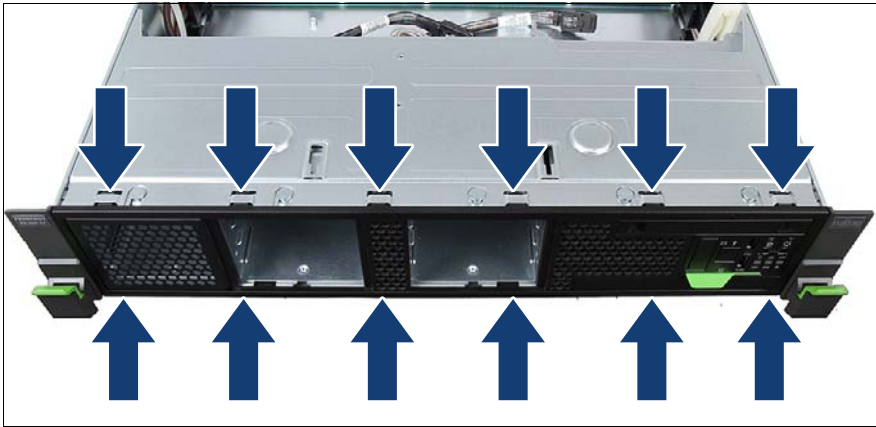


Figure 298: Removing the rack front cover (A)

- ▶ Disengage all tabs of the front cover.

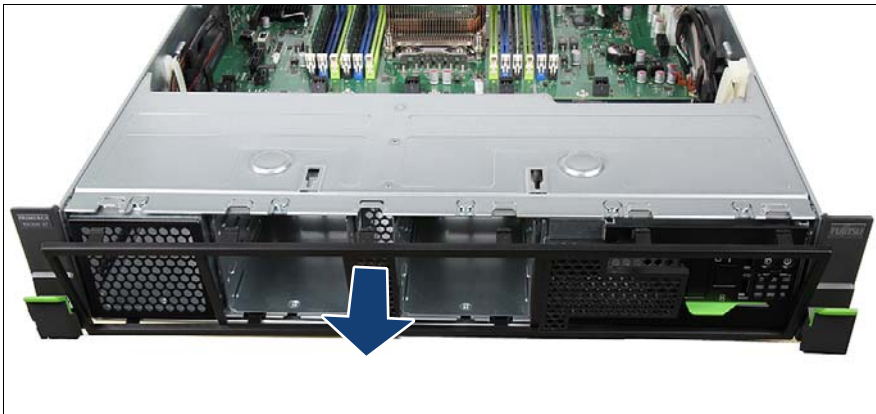


Figure 299: Removing the rack front cover (B)

- ▶ Carefully remove the front cover. Do not damage the hooks of the front cover.

### 15.2.3 Removing HDD cages and front panel cage

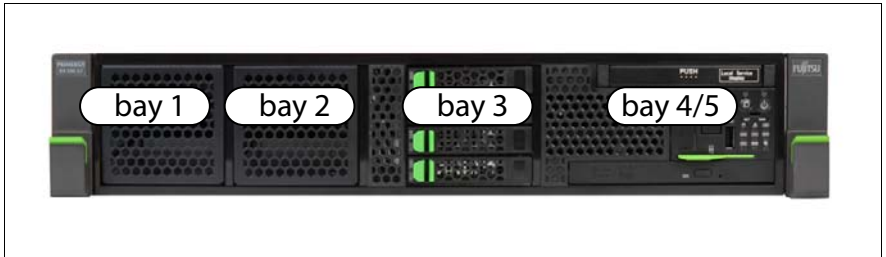


Figure 300: Bays to install HDD cages and the large frontpanel

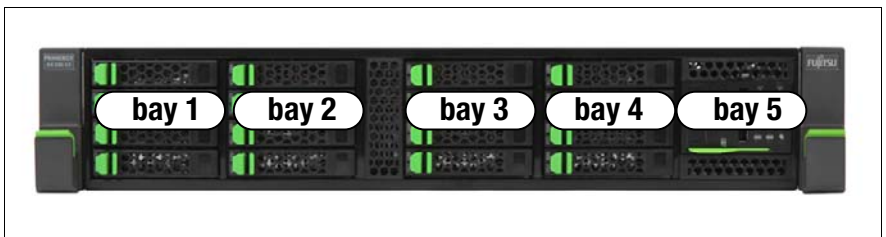


Figure 301: Bays to install HDD cages and the small frontpanel

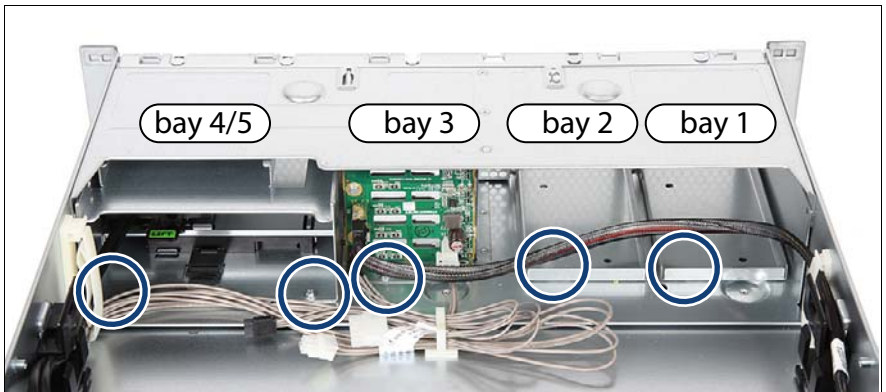


Figure 302: Removing HDD cages and front panel cage

For removing the bays:

- Remove the cables from the HDD backplane or the front panel module, that you want to remove.

## Conversion configurations

---

- Remove the screw from the HDD cage or dummy cage, or remove the two screws from the front panel cage, that you want to remove (see circles).

### 15.2.4 Installing HDD cage and front panel cage

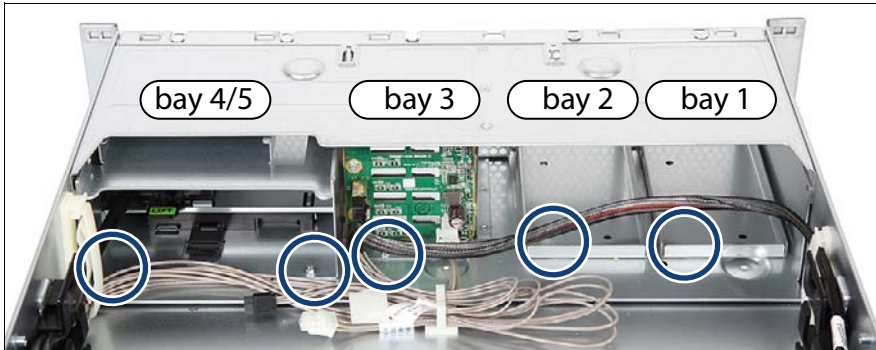


Figure 303: Installing HDD cages and front panel cage

For installing the bays:

- Insert the screw from the concerning HDD cage or the two screws from the front panel cage (see circles).
- Connect the cables to the HDD backplane or the front panel module. Depending on the start configuration and the end configuration you must exchange the cables of the SAS cabling. See in the following sections and the section ["Cabling plans" on page 485](#)

## 15.2.5 Installing the front cover

### 15.2.5.1 Multicage in bay 4/5

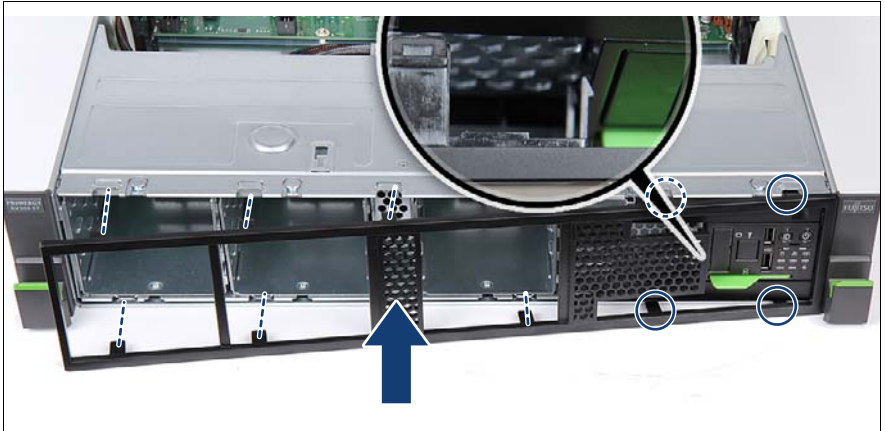


Figure 304: Installing the front cover for configurations with the multicage

- ▶ Insert the front cover starting with the right side. Regard the noses see close-up.



Regard that all tabs will be engaged in the recesses.

### 15.2.5.2 Panelhousing in bay 5

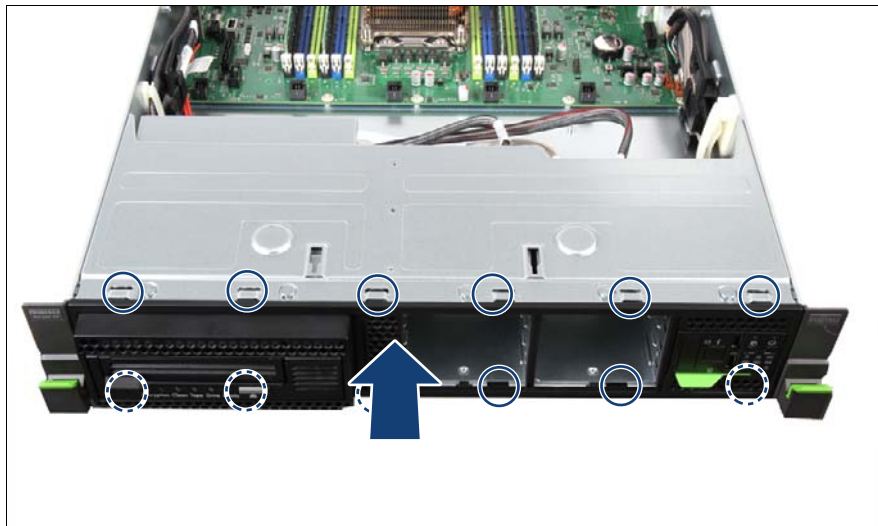


Figure 305: Installing the front cover for configurations with the small front panel cage

- ▶ Insert the front cover.



Regard that all tabs will be engaged in the recesses.

## 15.3 Converting

### 15.3.1 Configuration 2 to configuration 4

**i** The configuration 2 must include a SAS controller. Otherwise you must install a SAS controller as described in section ["Installing the SAS RAID controller" on page 192](#).

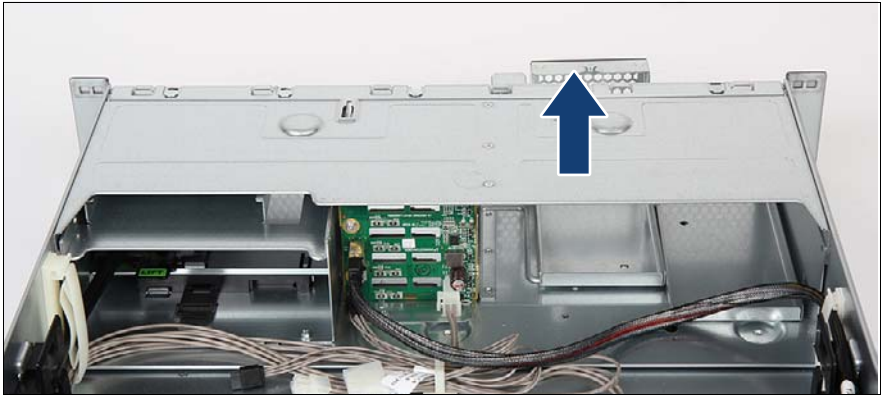


Figure 306: Removing the 2.5 inch dummy cage

- ▶ Remove the dummy cage from bay 2.

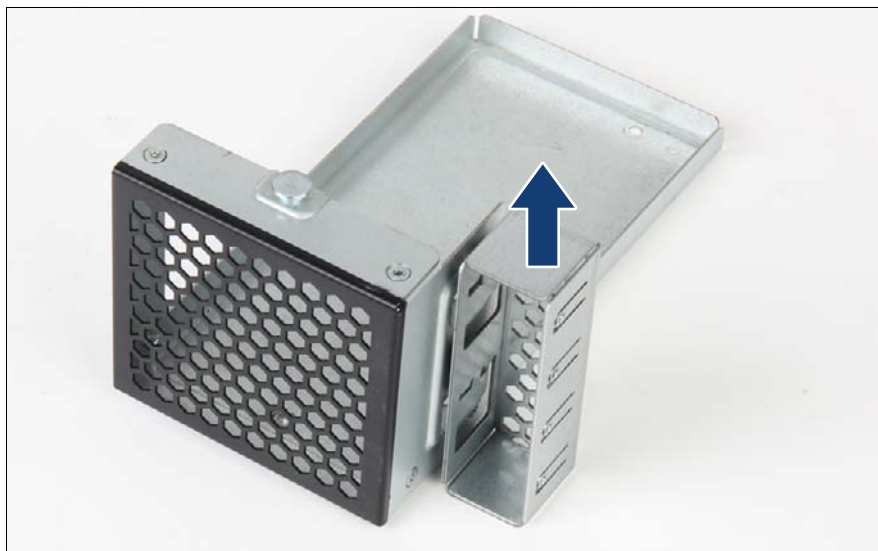


Figure 307: Removing the cover plate from the 2.5 inch dummy cage

- ▶ Remove the cover plate from the dummy cage.



Figure 308: Installing the cover plate

- ▶ Insert the cover plate.

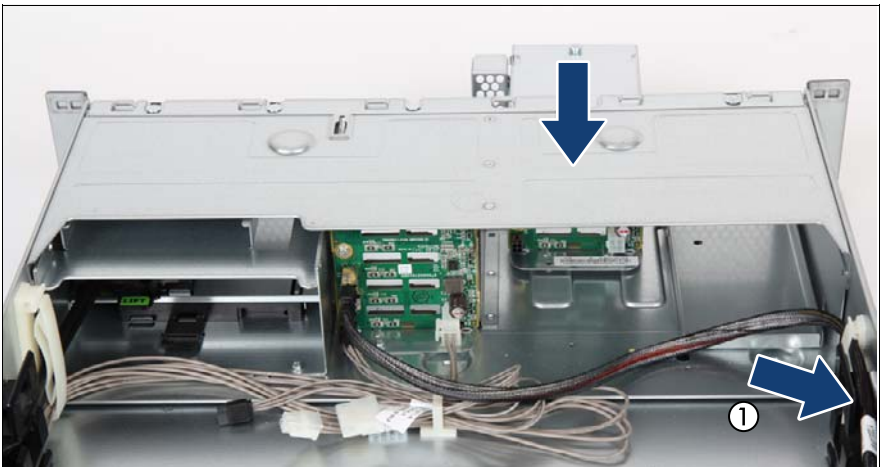


Figure 309: Installing the HDD cage

## Conversion configurations

- ▶ Insert the HDD cage.
- ▶ Remove cable C10 from the connector MLC1 of the 4x 2.5-inch SAS backplane (1).

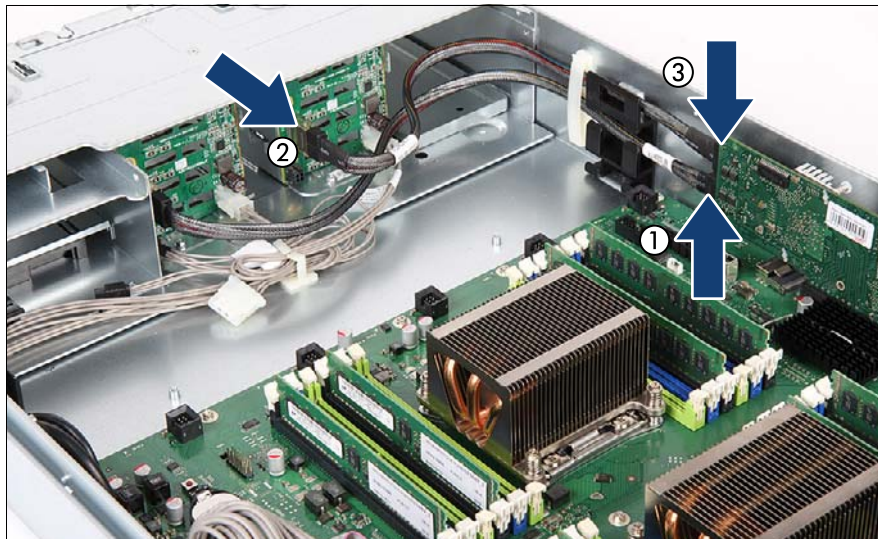


Figure 310: Connecting SAS cables

- ▶ Connect cable C10 to the connector MLC2 of the SAS controller (1).
- ▶ Connect the cable C9 to X1 of the 4x 2.5-inch SAS backplane (2) and the MLC1 of the SAS controller (3).
- ▶ Route the cables as shown.

### 15.3.2 Configuration 2 to configuration 7



The configuration 2 must include a SAS controller. Otherwise you must install a SAS controller as described in section ["Installing the SAS RAID controller"](#) on page 192.

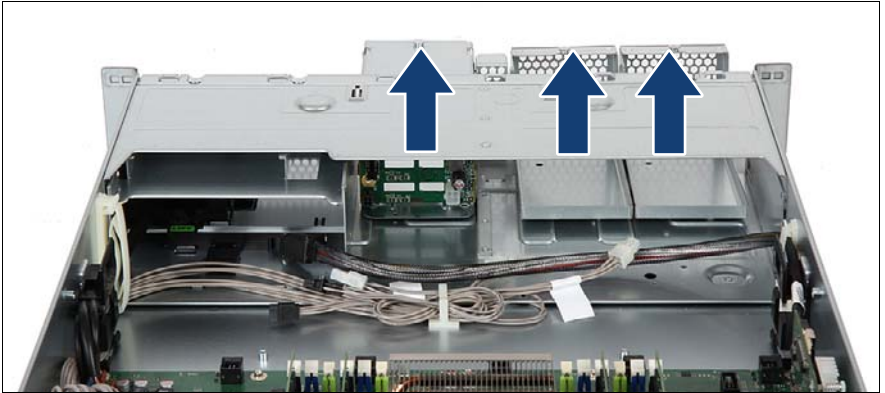


Figure 311: Removing the HDD cage and 2.5-inch dummy cages

- ▶ Remove all cables from the HDD cage backplane.
- ▶ Remove the HDD cage and the dummy cages from bay 1 and 2.

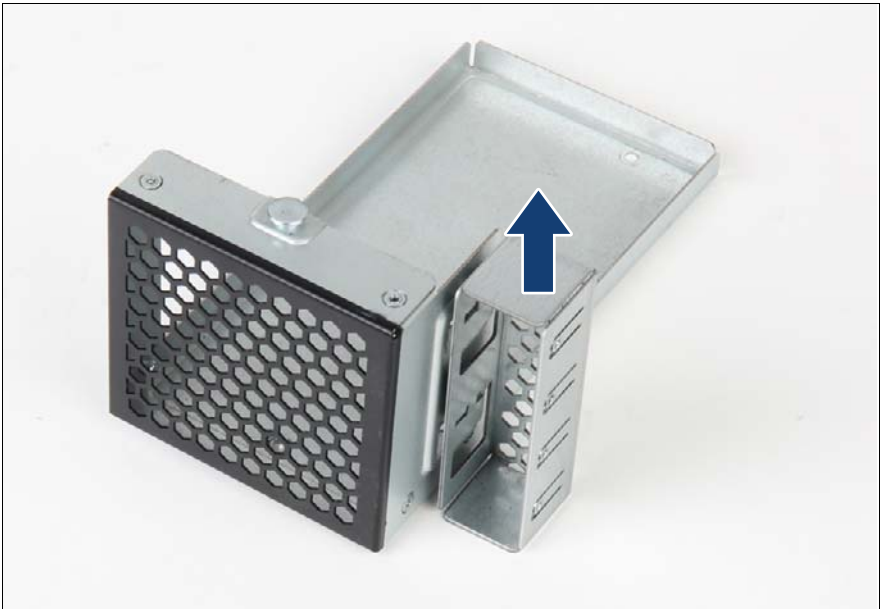


Figure 312: Removing the cover plate from the 2.5-inch dummy cage

- ▶ Remove the cover plate from the dummy cage.



Figure 313: Installing the cover plate to a HDD cage.

- ▶ Insert the cover plate to one of the HDD cages.
- ▶ ["Removing the 4x 2.5-inch SAS HDD backplane" on page 152](#)

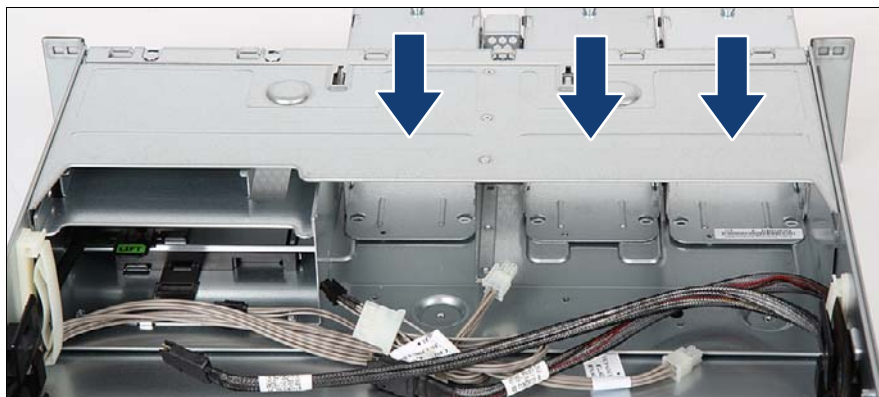


Figure 314: Installing the HDD cages

- ▶ Insert the HDD cages. The HDD cage with the cover plate must be installed into bay 2.

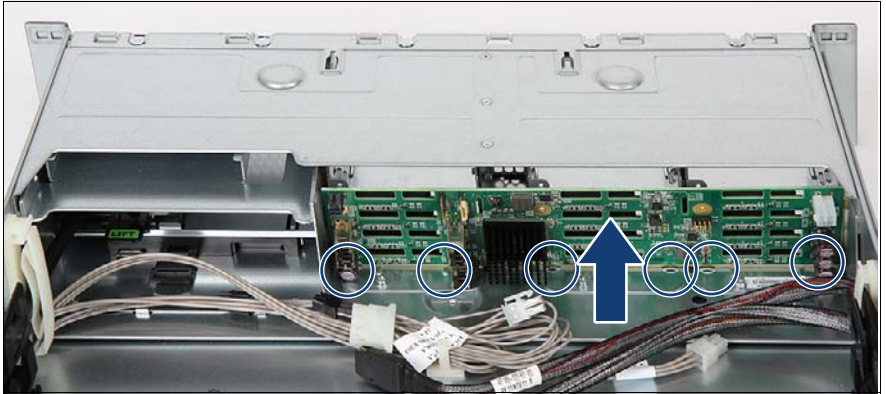


Figure 315: Installing the 12x 2.5-inch HDD backplane

- ▶ Insert the 12x 2.5-inch HDD backplane in the guiding recesses.
- ▶ Fold the 12x 2.5-inch HDD backplane.

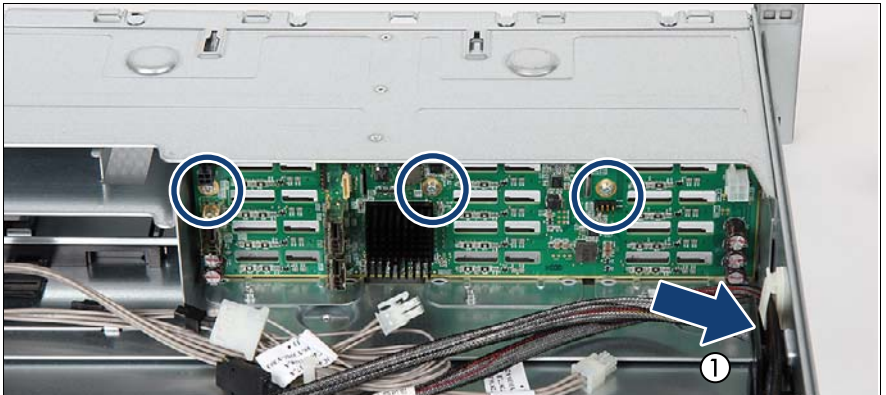


Figure 316: Installing the 12x 2.5-inch HDD backplane

- ▶ Fasten the 12x 2.5-inch HDD backplane with three screws.
- ▶ Remove cable C10 from the connector MLC1 of the SAS controller (1).

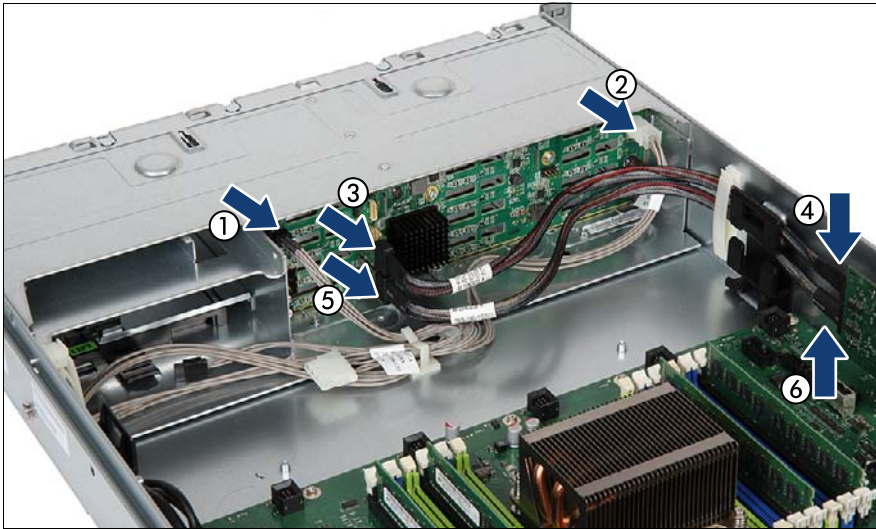


Figure 317: Connecting SAS cables

- ▶ Connect cable C5 to the connector X17 of the 12x 2.5-inch SAS backplane (1).
- ▶ Connect cable C4 to the connector X15 of the 12x 2.5-inch SAS backplane (2).
- ▶ Connect the cable C9 to X1 of the 12x 2.5-inch SAS backplane (3) and the connector MLC1 of the SAS controller (4).
- ▶ Connect the cable C9 to X2 of the 12x 2.5-inch SAS backplane (5) and the connector MLC2 of the SAS controller (6).
- ▶ Route the cables as shown.

### 15.3.3 Configuration 2 to configuration 3

**i** The configuration 2 must include a SAS controller. Otherwise you must install a SAS controller as described in section ["Installing the SAS RAID controller"](#) on page 192.

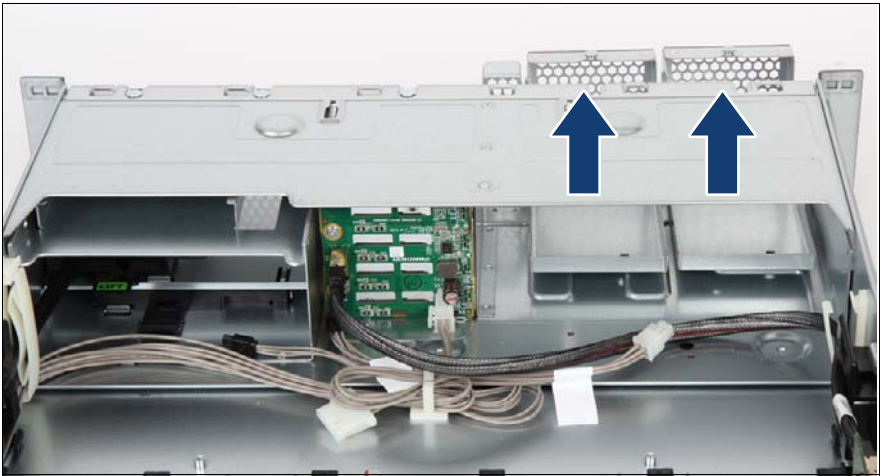


Figure 318: Removing the 2.5-inch dummy cages

- ▶ Remove the dummy cages.



Figure 319: Removing the cover plate from the 2.5-inch dummy cage

- ▶ Remove the cover plate from the dummy cage.
- ▶ Prepare the LTO drive see section ["Installing an LTO drive in 2.5-inch version"](#) on page 349.

## Conversion configurations



Figure 320: Installing LTO drive

- ▶ Insert the LTO drive.

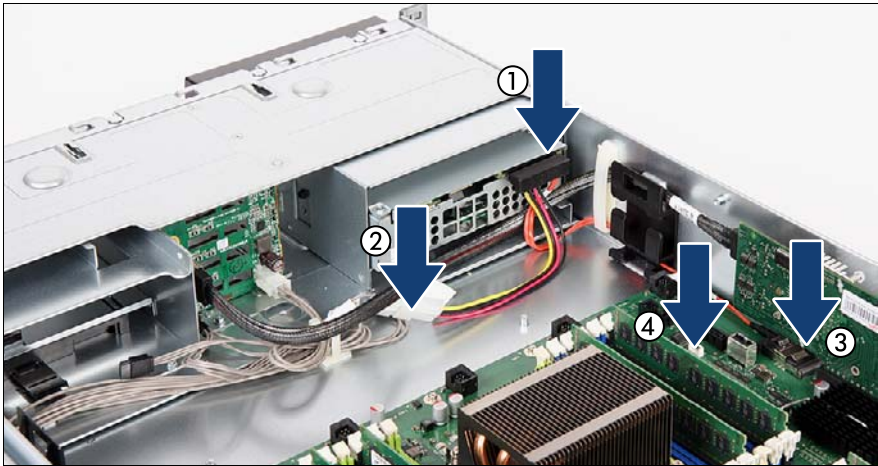


Figure 321: Connecting LTO drive cables

- ▶ Connect the cable C18 to LTO drive (1).
- ▶ Connect the power cable to the connector of the power cable (2).
- ▶ Connect the cable C18 to the connector SAS 1-4 of the system board (3).
- ▶ Insert the SKU/SCU key see section ["Installing the onboard SAS enabling key" on page 433](#) (4).
- ▶ Route the cables as shown.

### 15.3.4 Configuration 2 to configuration 10

**i** The configuration 2 must include a SAS 3.0 controller. Otherwise you must install a SAS controller as described in section ["Installing the SAS RAID controller"](#) on page 192.

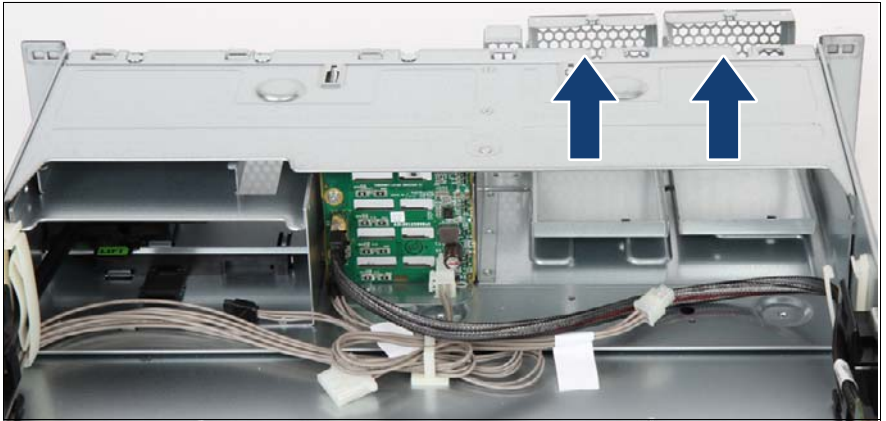


Figure 322: Removing the 2.5-inch dummy cages

- ▶ Remove the dummy cage from bay 2 and 3.



Figure 323: Removing the cover plate from the 2.5 inch dummy cage

- ▶ Remove the cover plate from the dummy cage.

## Conversion configurations

---

- ▶ Install the 4x 2.5-inch SAS 3.0 HDD backplane to both HDD cages..



Figure 324: Installing the cover plate

- ▶ Insert the cover plate.

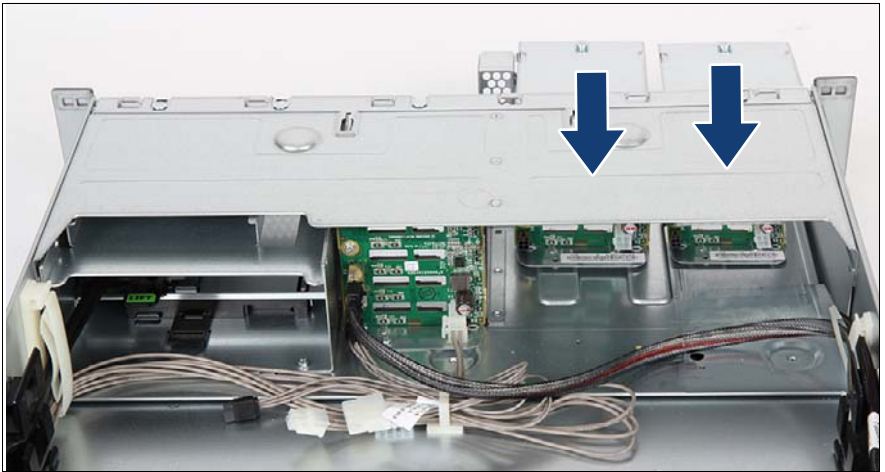


Figure 325: Installing the HDD cage

- ▶ Insert the HDD cages.

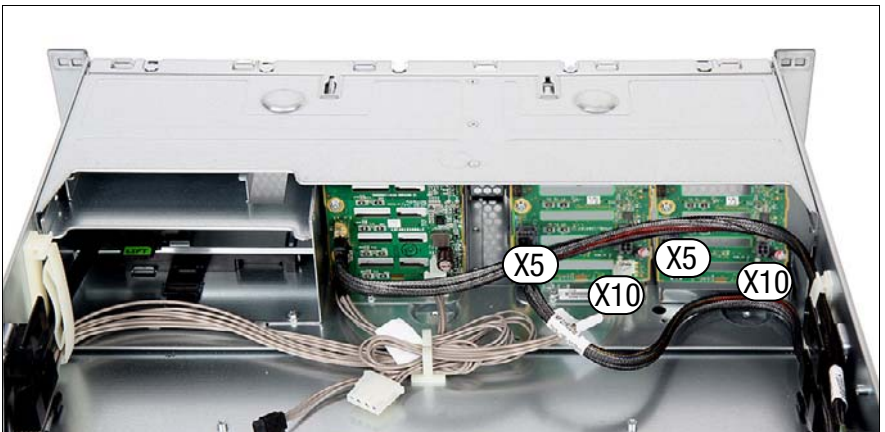


Figure 326: Connecting SAS cables

- ▶ Connect cable C22 to the connector X5 of the 4x 2.5-inch SAS 3.0 backplane of cage 3.
- ▶ Connect cable C22 to the connector MLC1 of the SAS controller.
- ▶ Connect cable C23 to the connector X5 of the 4x 2.5-inch SAS 3.0 backplane of cage 2.

## Conversion configurations

---

- ▶ Connect cable C23 to the connector MLC2 of the SAS controller.
- ▶ Connect the cable C28 to each connector X10 of both 4x 2.5-inch SAS3.0 backplanes.

### 15.3.5 Configuration 3 to configuration 6

#### Replacing the front cages

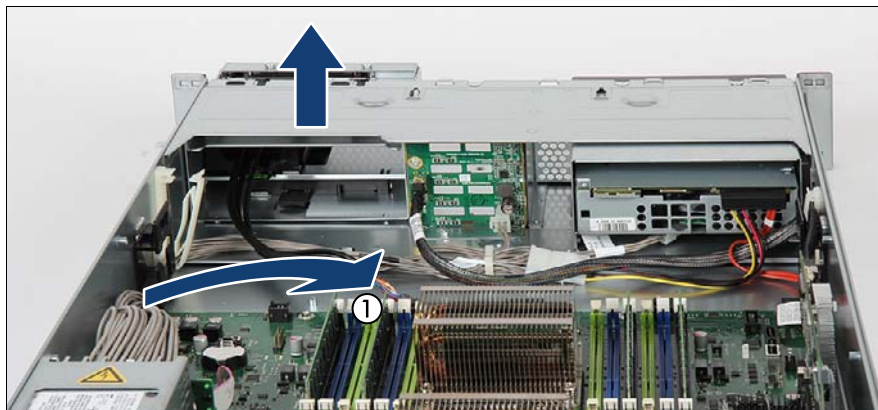


Figure 327: Replacing front cages (A)

- ▶ Remove the front panel cable from the system board.
- ▶ If applicable remove the optional front LAN and front VGA cables from the system board see sections ["Removing the front LAN connector" on page 394](#) and ["Removing the front VGA connector" on page 381](#).
- ▶ Remove the front panel cage.

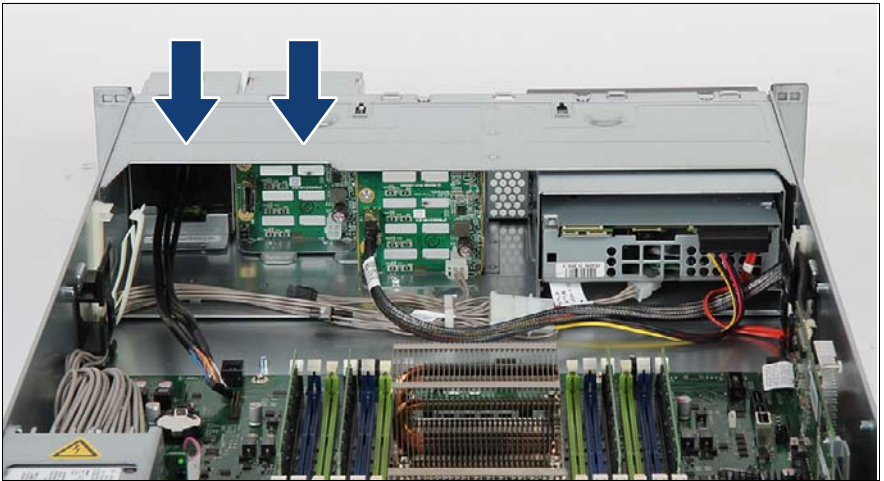


Figure 328: Replacing front cages (B)

- ▶ ["Installing the 4x 2.5-inch HDD SAS backplane" on page 153](#)
- ▶ ["Installing the HDD cage" on page 154](#)
- ▶ Insert the front panel cage as described in section ["Re-installing the front panel cage" on page 403](#).

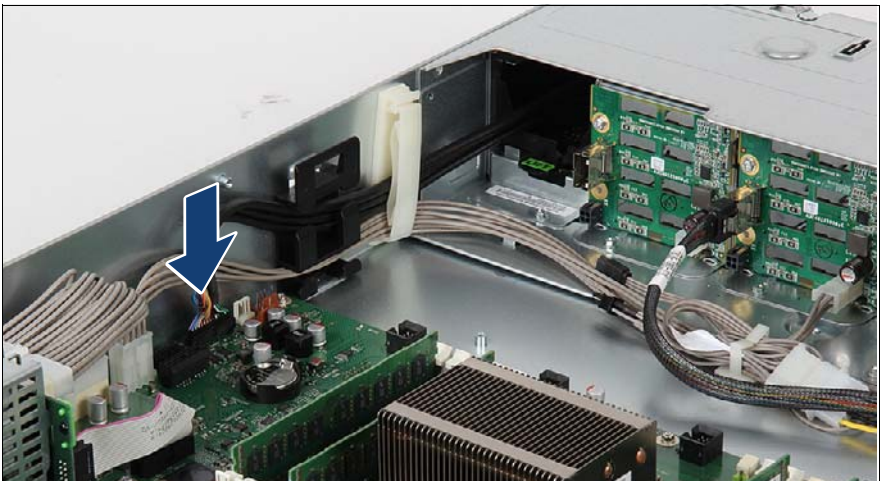


Figure 329: Connecting the front panel cable

- ▶ Connect the front panel cable to the system board.

## Conversion configurations

---

- ▶ If applicable connect the optional front LAN and front VGA cables to the system board see sections "[Installing the front LAN connector](#)" on page 384 and "[Installing the front VGA connector](#)" on page 377.

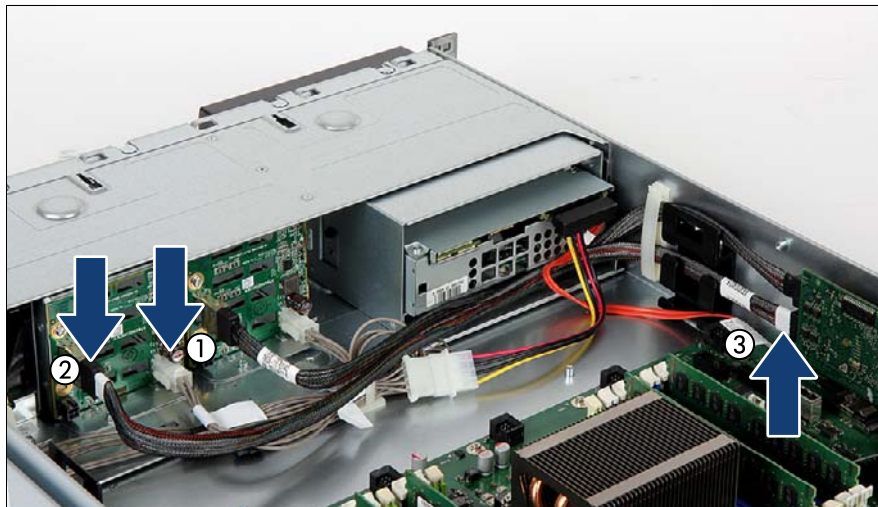


Figure 330: Connecting cables

- ▶ Connect the power cable to the connector of the power cable (1).
- ▶ Connect the cable C11 to connector X1 of the 4x 2.5-inch HDD backplane (2) and the connector MLC2 of the SAS controller (3).
- ▶ Route the cables as shown.

### 15.3.6 Configuration 4 to configuration 7

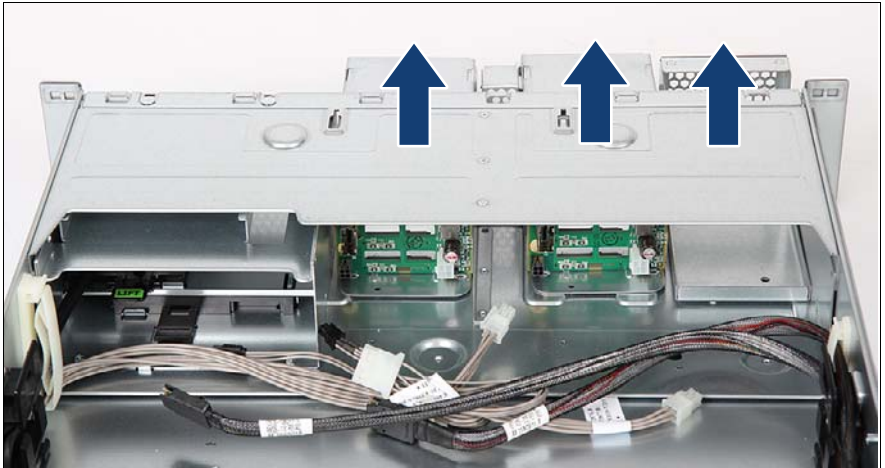


Figure 331: Removing the HDD cages and 2.5-inch dummy cover

- ▶ Remove the HDD cage and the dummy cage.
- ▶ Remove the 4x 2.5-inch HDD backplanes from the HDD cages see section ["Removing the 4x 2.5-inch SAS HDD backplane"](#) on page 152.

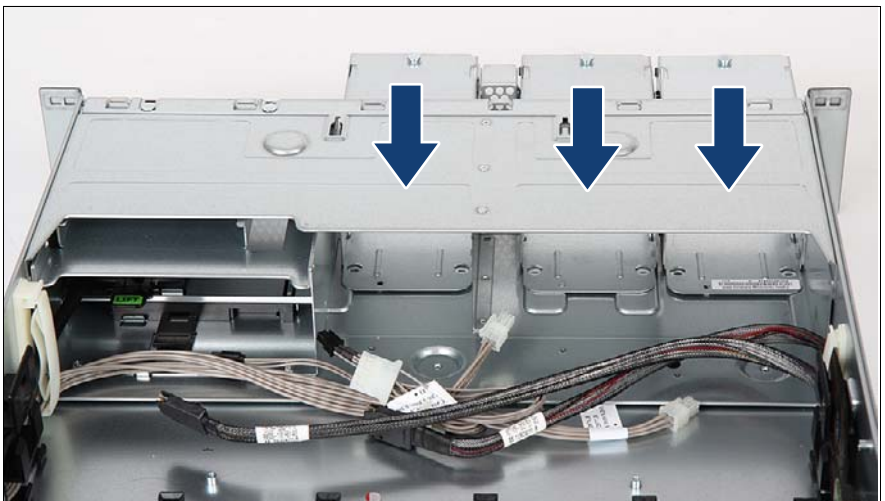


Figure 332: Installing the HDD cages

## Conversion configurations

- ▶ Insert the HDD cages. The cage with the cover plate must be installed into bay 2.

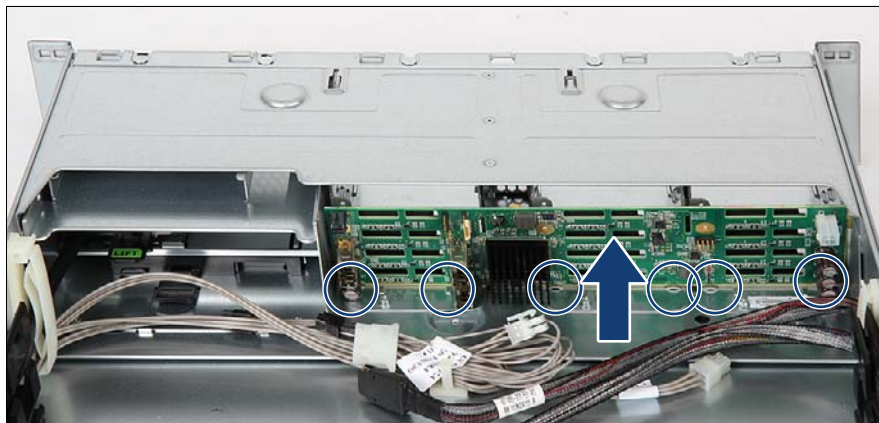


Figure 333: Installing the 12x 2.5-inch HDD backplane

- ▶ Insert the 12x 2.5-inch HDD backplane in the guiding recesses.
- ▶ Fold the 12x 2.5-inch HDD backplane.

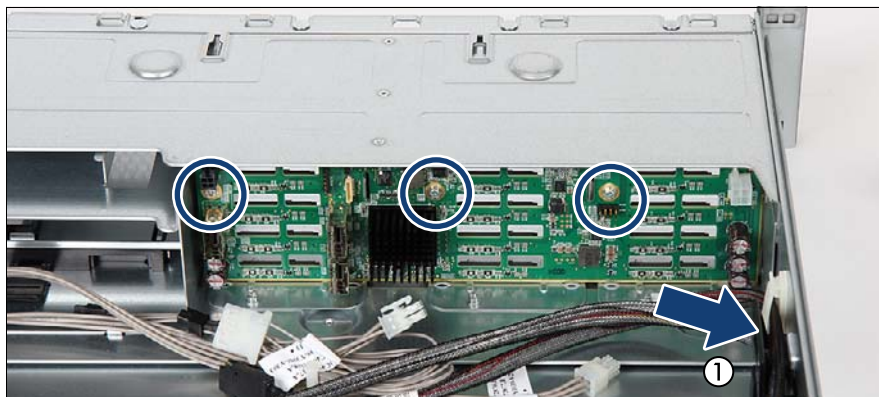


Figure 334: Installing the 12x 2.5-inch HDD backplane

- ▶ Fasten the 12x 2.5-inch HDD backplane with three screws.
- ▶ Remove cable C10 from the connector MLC2 of the SAS controller.

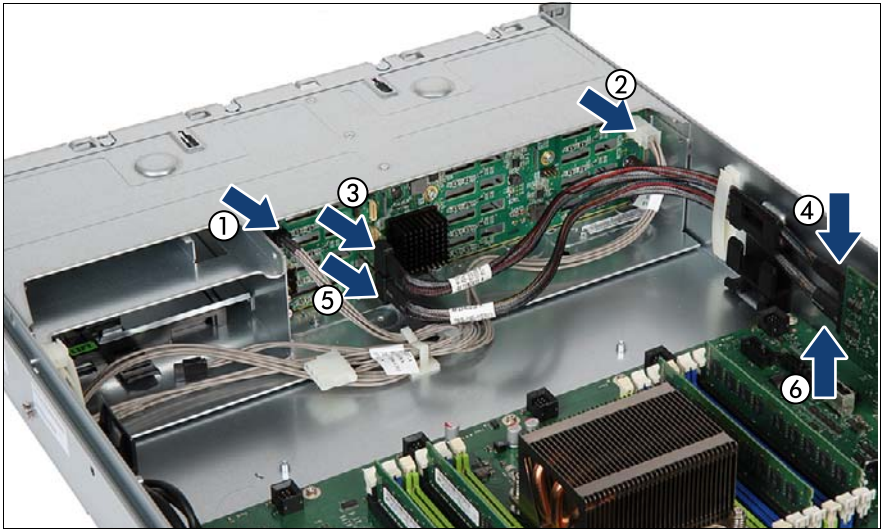


Figure 335: Connecting SAS cables

- ▶ Connect cable C5 to the connector X17 of the 12x 2.5-inch SAS backplane (1).
- ▶ Connect cable C4 to the connector X15 of the 12x 2.5-inch SAS backplane (2).
- ▶ Connect the cable C9 to X1 of the 12x 2.5-inch SAS backplane (3) and the connector MLC1 of the SAS controller (4).
- ▶ Connect the cable C9 to X2 of the 12x 2.5-inch SAS backplane (5) and the connector MLC2 of the SAS controller (6).
- ▶ Route the cables as shown.

### 15.3.7 Configuration 4 to configuration 8

- ▶ Convert Configuration 4 to configuration 7 see section ["Configuration 4 to configuration 7" on page 477](#).
- ▶ Replace multicage with the panelhousing and a HDD cage as described in section ["Replacing the front cages" on page 474](#).
- ▶ Connect cable C7 from connector X1 of the 4x 2.5-inch SAS backplane to connector X3 of the 12x 2.5-inch SAS backplane

### 15.3.8 Configuration 7 to configuration 8

- ▶ Replace multicage with the panelhousing and a HDD cage as described in section ["Replacing the front cages" on page 474](#).
- ▶ Connect cable C7 from connector X1 of the 4x 2.5-inch SAS backplane to connector X3 of the 12x 2.5-inch SAS backplane

## 15.4 Concluding steps

- ▶ ["Installing the fan box" on page 166](#)
- ▶ ["Reassembling" on page 63](#)
- ▶ Reconnect all external cables.
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)
- ▶ Update your server's chassis information on the Chassis ID EPROM integrated into the front panel board. For further information on how to obtain and use the *ChassisId\_Prom* Tool, refer to section ["Using the Chassis ID Prom Tool" on page 98](#).
- ▶ ["Resuming BitLocker functionality" on page 95](#)

# 16 Cables

This chapter provides information on how to connect, disconnect and route cables.

## Safety notes



### CAUTION!

- Always hold cables by their connectors when disconnecting them. Never pull on the cable to disconnect cables.
- Ensure that none of the cables are scraped, strained or otherwise damaged while replacing system components.
- Immediately replace cables with damaged shielding.
- Always use shielded network cables.

## 16.1 List of used cables

### 16.1.1 SAS 2.0 configuration

No	Name	Cable number	Routing	Configuration							
				1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
C1	LTG PWR SB 150	T26139-Y3758-V10	from power backplane to system board	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o
C2	LTG SMB PWR-BP	T26139-Y4027-V2	from power backplane to system board	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o
C3	LTG PWR SAS-BP 3.5	T26139-Y3939-V501	6x 3.5-inch SAS BP to system board	o							
C4	LTG PWR SAS-BP	T26139-Y3939-V201	2.5-inch SAS BP(s) to system board		o	o	o	o	o	o	o

Table 10: List of used cables

## Cables

No	Name	Cable number	Routing	Configuration								
				1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
C5	LTG PWR 3ST 600	T26139-Y3986-V303	SAS BP(s) to DVD drive	o	o	o	o	o	o	o		
C6	LTG COMMON FP	T26139-Y4015-V1	Front panel to system board	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o
C7	LTG SAS 2XMINI 110	T26139-Y3963-V111	4x 2.5-inch SAS BP to 12x2.5-inch SAS BP									o
C8	LTG SAS 2XMINI 320	T26139-Y3963-V101	SAS BP to SAS controller	o				o				
C9	LTG SAS 2XMINI 470	T26139-Y3963-V103	2.5-inch SAS BP to SAS controller	o			o				2	2
											x	x
											o	o
C10	LTG SAS 2XMIN 540	T26139-Y3963-V116	2.5-inch SAS BP to SAS on system board/SAS controller		o	o	o	o	o			
C11	LTG SAS 2XMIN 650	T26139-Y3963-V107	4x2.5-inch SAS BP to SAS controller						o			
C12	LTG LVP	T26139-Y3718-V301	LSD to system board (optional)	o	o	o	o	o		o		
C13	LTG LAN FP	T26139-Y4025-V1	Front LAN to system board (optional)	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o
C14	LTG INT VGA 500	T26139-Y3994-V101	Front VGA to system board (optional)	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o
C15	LTG SATA 2XGER 750	T26139-Y3928-V205	DVD to system board (optional)	o	o	o	o	o		o		

Table 10: List of used cables

No	Name	Cable number	Routing	Configuration								
				1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
C16	LTG PWR RDX 400	T26139-Y2193-V501	tape/RDX to DVD (optional)	o								
C17	LTG INT USB 700	T26139-Y3973-V96	tape drive to system board (optional)	o				o				
C18	LTG MSAS-HDDA	T26139-Y3969-V351	LTO to system board			o			o			
C19	LTG IBBU 160	T26139-Y3987-V3	IBBU to SAS controller	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o
	LTG IBBU 550	T26139-Y3987-V2	IBBU to controller external HDDs	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o
	CBL FBU02 170	T26139-Y4032-V3	D3116	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o
C20	LTG FLI 1MM 20P	T26139-Y4015-V101	modular service LAN	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o
C21	LTG USB 3.0 AN 0.8	T26139-Y4039-A80	RDX drive to USB 3.0 interface card (optional)	o				o				

Table 10: List of used cables

## 16.1.2 Additional cables for SAS 3.0 configuration

No	Name	Cable number	Routing	Configuration		
				10	12	15
C22	CBL SAS3.0 320	T26139-Y4040-V7	SAS3.0 Ctrl to SAS3.0 BP	o	o	

Table 11: List of used cables

## Cables

No	Name	Cable number	Routing	Configuration		
				10	12	15
C23	CBL HOST BP 470	T26139-Y4040-V8	SAS3.0 Ctrl to SAS3.0 BP	o		
C24	CBL HOST BP 540	T26139-Y4040-V9	SAS3.0 Ctrl to SAS3.0 BP		o	o
C25	CBL HOST BP 620	T26139-Y4040-V10	SAS3.0 Ctrl to SAS3.0 BP			o
C26	CBL SAS MINI-HD 620	T26139-Y4040-V1	SAS2.0 Ctrl to SAS3.0 BP			
C27	CBL FBU03 250	T26139-Y4031-V101	SAS3.0 Ctrl to FBU			
C28	CBL PDP HDD POW8	T26139-Y3939-V204	System board to HDD bpls .700 +(520+180)			
C29	CBL SMB GTL	T26139-Y4015-V602	SMB system board to SAS3.0 BP			

Table 11: List of used cables

## 16.2 Cabling plans

### 16.2.1 Configuration 1

#### Optional tape/RDX drive via onboard connector

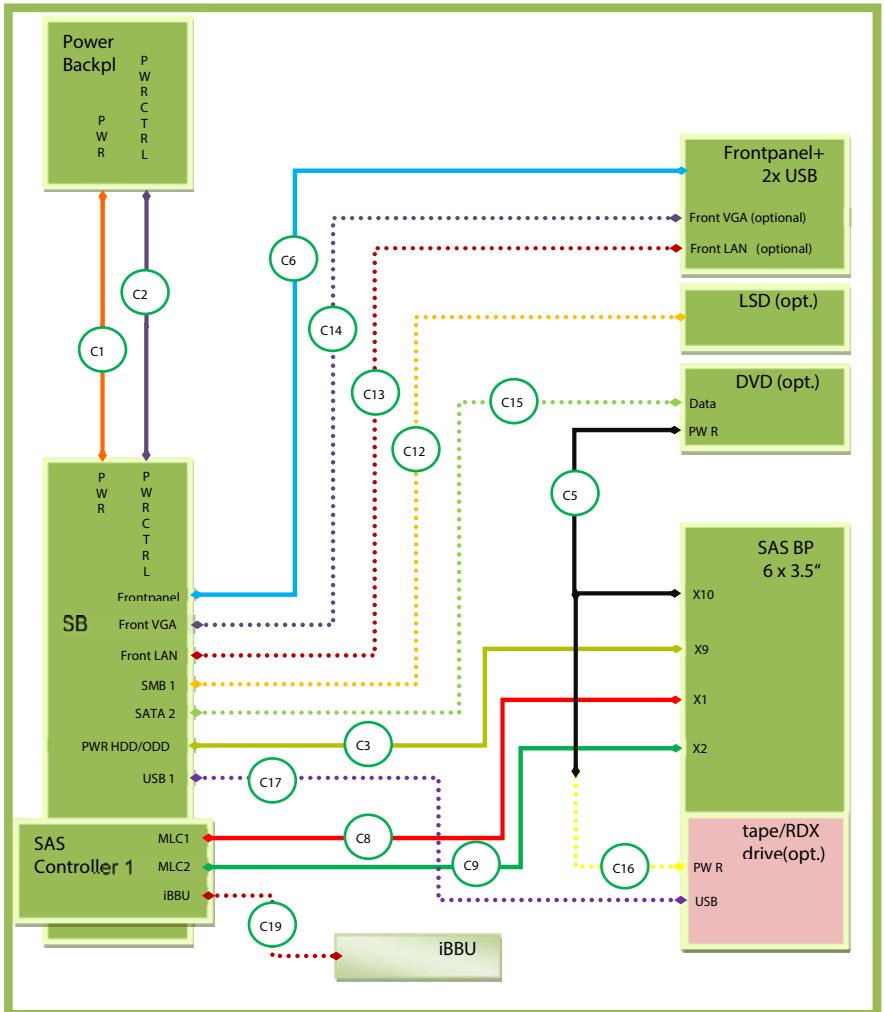


Figure 336: Cabling 6x 3.5-inch HDD with optional tape/RDX drive via onboard connector

Optional RDX drive via USB 3.0 interface card

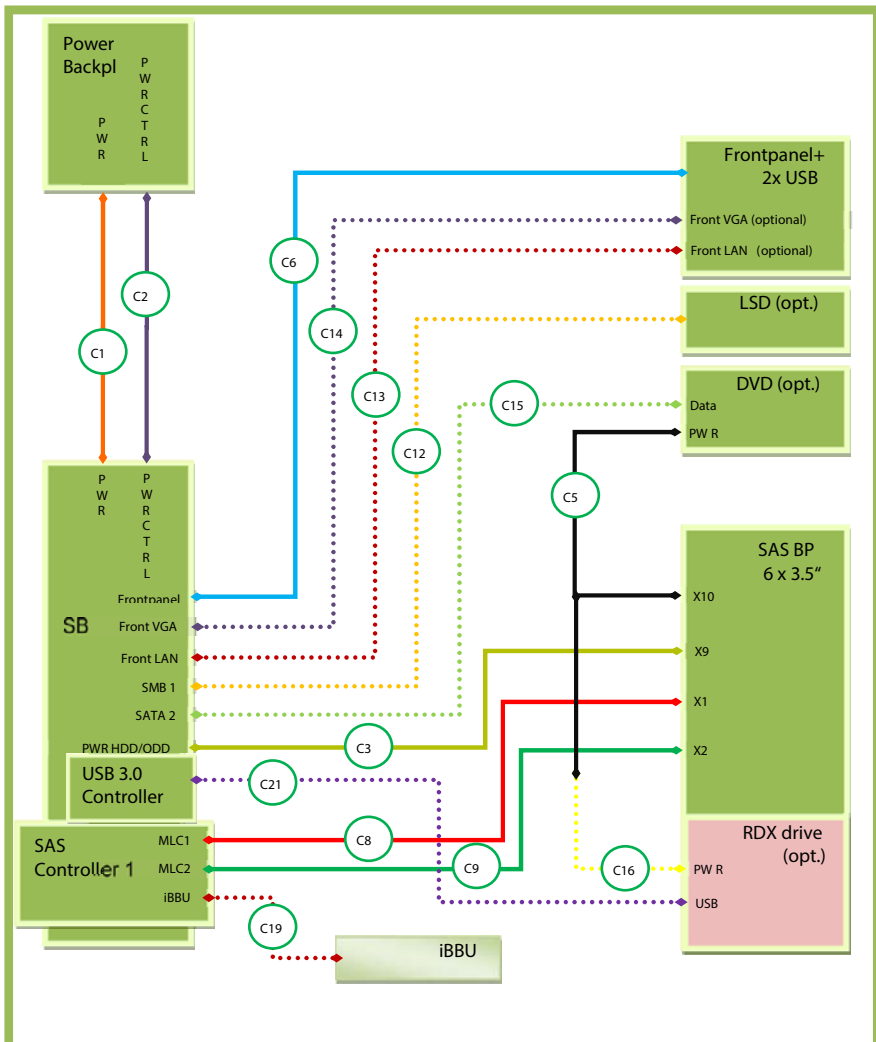


Figure 337: Cabling 6x 3.5-inch HDD with optional RDX drive via USB 3.0 interface card

## 16.2.2 Configuration 2

### 4x 2.5-inch HDD model via SAS onboard connector

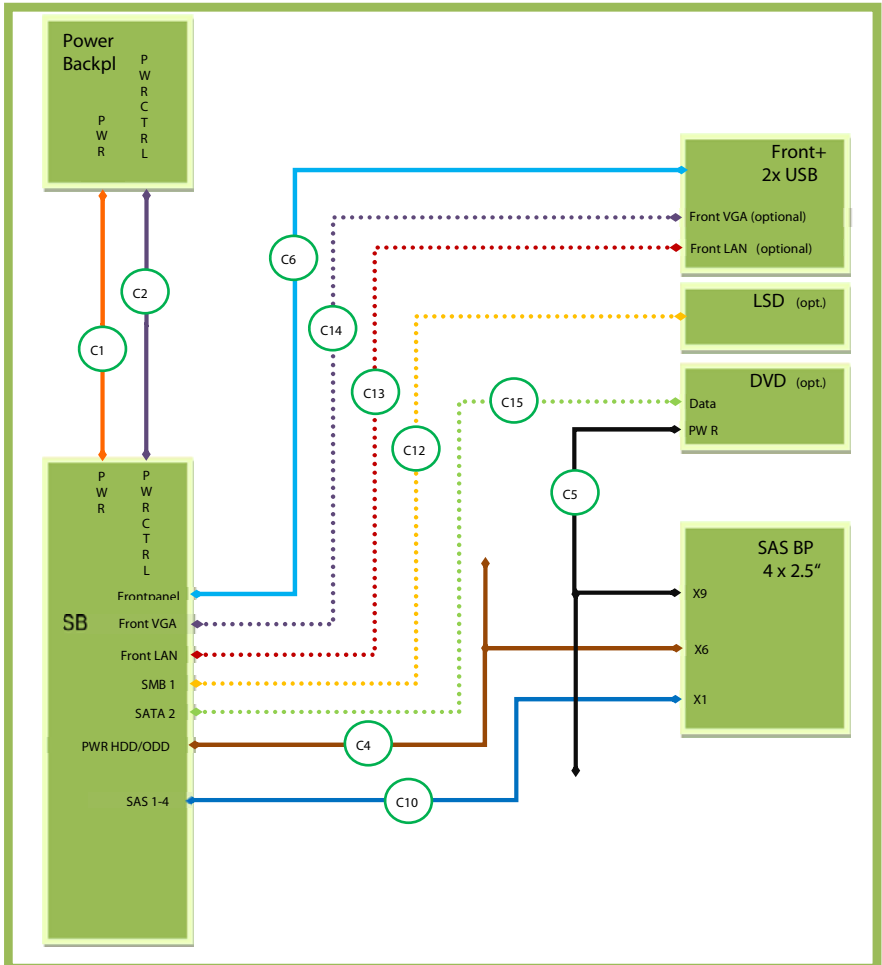


Figure 338: Cabling - 4x 2.5-inch HDD model with SAS onboard connector

4x 2.5-inch HDD model via SAS controller

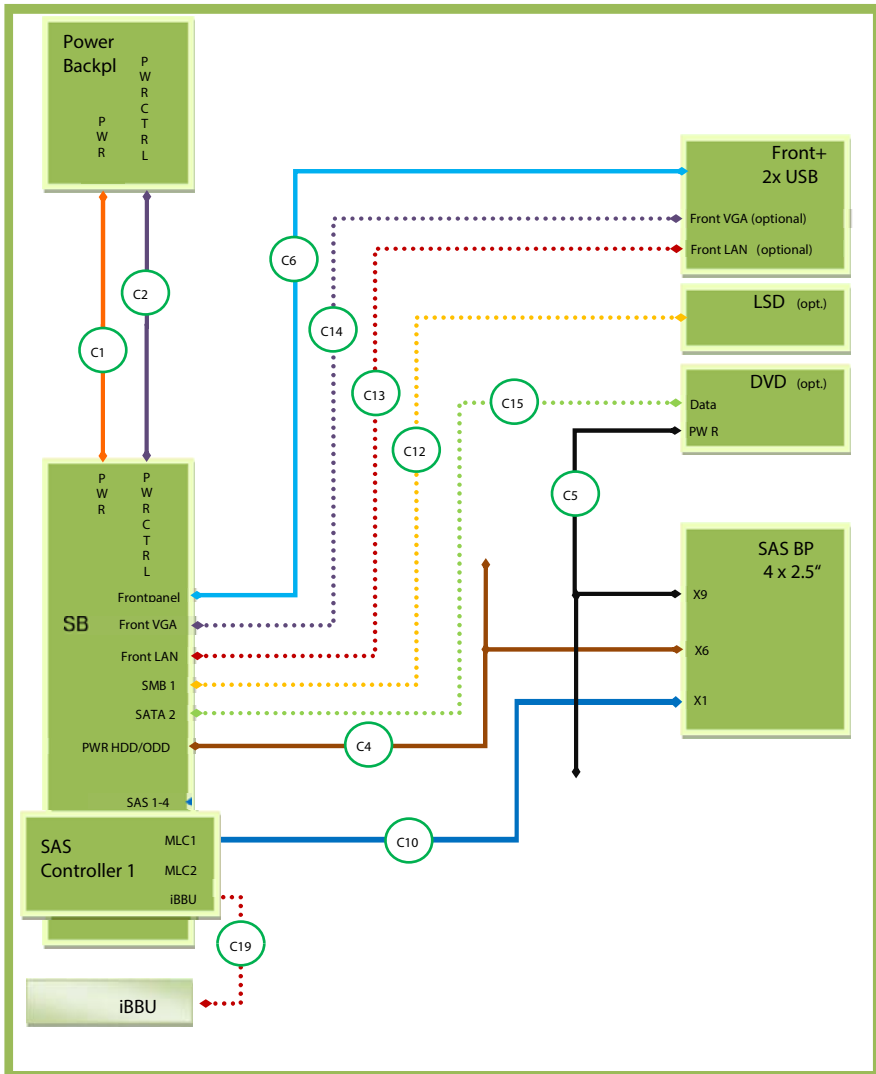


Figure 339: Cabling - 4x 2.5-inch HDD model with SAS controller

### 16.2.3 Configuration 3

#### 4x 2.5-inch HDD model with LTO4/5/6 drive

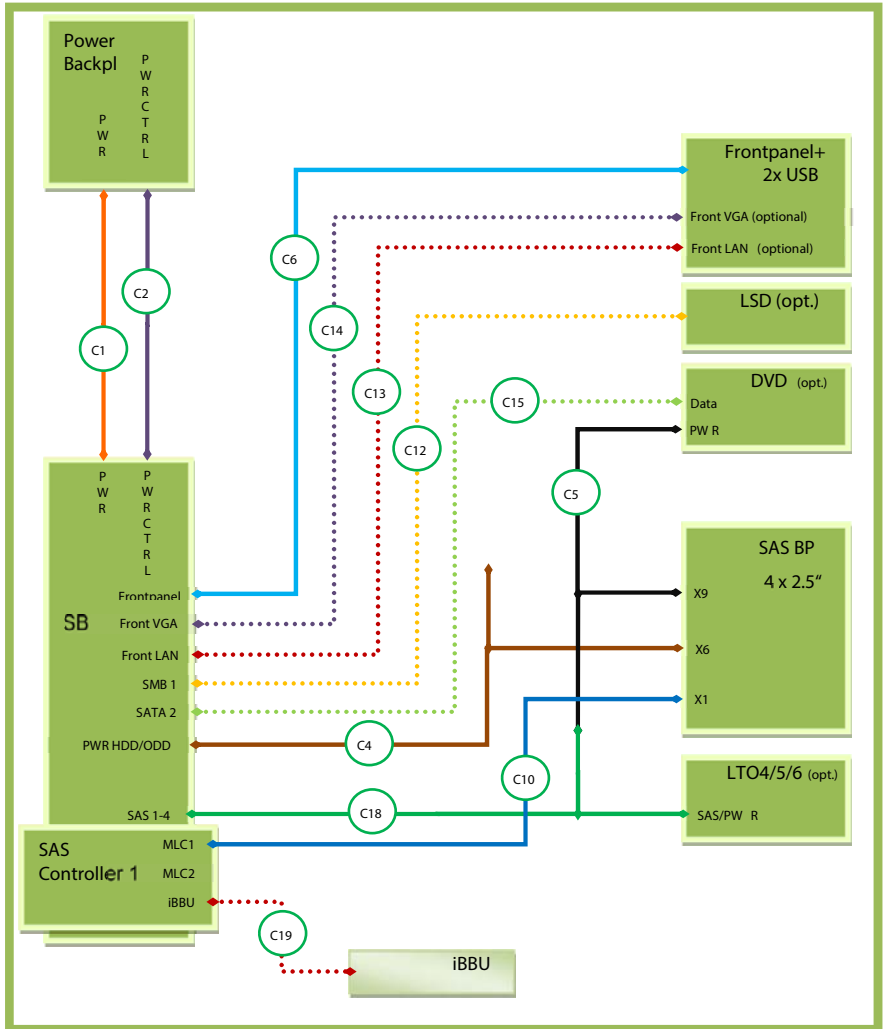


Figure 340: Cabling - 4x 2.5-inch HDD model with LTO4/5/6 drive

4x 2.5-inch HDD model with LTO3 drive

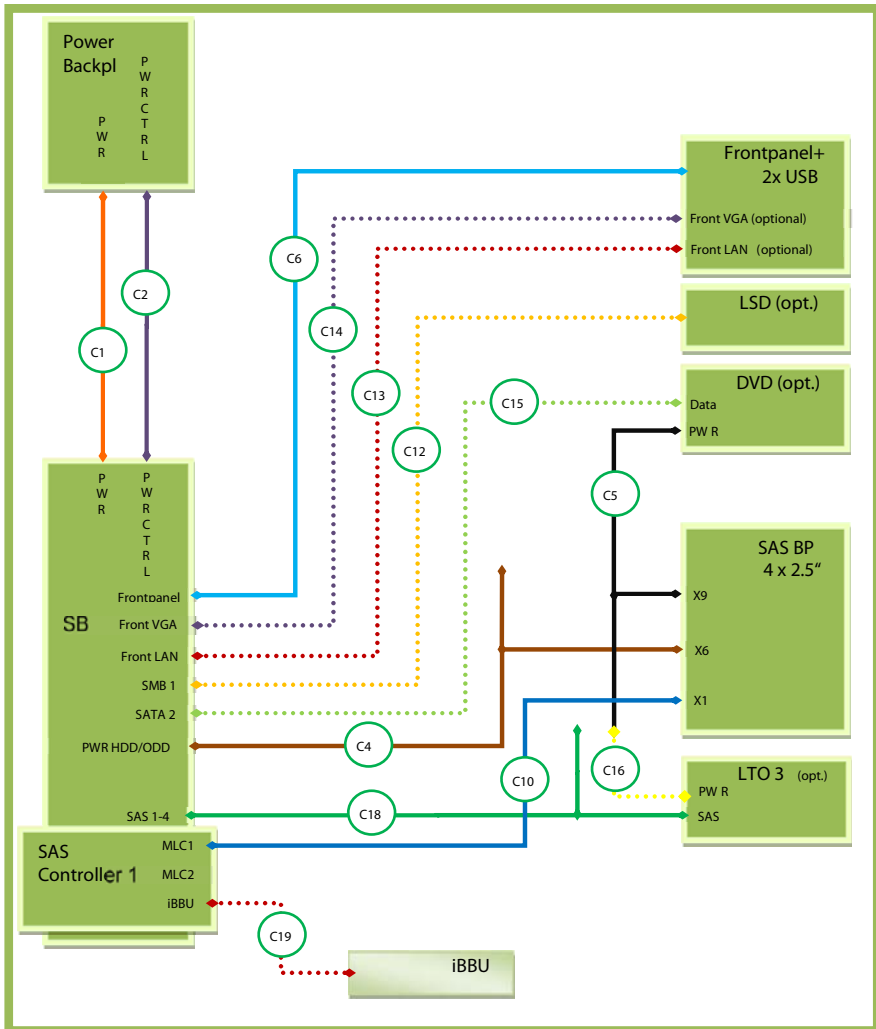


Figure 341: Cabling - 4x 2.5-inch HDD model with LTO3 drive

### 16.2.4 Configuration 4

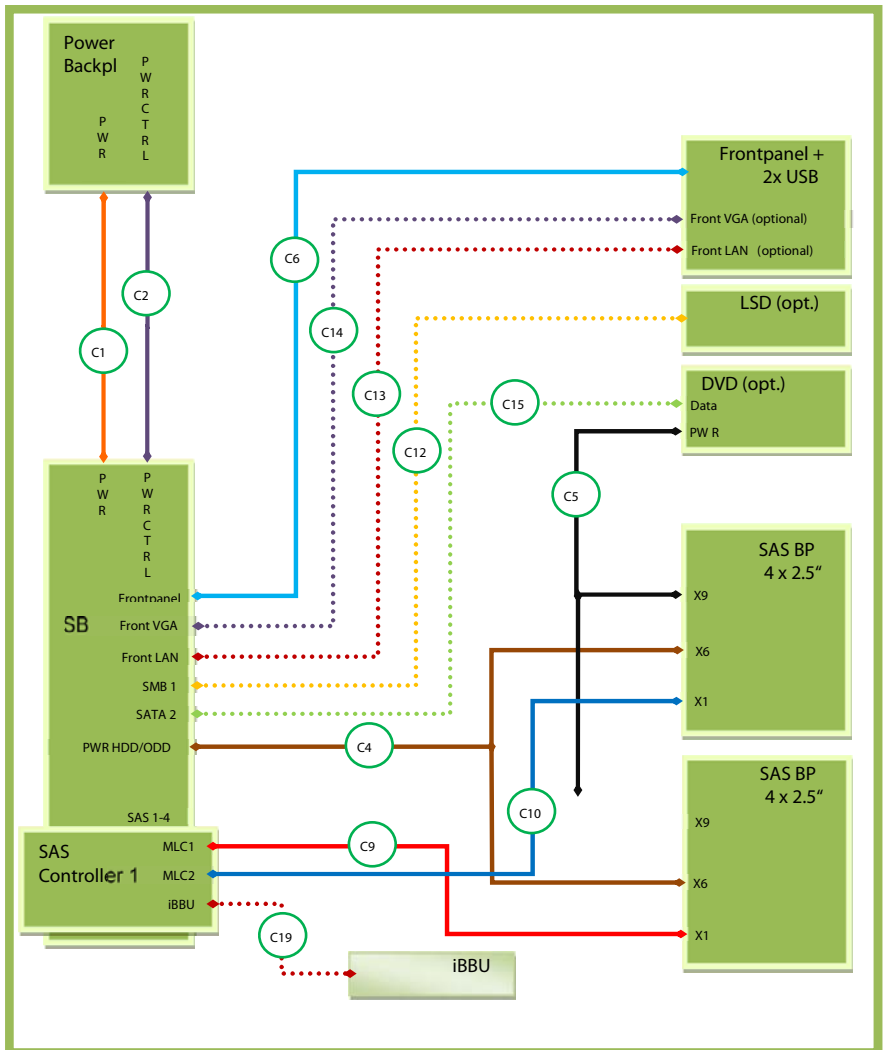


Figure 342: Cabling - 8x 2.5-inch HDD model

## 16.2.5 Configuration 5

### Optional tape/RDX drive via onboard connector

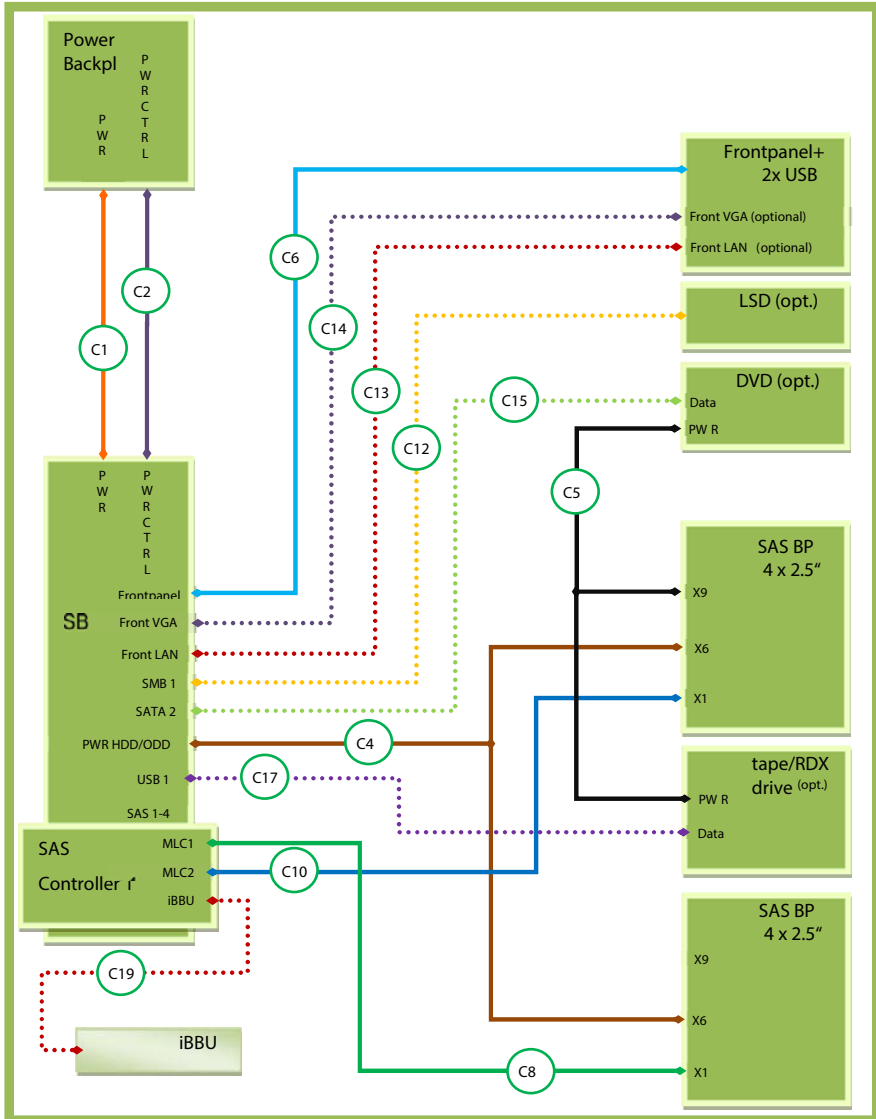


Figure 343: Cabling - 8x 2.5-inch HDD model with tape/RDX drive via onboard connector

Optional RDX drive via USB 3.0 interface card

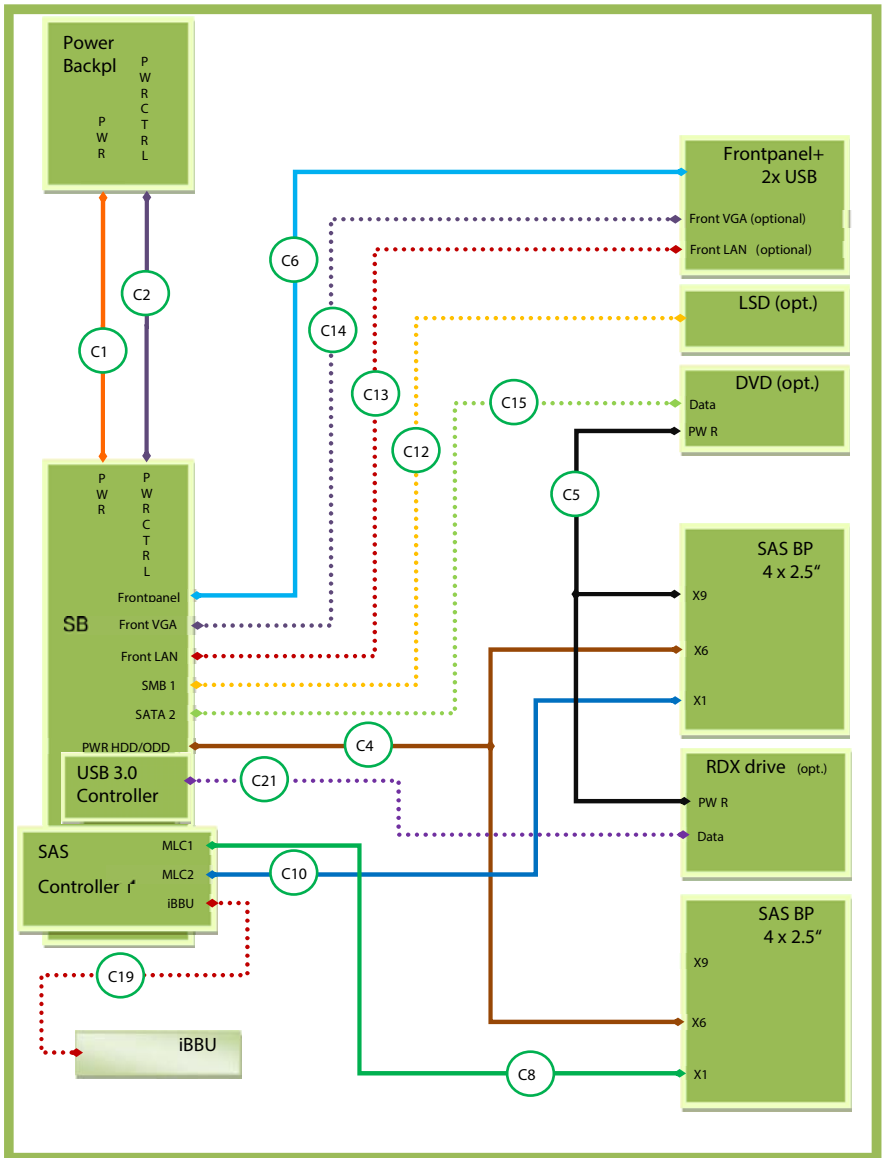


Figure 344: Cabling - 8x 2.5-inch HDD model with RDX drive via USB 3.0 interface card

## 16.2.6 Configuration 6

### 8x 2.5-inch HDD model with LTO4/5/6 tape drive

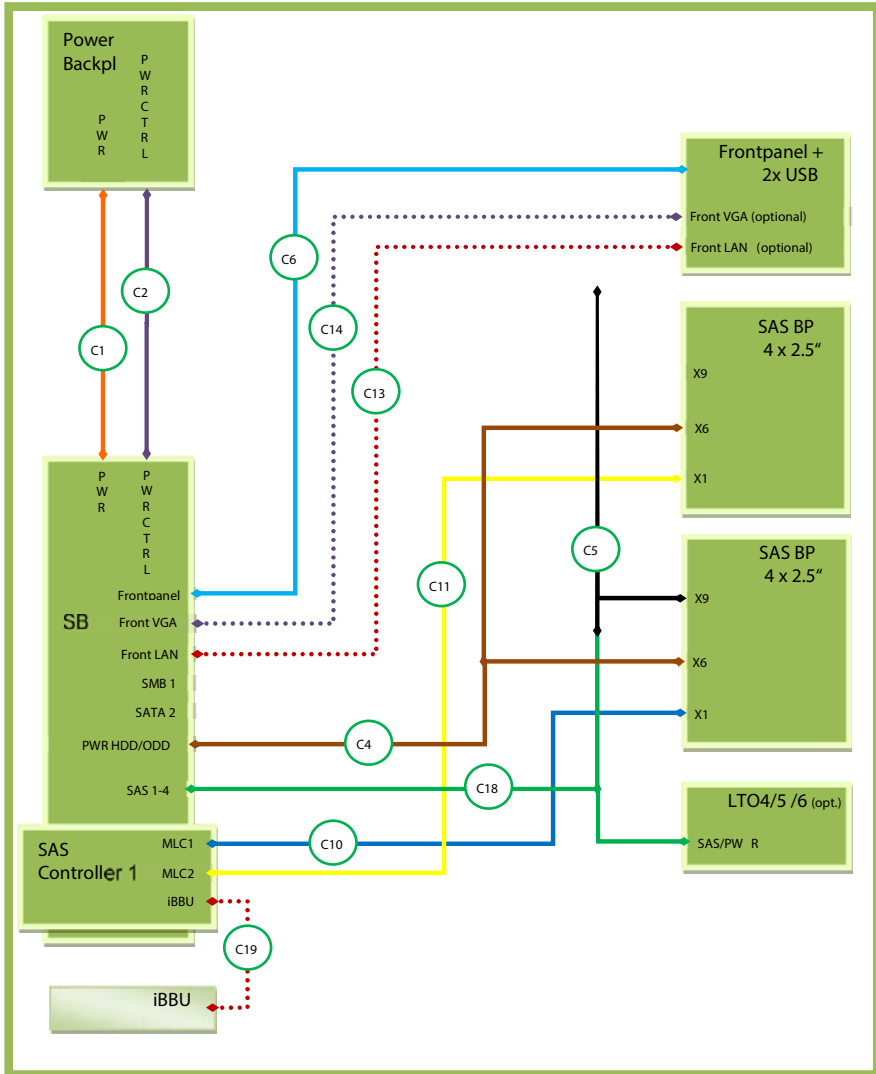


Figure 345: Cabling - 8x 2.5-inch HDD model with LTO4/5/6 tape drive

### 8x 2.5-inch HDD model with LTO3 tape drive

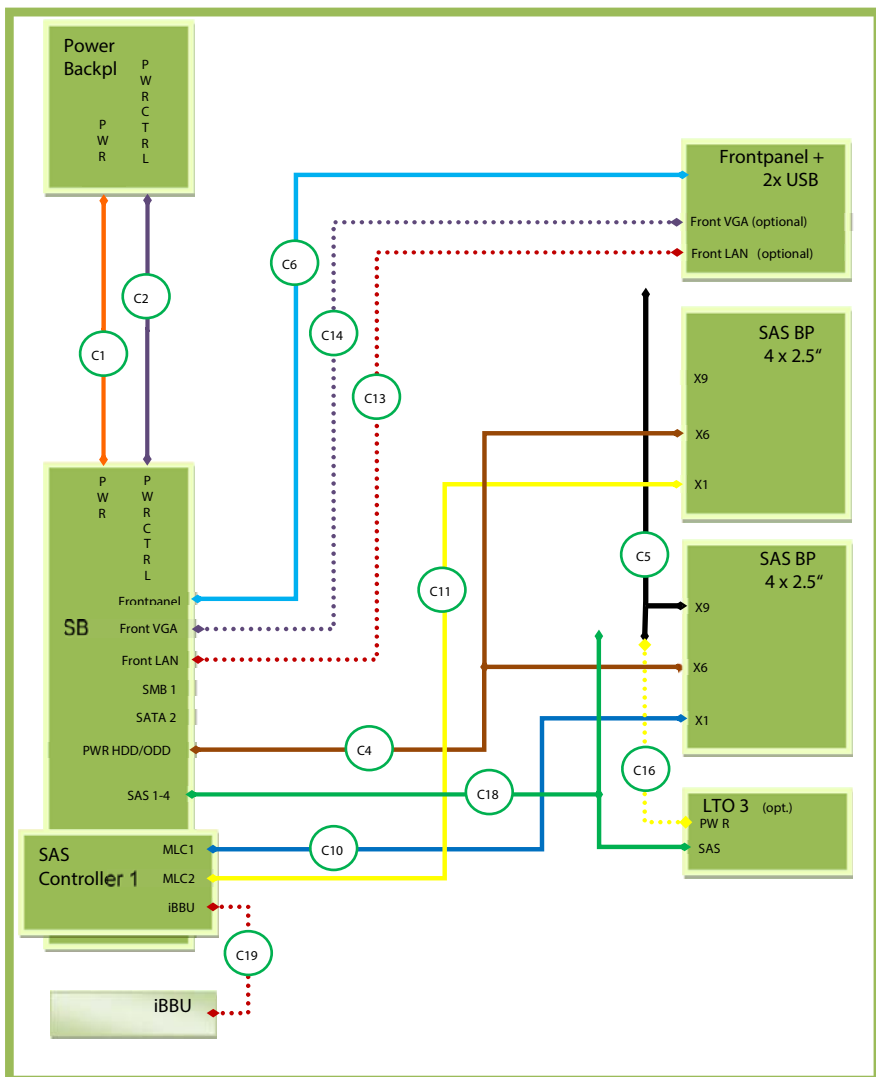


Figure 346: Cabling - 8x 2.5-inch HDD model with LTO3 tape drive

### 16.2.7 Configuration 7

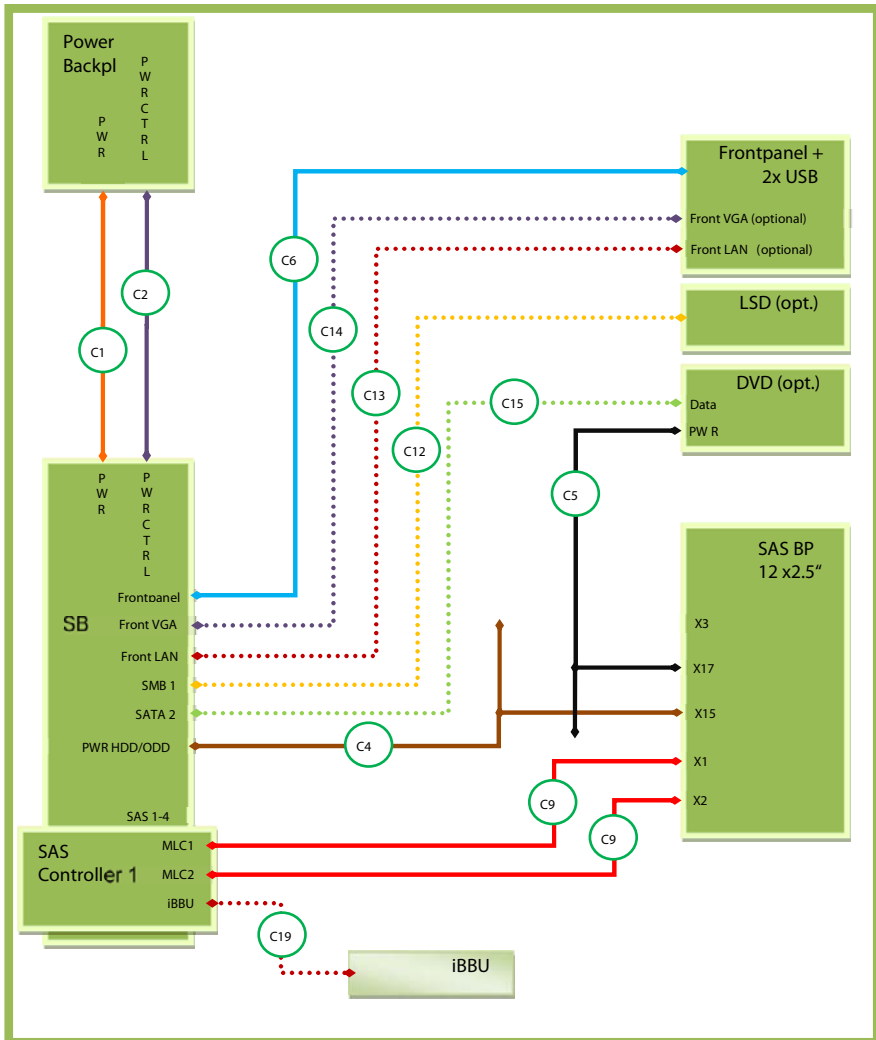


Figure 347: Cabling - 12x2.5-inch HDD model

## 16.2.8 Configuration 8

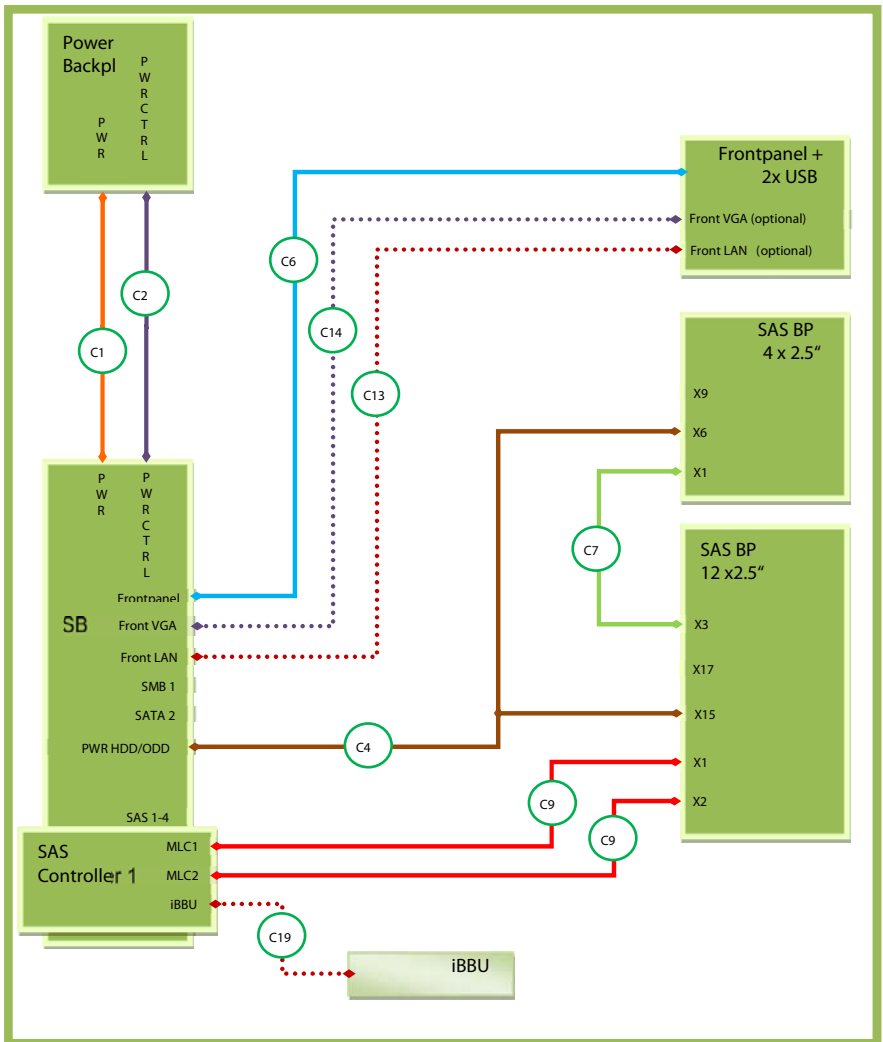


Figure 348: Cabling - 16x 2.5-inch HDD model

### 16.2.9 Configuration 10

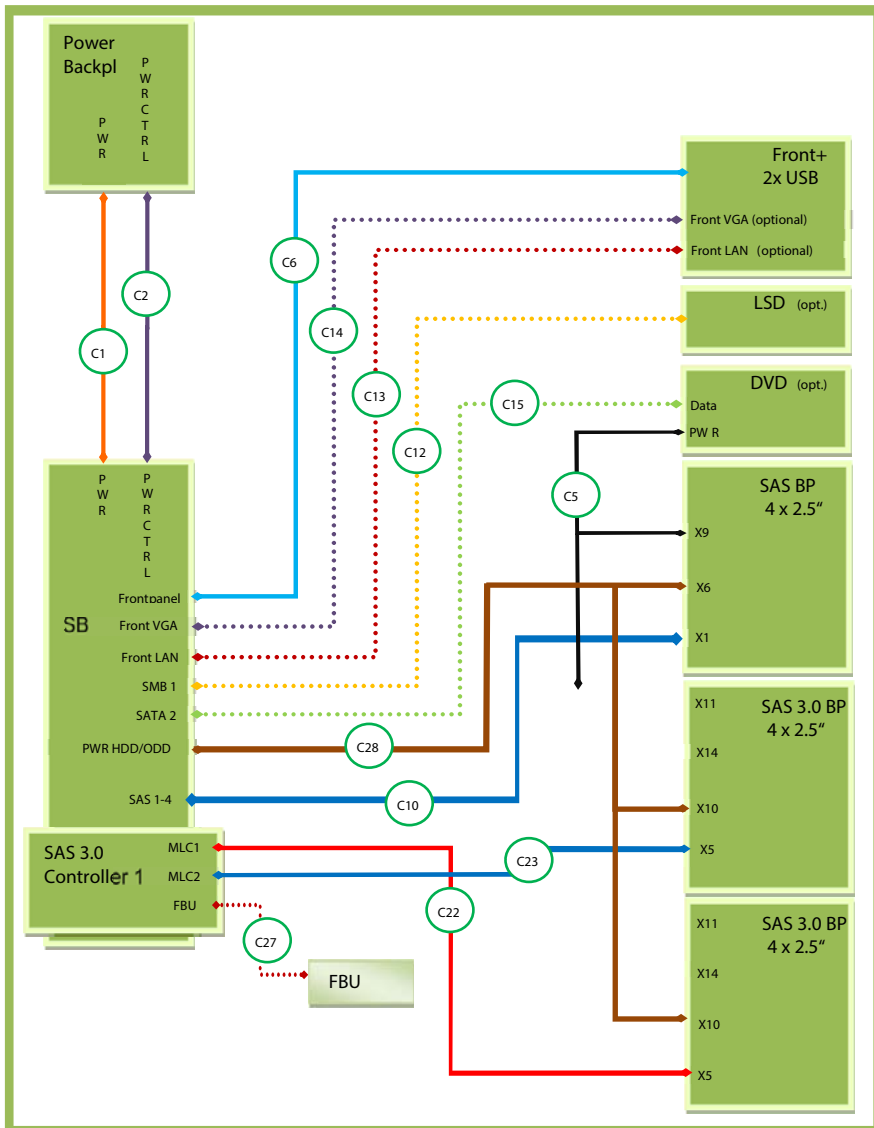


Figure 349: Cabling - 4x 2.5-inch HDD + 8x 2.5-inch SAS 3.0 HDD model

## 16.2.10 Configuration 12

### 16.2.10.1 8x 2.5-inch SAS 3.0 HDD model + DAT/RDX (USB2.0)

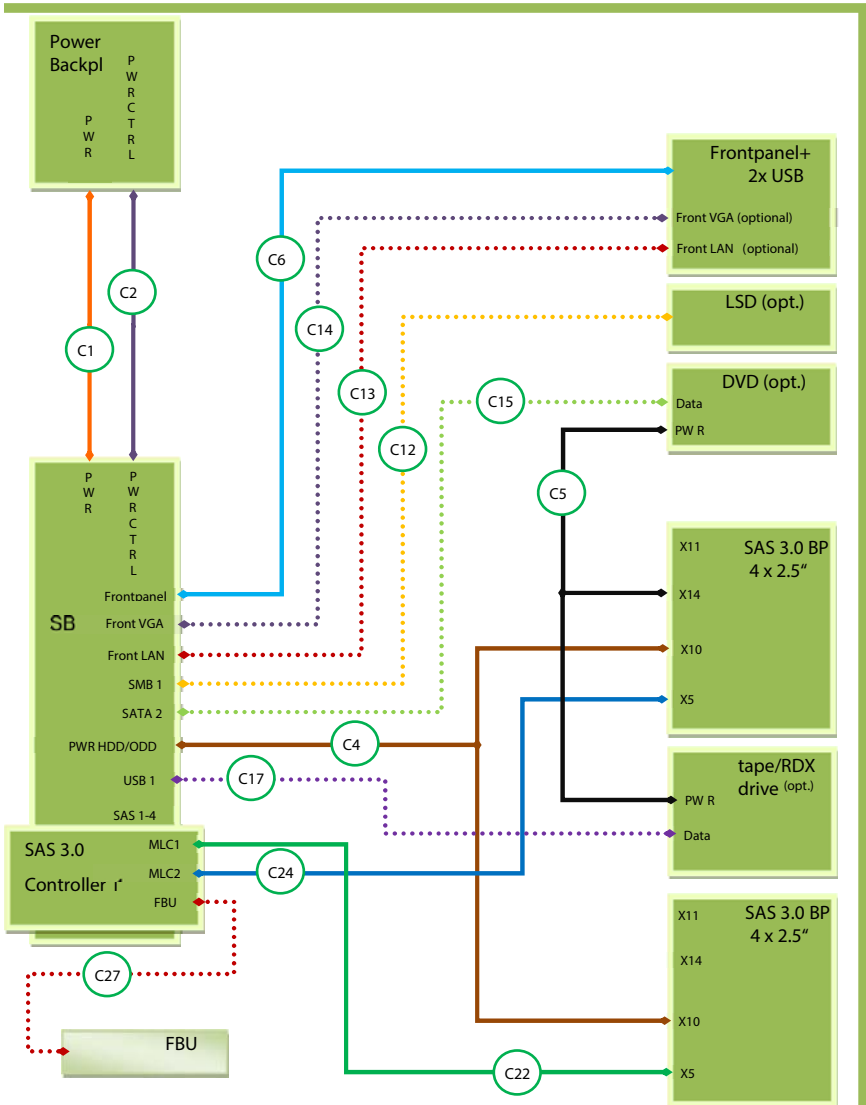


Figure 350: Cabling - 8x 2.5-inch SAS 3.0 HDD model + DAT/RDX (USB2.0) model

16.2.10.2 8x 2.5-inch SAS3.0 HDD model + RDX (USB3.0)

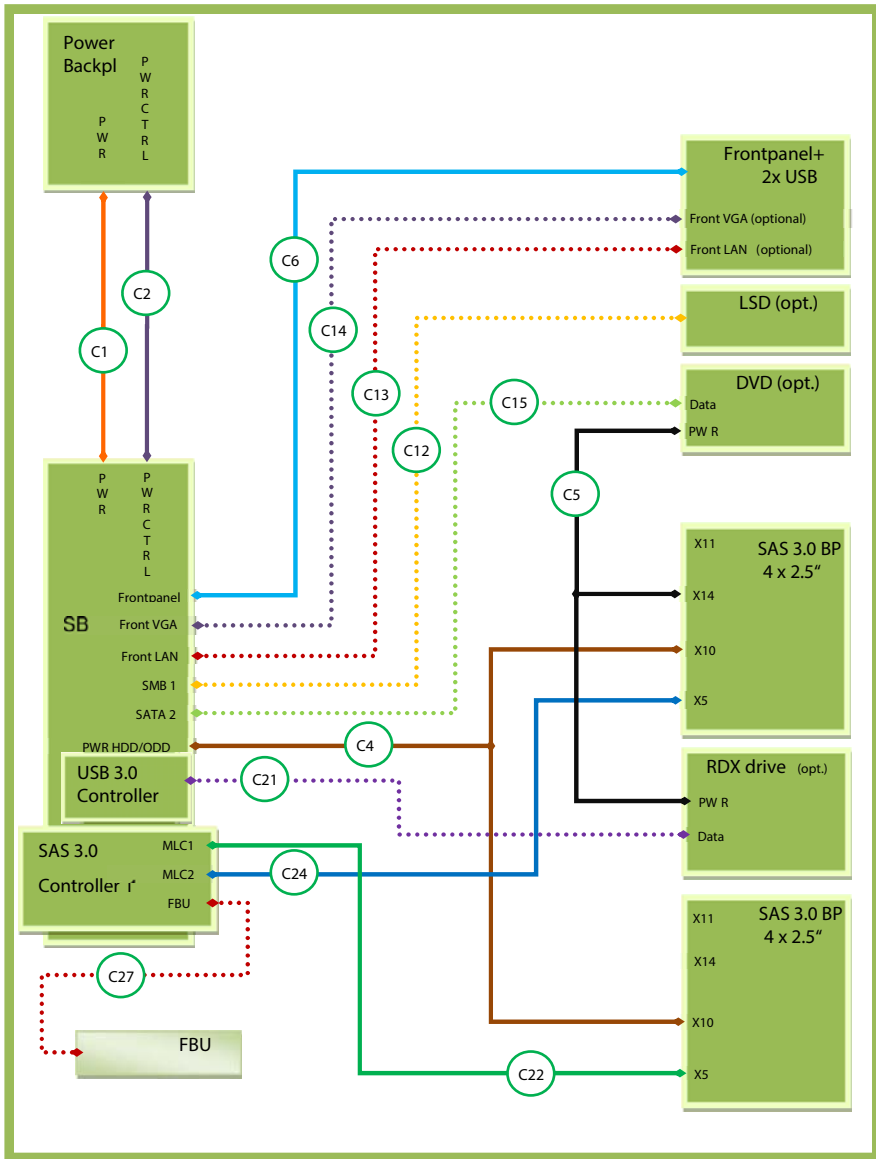


Figure 351: Cabling - 8x 2.5-inch SAS 3.0 HDD model + RDX (USB3.0) model

## 16.2.11 Configuration 15

### 16.2.11.1 8x2.5.inch SAS 3.0 HDD + LTO3

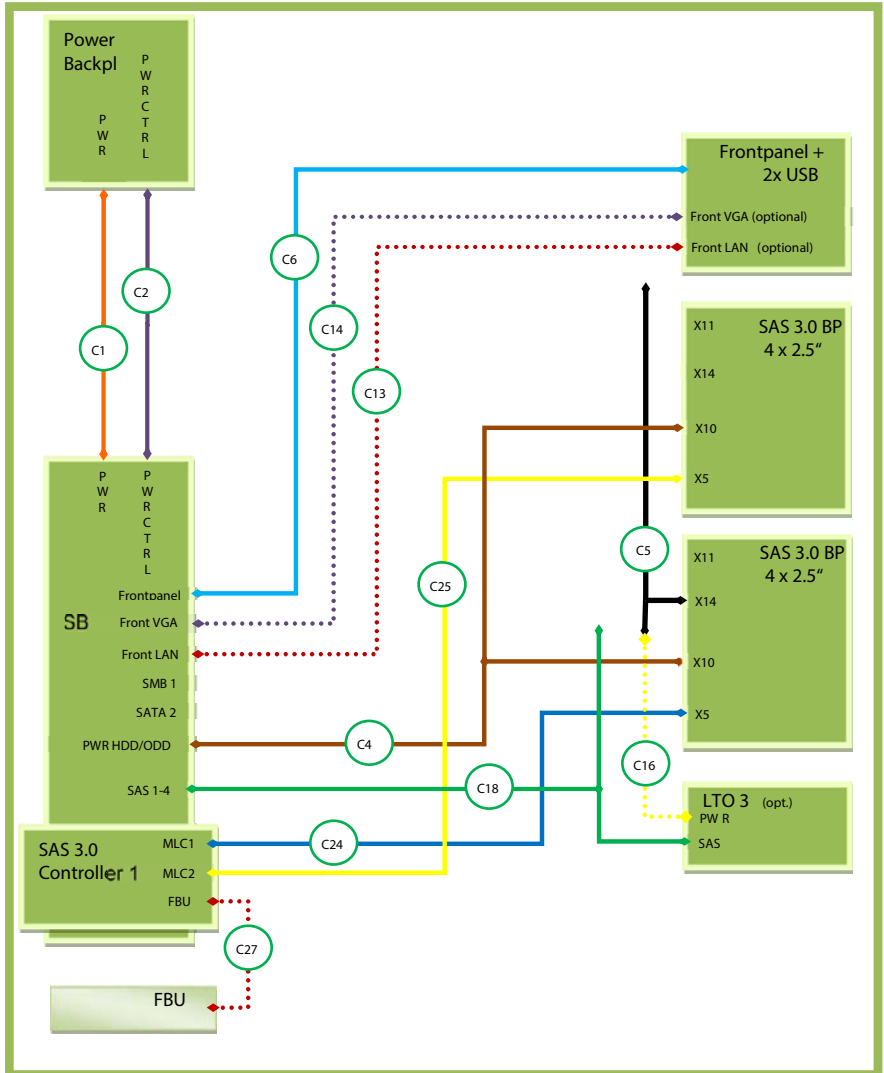


Figure 352: Cabling - 8x2.5.inch SAS 3.0 HDD + LTO3 model

16.2.11.2 8x2.5.inch SAS 3.0 HDD + LTO4/5/6

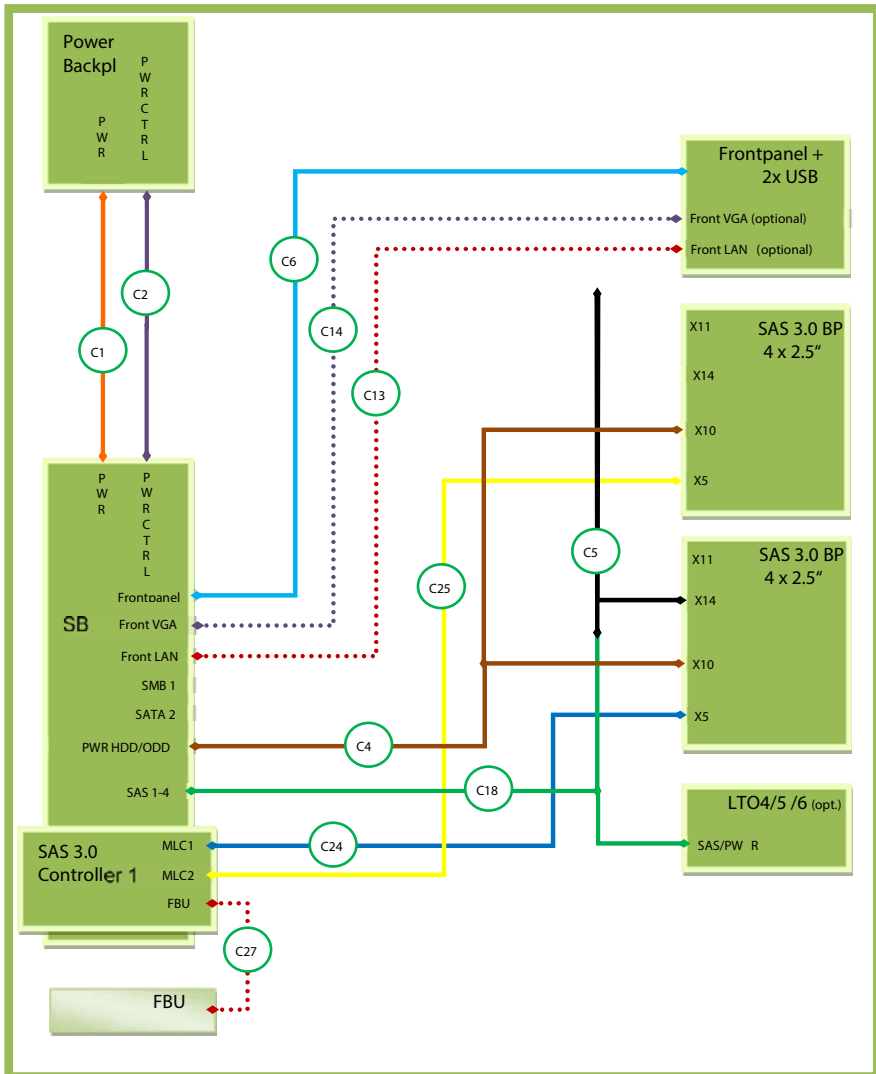


Figure 353: Cabling - 8x2.5.inch SAS 3.0 HDD + LTO4/5/6 model

## 16.2.12 Configuration with OOB

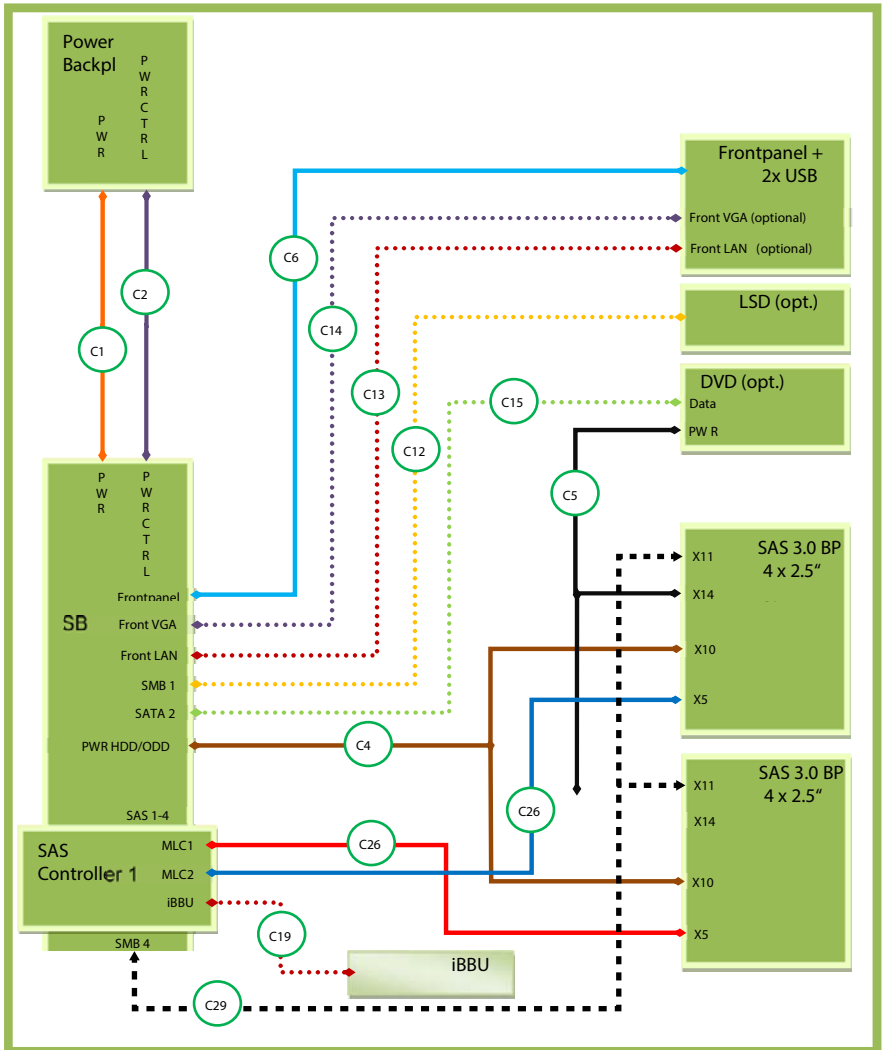


Figure 354: Cabling - 8x 2.5-inch SAS 3.0 with OOB option

### 16.2.13 Modular LAN NCSI sideband cabling

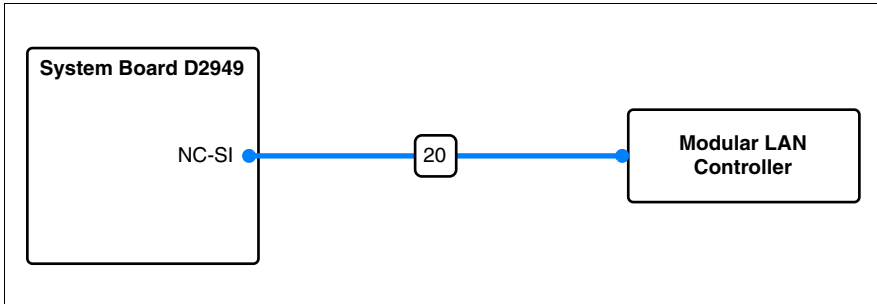


Figure 355: Modular LAN NCSI sideband cabling

---

# 17 Appendix

## 17.1 Mechanical overview

### 17.1.1 Server front

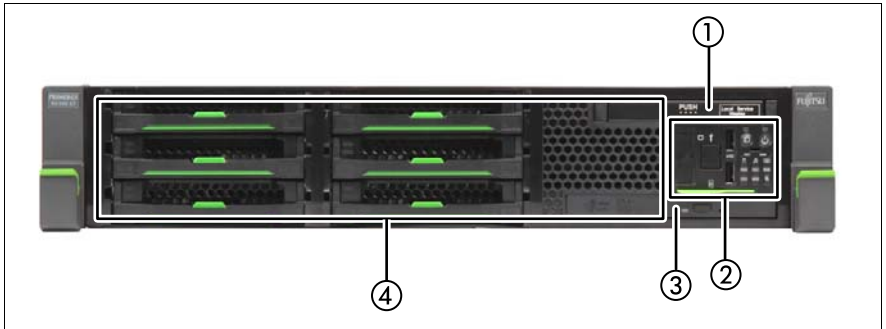


Figure 356: Server front side

Pos.	Component
1	LSD module
2	Front panel module
3	Optical disk drive
4	Space for hard disc drives and backup drives (depending on the configuration)

### 17.1.2 Server rear

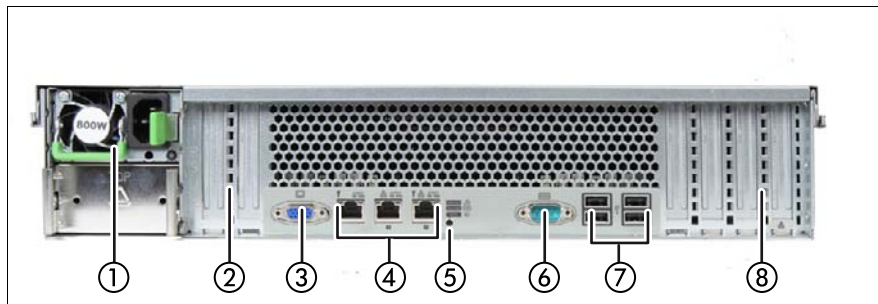


Figure 357: PRIMERGY RX300 S8 rear

Pos.	Component
1	Power supply unit
2	Optional expansion card
3	VGA video connector
4	LAN connectors
5	CSS / Global Error / ID indicators
6	Serial connector
7	USB connectors 1-4
8	Optional expansion card

### 17.1.3 Server interior

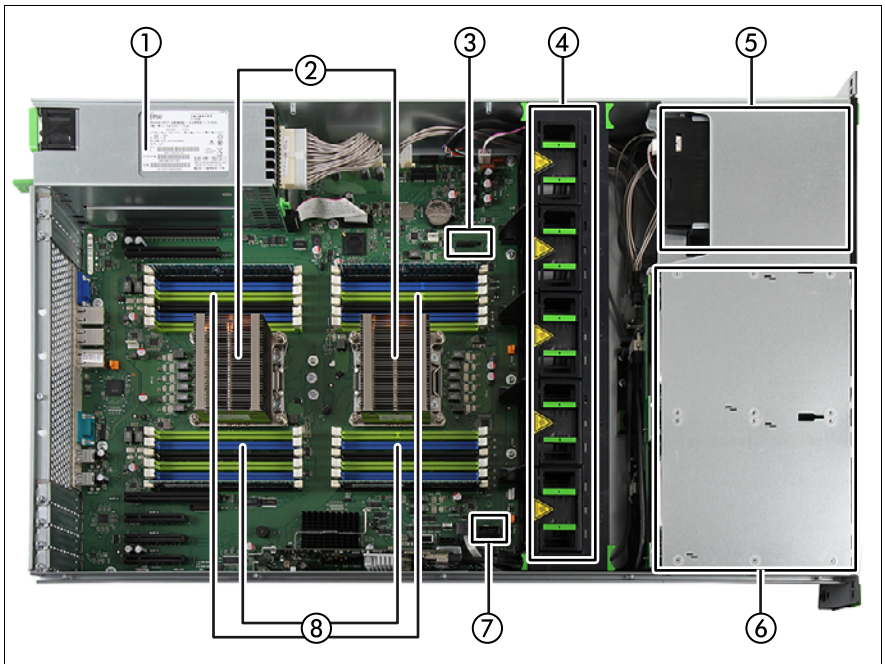


Figure 358: PRIMERGY RX300 S8 interior (example: 2.5-inch HDD model)

Pos.	Component
1	Power supply units
2	Processor / CPU heat sink
3	TPM
4	Fans
5	Front panel module bay
6	HDD / SSD drive bay
7	UFM
8	Memory slots

## **17.2 Configuration tables**

### **17.2.1 Hard disk drives / solid state drives mounting order**

Please refer to chapter "[Hard disk drives / solid state drives](#)" on page 123.

### **17.2.2 Memory board configuration table**

Please refer to chapter "[Main memory](#)" on page 251.

### **17.2.3 Expansion card configuration table**

Please refer to chapter "[Expansion cards and backup units](#)" on page 169

## 17.3 Connectors and indicators

### 17.3.1 Connectors and indicators on the system board

#### 17.3.1.1 Onboard connectors

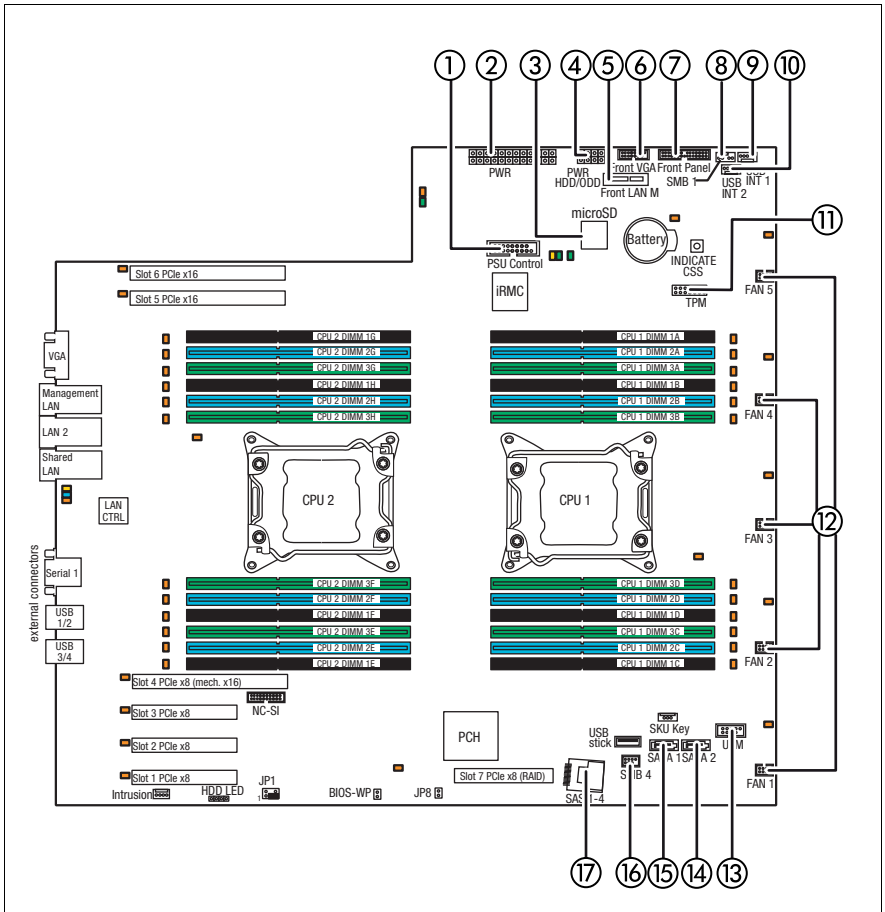


Figure 359: Internal connectors of system board D2939

## Appendix

---

No.	Print	Description
1	PSU Control	Power management connector
2	PWR	ATX power supply connector
3	microSD 1	microSD card
4	PWR HDD/ODD	
5	Front LAN M	Slot for front LAN connector board
6	Front VGA	Front panel VGA connector
7	Frontpanel USB	Front panel connector
8	SMB 1	LSD module
9	USB INT 1	USB 2.0 connectors for USB backup drives
10	USB INT 2	
11	TPM	Connector for Trusted Platform Module (TPM)
12	FAN1 - FAN5	FAN connectors
13	UFM	Connector for USB Flash Module (UFM)
14	SATA 2	SATA 2 connector
15	SATA 1	SATA 1 connector
16	SMB 4	
17	SAS 1-4	SATA MLC connector

17.3.1.2 Onboard indicators and controls

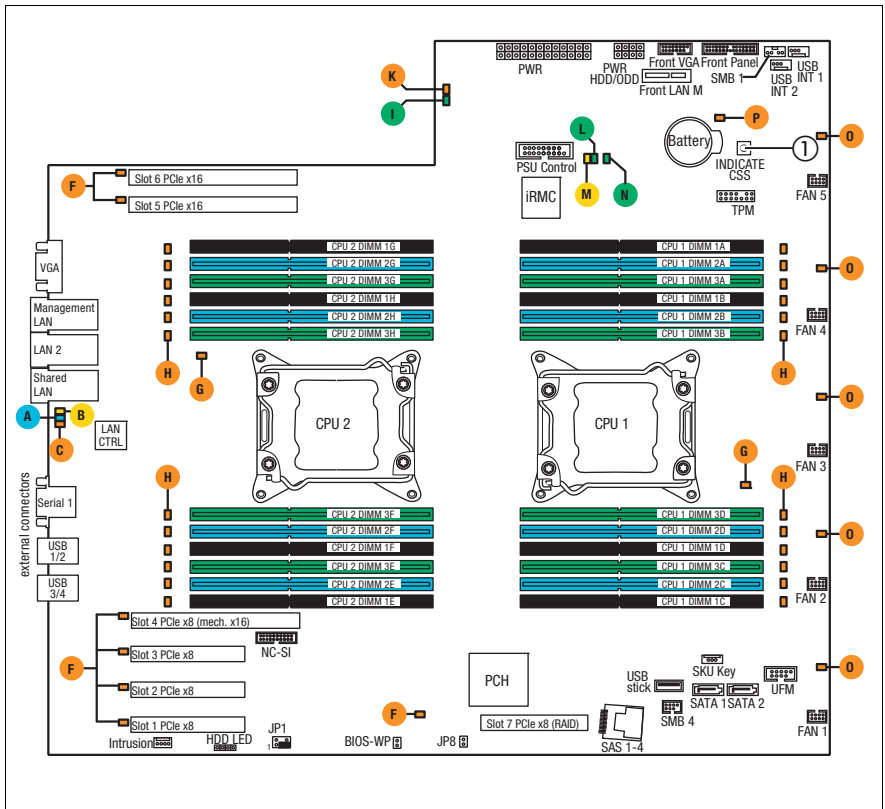


Figure 360: Onboard indicators and Indicate CSS button

No.	Description
1	Indicate CSS button

### Using the Indicate CSS button

- ▶ Shut down and power off the server.
- ▶ Disconnect the AC power cord from the system.



It is mandatory to disconnect power cords in order to use the Indicate CSS functionality.

- ▶ Press the Indicate CSS button (1) to highlight defective components.

### Component LEDs



LEDs A, B and C are visible from the outside on the server rear. All other LEDs are only visible if the top cover has been opened. In order to access memory LEDs (D), the system fan module needs to be removed.

Indicator		Status	Description
A	Identification	blue on	server has been highlighted using the ID button on the front panel for easy identification
		blue flashing	server has been highlighted using IRMC (AVR) when local VGA off for easy identification
B	CSS (Customer Self Service)	off	no critical event (CSS component)
		yellow on	prefailure detected (CSS component)
		yellow flashing	CSS component failure
C	GEL (Global Error LED)	off	no critical event (non CSS component)
		orange on	prefailure detected (non CSS component)
		orange flashing	non CSS component failure Possible reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– sensor reports overheating</li> <li>– sensor is defective</li> <li>– CPU error</li> <li>– software reports an error</li> </ul>
F	Controller	orange on	controller faulty
G	CPU	orange on	CPU faulty

Indicator		Status	Description
<b>H</b>	Memory module	orange on	memory module faulty
<b>I</b>	PS CTRL OK	green on	power supply OK
<b>K</b>	PS CTRL Error	orange on	power supply error
<b>L</b>	Main power	green on	voltage ok
<b>M</b>	Standby power	yellow on	voltage ok
<b>N</b>	iRMC	green flashing	iRMC S4 ok
<b>O</b>	Fans	orange on	system fan faulty
<b>P</b>	Battery	orange on	battery faulty

#### iRMC-related status signals

ID indicator	Global error indicator	Description
blue flashing	off	A remote connection has been established. Local VGA output has been disabled during the remote session.
blue flashing	orange flashing	An emergency flash of the iRMC firmware is in progress.

## 17.3.2 Connectors and indicators on the I/O panel

### 17.3.2.1 I/O panel connectors

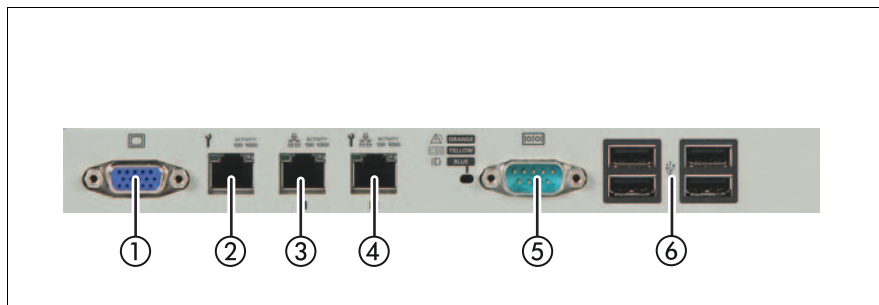


Figure 361: PRIMERGY RX300 S8 rear

1	Video connector (blue)	4	Shared LAN connector (LAN 1)
2	Management LAN connector	5	Serial connector COM1(turquoise)
3	Standard LAN connector (LAN 2)	6	4 USB connectors (black)

Depending on BIOS settings, the shared LAN connector may also be used as a management LAN connector. For further information, please refer to the corresponding BIOS Setup Utility reference manual.

The serial connector COM1 can be used as default interface or to communicate with the iRMC S4.



The chipset offers two integrated USB 2.0 Rate Matching Hubs (RMHs) that enable lower power requirements and manages the transition of the communication data rate from the high speed of the host controller to the lower speed of USB full speed / low speed devices.

## 17.3.2.2 I/O panel indicators

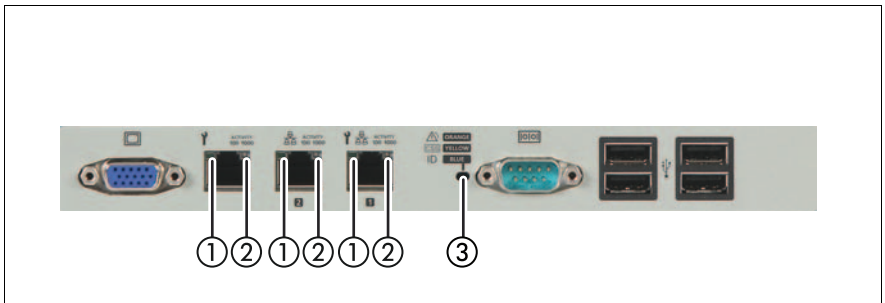



Figure 362: I/O panel indicators

Indicator		Status	Description
1	LAN link/transfer	green on	LAN connection established
		off	no LAN connection
		green flashing	data transfer in progress
2	LAN speed	yellow on	traffic a transfer rate of 1 Gbit/s
		green on	traffic a transfer rate of 100 Mbit/s
		off	traffic a transfer rate of 10 Mbit/s

Indicator	Status	Description	
3	Global error indicator	off	no critical event (non CSS component)
		orange on	prefailure detected (non CSS component)
		orange flashing	non CSS component failure
	CSS indicator	off	no critical event (CSS component)
		yellow on	prefailure detected (CSS component)
		yellow flashing	CSS component failure
ID indicator	blue on	server has been highlighted using ServerView Operations Manager, iRMC web frontend or the ID button on the front panel for easy identification	
	blue flashing	local monitor is not active  With firmware version 7.3x available.	



**Note on the onboard LAN controller**

The system board is equipped with a Gigabit Ethernet Controller that supports transfer rates of 10 Mbit/s, 100 Mbit/s and 1 Gbit/s.

The separate management LAN connector is used as a management interface (iRMC S4) and is prepared for operation with the Remote Management. Optionally LAN connector 1 can also be used for iRMC S4 server management.

### 17.3.3 Connectors and indicators on the front panel

#### 17.3.3.1 Front panel connectors

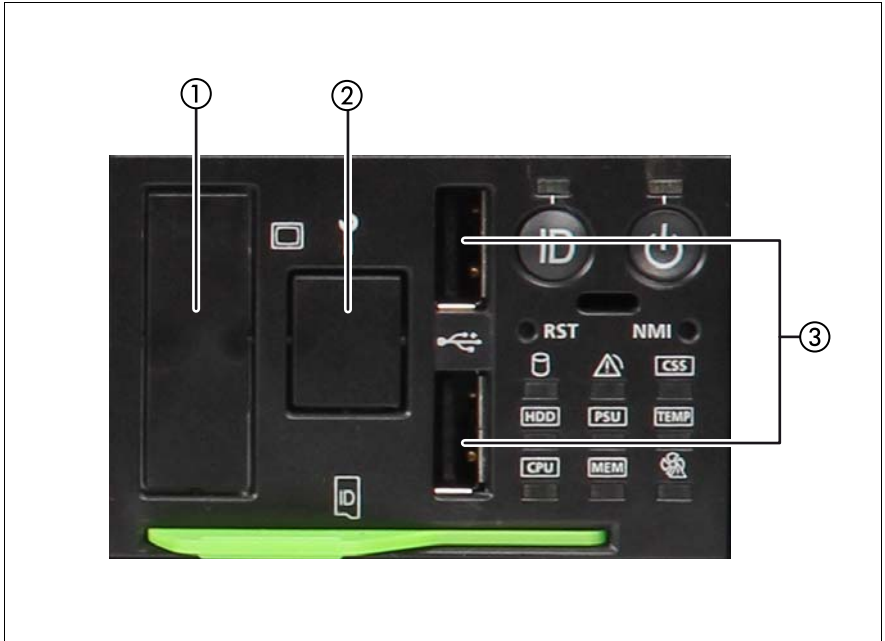


Figure 363: Front panel controls and indicators

1	Front VGA	3	USB
2	Front LAN		

17.3.3.2 Front panel controls and indicators

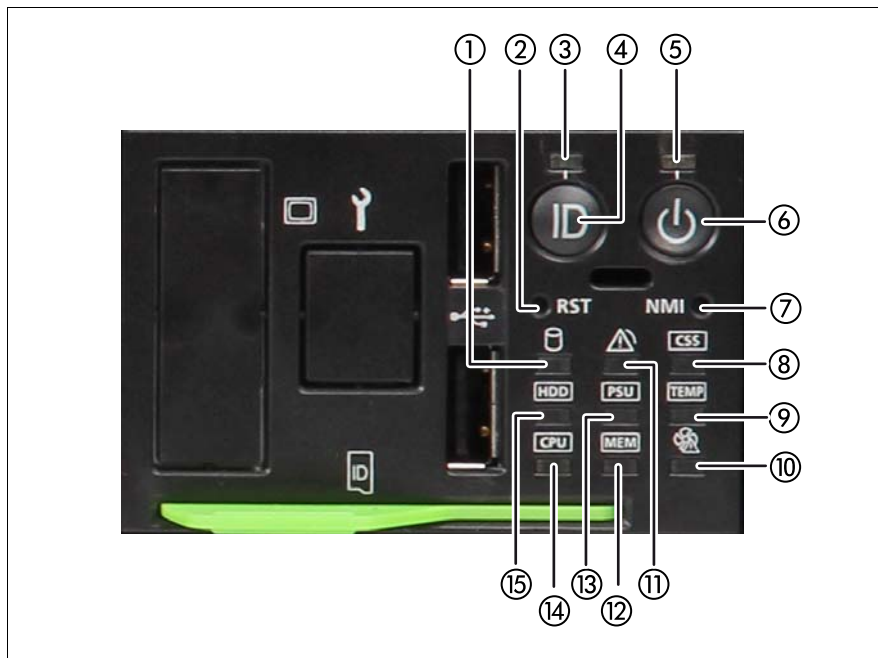










Figure 364: Front panel controls and indicators





1	HDD/SSD activity indicator	9	Temperature error indicator
2	Reset button	10	Fan error indicator
3	ID indicator	11	Global Error indicator
4	ID button	12	Memory error indicator
5	Power-on indicator	13	PSU error indicator
6	On/Off button	14	CPU error indicator
7	NMI button	15	HDD/SSD error indicator
8	CSS indicator		






## Local diagnostic indicators

Symbol	Indicator	Status	Description
	HDD/SSD error indicator	orange on	HDD/SSD, SAS/SATA backplane or RAID controller failure detected
	PSU error indicator	orange on	Hot-plug PSU module failure detected  Only available in redundant PSU configurations.
	Temperature error indicator	orange on	Operating temperature levels above permitted limits
	CPU error indicator	orange on	CPU prefailure event detected
	Memory error indicator	orange on	Memory module failure detected
	Fan error indicator	orange on	Fan prefailure or failure event detected






 In addition to local diagnostic indicators, CSS or Global Error LEDs indicate, if the defective component is a customer replaceable unit or if a service technician needs to be dispatched to replace the part.

Status indicators

Symbol	Indicator	Status	Description
	ID indicator	blue on	Server has been highlighted using ServerView Operations Manager, the iRMC web frontend, or the ID button on the front panel for easy identification
	CSS indicator	off	No critical event (CSS component)
		yellow on	Prefailure detected (CSS component)
		yellow flashing	CSS component failure
	Global error indicator	off	No critical event (non CSS component)
		orange on	Prefailure detected (non CSS component)
		orange flashing	Non-CSS component failure
	HDD/SSD activity indicator	green flashing	Data access in progress

Symbol	Indicator	Status	Description	
	Power-on indicator	green on	Server is switched on an running	
		orange on	<p>Server is switched off, but mains voltage is present (standby mode).</p> <p> After connecting the server to the mains, it will take about 60 seconds until the server will switch into standby mode.</p>	
		<b>Firmware version 7.3.x:</b>		
		 With firmware version 7.3x the operation conditions "iRMC starting" and "power on delay" are available.		
		yellow/ orange flashing	iRMC starting	 After connecting the server to the mains (power cord plugged in / after mains failure) the iRMC will start. The system cannot be switched on, until the iRMC boot sequence is complete. During this time, the power-on indicator will flash yellow/ range.
yellow on	Power on delay	 After shutting down, the server cannot be switched on again right away. If the On/Off button is pressed right after shutting down the server, the power-on indicator will light up yellow until the delay period ends and the server will boot.		
off	Server is switched off, AC disconnected			

**Buttons**

Symbol	Button	Function
	ID button	This button highlights the ID indicator on the front and I/O panels for easy server identification.
<p><b>RST</b></p>	Reset button	<p>This button is used to reboot the system. It can be pressed using the end of a paper clip.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION!</b> Risk of data loss!</p>
<p><b>NMI</b></p>	NMI button	<p>This button is used to troubleshoot software and device driver errors. It can be pressed using the end of a paper clip.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION!</b> Use this button only if directed to do so by qualified certified maintenance personnel!</p>
	On / Off button	<p>This button is used to switch the server on or off.</p> <p> If the system is running an ACPI-compliant operating system, the pressing the On/Off button will perform a graceful shutdown.</p>

## 17.4 Onboard settings

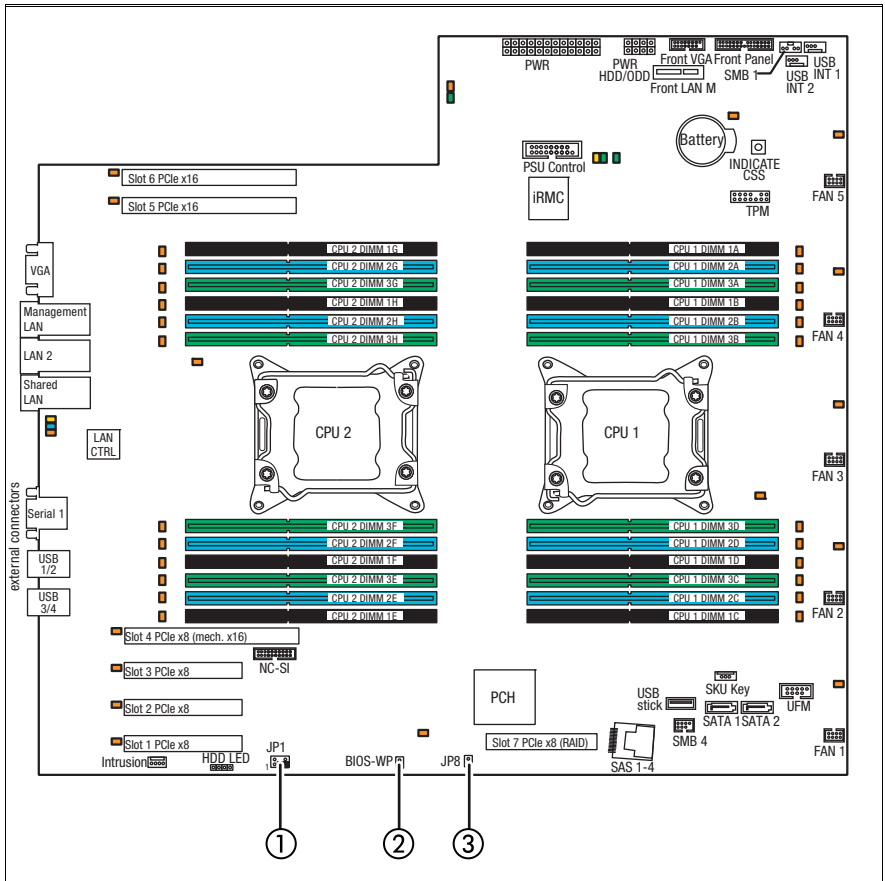
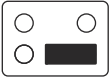
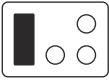
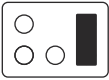






Figure 365: Onboard settings on system board D2939

Setting		Status	Description
1	JP1	Password Skip/Recovery BIOS	 Default: Password delete and Recovery BIOS options disabled
			 PWD SKIP: Password delete enabled This jumper setting will permanently delete the current BIOS password and apply default BIOS settings.
			 RCVR: Recovery BIOS enabled
2	BIOS-WP	Flash Write Protect	 Default
			 Flash Write Protect enabled
3	JP8	Flash Security Disable	 Default
			 Flash security disabled

## 17.5 Minimum startup configuration



### Field Replaceable Unit (FRU)

If the server does not start up or other problems occur, it may be necessary to take the system down to its most basic configuration in order to isolate the defective component.

The minimum startup configuration consists of the following components and cables:

Component	Notes
System board	no TPM, UFM or expansion cards installed
CPU with CPU heat sink	
1 memory module	installed in DIMM slot 1A
Front panel module	without connected front LAN module
Power supply unit	

Table 12: Minimum startup configuration - components

Cable	Notes
Front panel cable	
Power cable	

Table 13: Minimum startup configuration - cables

- ▶ ["Shutting down the server" on page 54](#)
- ▶ ["Disconnecting power cords" on page 54](#)
- ▶ Take the system down to its minimum startup configuration.
- ▶ ["Connecting the server to the power source" on page 69](#)
- ▶ Connect a keyboard, mouse and display to the server.
- ▶ ["Switching on the server" on page 71](#)

**CAUTION!**

Since the fan module is not included in the minimum startup configuration, the server must be shut down immediately after the diagnostic process is complete (POST phase has been passed).

The minimum startup configuration must be used exclusively for diagnostic purposes by maintenance personnel, never in daily operation!

